



详解中西文化背景差异，展现欧美风土人情，
掌握多层次、全场景地道英语！

必须掌握的

高频英语会话

2000

文化链接 + 实用对话 + 情景漫画 = 『英语会话达人』



主编◎浩瀚 安烈 审订◎【美】Eve Bower
朗读【美】William Valencia (男) 【美】Dajid Jordan Dibona (男)
【美】Sarah Miller (女) 【美】Camilla Zanzanaini (女)

石油工业出版社



热读推荐



免费下载



免费下载



免费下载



免费下载

资讯最新动态 <http://1874243008.qzone.qq.com>

更多精彩请点击此处进入网盘共享

网盘赚钱注册: <http://www.gxp.cc/register/164720>

关注资源共享请加QQ群: 74063746



免费下载



免费下载



免费下载



免费下载



免费下载



免费下载



免费下载



免费下载



热读推荐



免费下载



免费下载



免费下载



免费下载

资讯最新动态 <http://1874243008.qzone.qq.com>

更多精彩请点击此处进入网盘共享

网盘赚钱注册: <http://www.gxp.cc/register/164720>

关注资源共享请加QQ群: 74063746



免费下载



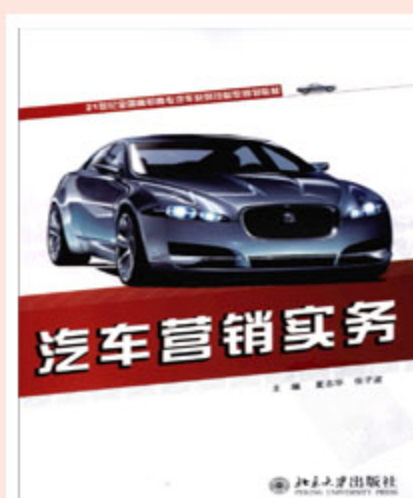
免费下载



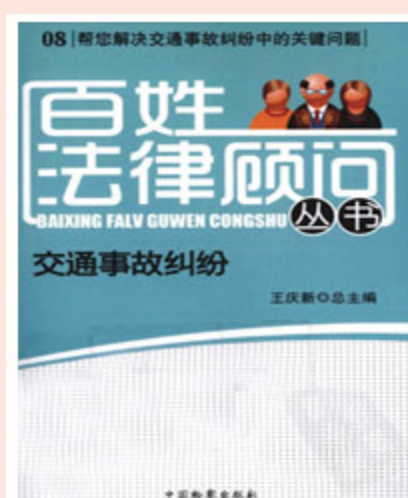
免费下载



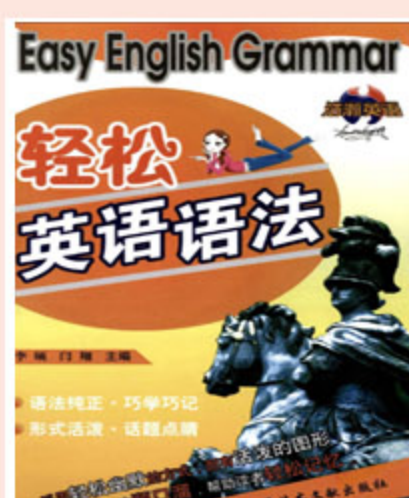
免费下载



免费下载



免费下载



免费下载



免费下载

English Conversation
Library

英语会话
素材库

详解中西文化背景差异，展现欧美风土人情，
掌握多层次、全场景地道英语！

必须掌握的

高频英语会话

2000

文化链接 + 实用对话 + 情景漫画 = 『英语会话达人』



主编◎浩瀚 安烈 审订◎【美】Eve Bower
朗读【美】William Valencia (男) 【美】Dajid Jordan Dibona (男)
【美】Sarah Miller (女) 【美】Camilla Zanzanaini (女)

石油工业出版社

图书在版编目(CIP)数据

必须掌握的高频英语会话 600 段/浩瀚,安烈主编.
北京:石油工业出版社,2009.10
ISBN 978-7-5021-7407-1

I. 必...

II. ①浩... ②安...

III. 英语-口语

IV. H319.9

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字(2009)第 171588 号

必须掌握的高频英语会话 600 段
浩瀚,安烈 主编

出版发行:石油工业出版社

(北京安定门外安华里 2 区 1 号 100011)

网 址:www.petropub.com.cn

编辑部:(010)64523646 发行部:(010)64523604

经 销:全国新华书店

印 刷:北京晨旭印刷厂

2010 年 1 月第 1 版 2010 年 1 月第 1 次印刷

710×1000 毫米 开本:1/16 印张:23.5

字数:460 千字

定价:34.80 元(附赠超长 400 分钟 MP3 光盘)

(如出现印装质量问题,我社发行部负责调换)

版权所有,翻印必究

004

编

委

会

● 主 编：浩 瀚 安 烈

● 编 委：李 硕 孙 卓 张 苒 李明亚 王 艳

陈伟华 廖志谦 王亚彬 徐光伟 徐继宁

邹佳新 赵修臣 陈 丹 尹晓洁 张文娟

高化文 魏 田 汪丽琴 李文萍 张丽娟

马 兰 刘雷雷 孙 伟 蔡 丹 李庆磊

徐 萍 李 红 刘梓红 李林海 王建伟

宋美盈 余燕南 宋海燕 姚 青 李洪伟

柏 媛 林晓雯 刘 璐 李洪丰 李 伟

蔡 翠 林 琳 汪丽琴 王 勇 马 迅

王应铜 赵秀丽 武 平

● 制 作：胡振洋 于文娟 刘备之 余 晶 岳永铭

郭美娟 韩 磊 李子强 毕路拯 徐美芳



香 港

頁 1 半 0105

前言

英语基础知识固然重要,但只有转化成语句,才能起到交流的作用,达到交流的目的。英语会话是使“死”英语转化为“活”英语的重要手段,对于具有一定语言知识的英语学习者来说,如何能贴切、流畅地使用地道的口语进行日常会话已成为当务之急。

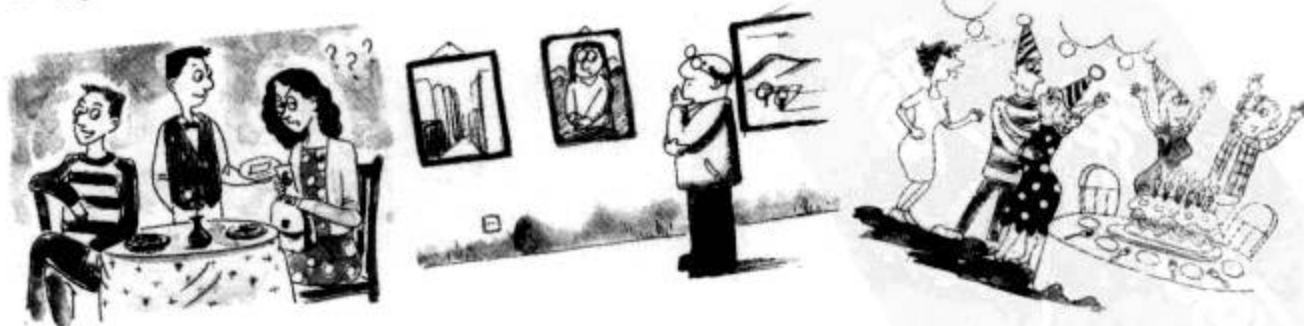
本书针对国人学习英语的现状,适时编写。精选 600 段最常用的英文会话,贴切实用,极易学习模仿。会话口语素材容量之大在同类书中十分罕见,是一本能够快速提高英语口语水平的实用培训语料经典。

全书按照日常交际、浪漫爱情、餐饮及旅馆、购物、庆祝节日和特殊日子、通讯及交通、银行、业余活动、住房及汽车、健康与疾病等 11 个章节构思,设计了“文化链接”、“实用对话”两个栏目,并在书中穿插相关的情景漫画,令读者学习之余,放松身心。

文化链接:针对各主题详细地介绍了中西文化背景差异,帮助读者尽可能多地了解国外风土人情,掌握交际会话中的“潜规则”。

实用对话:对话部分全部根据真实场景设计,针对不同情况、场景,设计了多组主题对话。采用精短而有效的地道英语,句型简单,句式流畅,方便读者灵活运用。

情景漫画:



希望通过本书的帮助,读者能够说一口流畅、地道的英语,成为英语会话达人!

编者

2010 年 1 月

目 录

Chapter 1 Daily Communication I 日常交际 (一)



Unit 1 Meeting and Greeting 会面及问候	(2)	接机	(15)
Unit 2 Introduction 引见	(5)	Unit 7 Seeing Off 送别	(17)
Unit 3 Asking the Way 问路	(8)	Unit 8 Invitation 邀请	(21)
Unit 4 Asking Someone to Repeat 请人复述	(11)	Unit 9 Making an Appointment 预约	(26)
Unit 5 Borrowing and Lending 借还物品	(13)	Unit 10 Changing an Appointment 改变约会计划	(32)
Unit 6 Meeting at the Airport		Unit 11 Planning an Evening Out 计划夜间外出	(36)



Chapter 2 Daily Communication II 日常交际 (二)

Unit 1 Dates 日期	(39)	表达谢意	(55)
Unit 2 The Time 时间	(41)	Unit 8 Expressing One's Apology 表达歉意	(59)
Unit 3 The Weather 天气	(43)	Unit 9 Presenting Compliments 称赞	(63)
Unit 4 Asking about Health 问候健康	(46)	Unit 10 Congratulations 表示祝贺	(66)
Unit 5 Asking for Changes 换零钱	(48)	Unit 11 Complaining 抱怨	(68)
Unit 6 Making Requests and Asking Favours 请求与求助	(50)	Unit 12 Accepting Suggestions 接受建议	(71)
Unit 7 Expressing One's Gratitude		Unit 13 Rejecting Suggestions 拒绝建议	(75)



Chapter 3 Romantic Love 浪漫爱情

Unit 1	Subject of Love 爱情话题	(78)	Unit 7	Keep the Love 把爱留住	(96)
Unit 2	Concerning the Opposite Sex 关注异性	(81)	Unit 8	Inquiry 打听	(99)
Unit 3	The Charming Love 迷人的爱情	(84)	Unit 9	Admiring Opposite Sex 赞美异性	(102)
Unit 4	Appointment of Love 爱的约定	(87)	Unit 10	Love at First Sight 一见钟情	(104)
Unit 5	Romantic Lovers 浪漫情侣	(90)	Unit 11	Telephone Call 打电话	(107)
Unit 6	Fruits of Love 爱情甜果	(93)	Unit 12	Know More about Each Other 互相了解	(109)

Chapter 4 Food and Beverage & at Hotel 餐饮及旅馆



Unit 1	Booking a Table 订餐	(113)	Unit 7	At a Cocktail Party 在咖啡馆	(132)
Unit 2	Ordering 点菜	(117)	Unit 8	Making a Reservation 在鸡尾酒会上	(134)
Unit 3	During the Meal 用餐中	(124)	Unit 9	Checking in 预订旅馆	(136)
Unit 4	Paying the Bill 餐后买单	(127)	Unit 10	At the Hotel 登记入住	(139)
Unit 5	At Fast Food Restaurants 在快餐店	(129)	Unit 11	Checking out 住宿期间	(142)
Unit 6	In the Café 离店结账	(146)			

Chapter 5 Shopping 购物



Unit 1	At the Supermarket 逛超市	(150)	Unit 8	In the Flea Market 在跳蚤市场	(176)
Unit 2	In the Department Store 在百货商店	(155)	Unit 9	Buying a Computer 买电脑	(178)
Unit 3	At the Arts and Crafts Store 在工艺品店	(160)	Unit 10	Buying Commodities 购买家居用品	(181)
Unit 4	At the Bookshop 在书店	(163)	Unit 11	Shopping on Line 网上购物	(185)
Unit 5	At the Jeweler's Store 在珠宝店	(165)	Unit 12	Bargaining 讨价还价	(188)
Unit 6	At the Shoe Shop 在鞋店	(169)	Unit 13	Refunding and Claims 退货及索赔	(192)
Unit 7	At the Cosmetics Store 在化妆品店	(172)	Unit 14	After-sale Services and Guarantee 售后服务及保修	(196)



Chapter 6 Celebrating Festivals & Special Events 庆祝节日和特殊日子

Unit 1	Western Festivals 西方节日	(199)	Unit 5	Presenting a Present 赠送礼物	(210)
Unit 2	Chinese Festivals 中国节日	(202)	Unit 6	Attending a Birthday Party 参加生日派对	(212)
Unit 3	Being a Guest 作客	(206)	Unit 7	Attending a Wedding Party 参加婚礼宴会	(214)
Unit 4	Parting 道别	(208)	Unit 8	Work-related Party 同事聚会	(216)

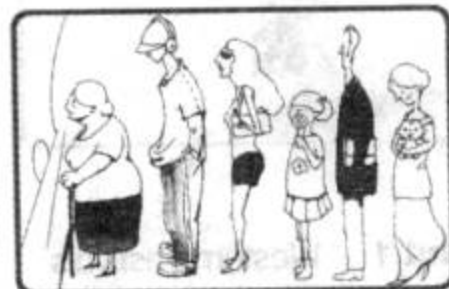


Chapter 7 Correspondence & Transportation 通讯及交通

Unit 1	Writing to Somebody 写信	(219)
Unit 2	At the Post Office 在邮局	(222)
Unit 3	Making and Receiving a Phone Call 接打电话	(225)
Unit 4	Dialing a Wrong Number 打错电话	(228)
Unit 5	Long-Distance Call 长途电话	(231)
Unit 6	Public Phone 打公用电话	(234)
Unit 7	Sending an E-mail 发电子邮件	(236)
Unit 8	Riding a Bicycle 骑自行车	(240)

Unit 9	Driving a Car 驾车	(242)
Unit 10	Taking a Bus 乘公共汽车	(244)
Unit 11	Taking a Taxi 乘出租车	(246)
Unit 12	Taking a Train 乘火车	(248)
Unit 13	Taking a Ship 乘船	(250)
Unit 14	Taking a Plane 乘飞机	(252)
Unit 15	Taking the Subway 乘地铁	(255)
Unit 16	Lifting 搭便车	(258)

Chapter 8 At the Bank 银行



Unit 1	Open an Account 开立账户	(261)
Unit 2	Deposit 存款	(265)
Unit 3	Drawing 取款	(268)

Unit 4	Cashing Checks 兑换支票	(270)
Unit 5	Applying for a Loan 申请贷款	(272)
Unit 6	Exchanging Foreign Currency 兑换外币	(275)

Chapter 9 Activities in Spare Time 业余活动



Unit 1	Collecting 收藏	(279)	Unit 6	The Movies 电影	(291)
Unit 2	Sports 体育运动	(282)	Unit 7	At the Theater 在戏院	(293)
Unit 3	Television 看电视	(285)	Unit 8	At the Library 在图书馆	(295)
Unit 4	Playing Chess and Cards 玩棋牌	(287)	Unit 9	In the Bar 在酒吧	(297)
Unit 5	Newspapers and Magazines 报纸杂志	(289)	Unit 10	Picnic 野餐	(299)



Chapter 10 Housing & Cars 住房及汽车

Unit 1	Looking for a House 找房子	(302)	Unit 7	Buying a Car 买车	(324)
Unit 2	Hiring a Flat 租房	(304)	Unit 8	Renting a Car 租车	(329)
Unit 3	Buying or Selling a House 买卖房子	(307)	Unit 9	Gas Pumping 加油	(331)
Unit 4	Interior Decoration 装修房子	(313)	Unit 10	Car Maintenance and Repairs 汽车维护及修理	(333)
Unit 5	Moving into a New House 搬家	(318)	Unit 11	A Car Park 停车场	(335)
Unit 6	Applying for a Driver's License 申请驾照	(321)			



Chapter 11 Health & Illness 健康与疾病

Unit 1	Seeing a Doctor	Unit 6	Laundry
看病	(337)	洗衣	(352)
Unit 2	Giving a Prescription and Advice	Unit 7	At the Barber's
开药方与给医嘱	(342)	在理发店	(354)
Unit 3	Visiting a Patient	Unit 8	Developing Films
探望病人	(344)	冲印照片	(358)
Unit 4	At the Drugstore	Unit 9	Keeping Pets
买药	(347)	饲养宠物	(360)
Unit 5	Health Care	Unit 10	Family Life
保健养生	(349)	家庭生活	(362)

Chapter 10 Housing & Cars 住房及汽车



Unit 1	Looking for a House	Unit 6	Applying for a Driver's License
寻找房子	(302)	申请驾照	(318)
Unit 2	Hiring a Flat	Unit 7	Buying a Car
租房	(304)	买车	(324)
Unit 3	Trying to Sell a House	Unit 8	Renting a Car
卖房	(307)	租车	(329)
Unit 4	Interior Decoration	Unit 9	Gas Pumping
室内装饰	(313)	加油	(331)
Unit 5	Moving into a New House	Unit 10	Car Maintenance and Repairs
搬进新家	(318)	汽车维护及修理	(335)
		Unit 11	A Car Park
		停车场	(339)

见面与问候

Chapter 1

日常交际 (一)

Daily Communication I



Unit
1

会面及问候

Meeting and Greeting

文化
链接

Culture Links

打招呼,无论是朋友引见、街头遇见,还是活动结束后道别,都是礼貌和个人修养的体现。在英语国家里,以谈论天气作为打招呼的一种方式是比较常见的。

同时要注意称谓的使用。常用的是“Mr.”,“Mrs.”,“Mz”和“Miss”,姓名置于其后。“Mr.”用于男子,无论结婚与否;Mrs. 多用于已婚妇女;Mz 通指女性(包括已婚和未婚的);Miss 用于未婚妇女。

一般打招呼,只要点了头,微笑着说一声“Hi”或“Hello”或“Good morning”。对方也可用三句中的任何一句来回答(这些适用于认识和不认识的人)。

如果是熟人,但不常见,见面可用“How are you?”回答用“Fine, Thank you. And you?”如果熟人很久不见了,可用“How have you been?”意思是“这一阵子可好?”另外有一句“Long time no see!”也是相同的意思,此句原是不懂英文的人由“很久不见”直译成英文而来的非正式英文,但现在在口语中倒常用了。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1 预约后见面

A: Excuse me, but are you Mrs. Smith from America?

B: That's it. I am Maria Smith. You must be Zhang Lin from Tianjin Sports Facility Co. Ltd.

A: Yes. Nice to meet you, Mrs. Smith.

B: Nice to meet you too, Mr. Zhang.

A: 您好,您是美国来的史密斯女士吗?

B: 是啊,我是玛丽亚·史密斯。您一定是天津体育用品有限公司的张林吧?

A: 正是,很高兴见到您,史密斯女士。

B: 也很高兴见到您,张先生。

2 接站见面

A: Good morning, Mr. Jiang.

B: Good morning.

A: 早上好,江先生。

B: 早上好。

会面及问候 · Meeting and Greeting

A: How are you? How nice to see you again. How is everything going?

B: Very well. What about you?

A: Not bad, thanks. Our company has sent me to pick you up here.

B: That is so nice of you.

A: 你好吗? 很高兴能再次见到你。过得怎么样?

B: 非常好, 你怎么样?

A: 还可以, 谢谢。我们公司派我来这儿接你。

B: 你们真是太好了。

3. 同事见面

A: How are you, Mr. Zhang?

B: Very well, thank you. And you?

A: Fine, too, thanks. We met one year ago. We both took part in a party held by our company last year.

B: That's right. How nice to see you again.

A: Me too. How is your family?

B: They are doing well.

A: Say "hello" to them for me.

B: Of course. They will be happy you asked about them.

A: 您好吗, 张先生?

B: 非常好, 谢谢, 你呢?

A: 很好, 谢谢。我们一年前见过。我们都参加了去年我们公司举行的聚会。

B: 是的。真高兴能再次见到你。

A: 我也是。您全家都好吗?

B: 都好。

A: 代我向他们问好。

B: 当然。他们会很高兴您能问候他们。

4. 异国朋友见面

A: Are you from America?

B: No. I am Canadian. Are you Chinese?

A: Yes. Nice to meet you.

B: Nice to meet you, too. Let me show you around.

A: Thanks, I will appreciate it. How long have you been here?

B: About two years, but it seems as if I got here yesterday.

A: 你是美国人吗?

B: 不是的, 我是加拿大人。你是中国人吗?

A: 是的。很高兴认识你。

B: 我也很高兴认识你。让我带你到处转转吧。

A: 谢谢, 感谢你的热心。你来多久了?

B: 大概2年了, 但是就好像昨天刚到一样啊。

5. 陌生人见面

A: I don't believe we've met.

B: No, I don't think we have.

A: My name is Gao Qun.

B: How do you do? My name is James Green.

A: 我们以前没有见过吧?

B: 我想没有吧。

A: 我叫高群。

B: 您好, 我是詹姆斯·格林。

日常交际(一) · Daily Communication I

A: Here's my name card.

B: And here's mine.

A: It's nice to finally meet you.

B: And I'm glad to meet you, too.

A: 这是我的名片。

B: 这是我的。

A: 很高兴终于与你见面了。

B: 我也很高兴见到你。

6. 老友见面

A: Hello, Zhang Lin! Fancy meeting you here!

B: Hi, Lin Tao. I haven't seen you for some time.

A: How's life going, Zhang Lin?

B: Yes, the same as ever, thanks. What about you?

A: Pretty good, thanks. I'm going to see my uncle.

B: Good bye then, and keep in touch.

A: Good bye.

A: 你好, 张林! 真没想到能在这里见到你。

B: 你好, 林涛。有些日子没见到你了。

A: 过得怎么样, 张林?

B: 和从前一样, 谢谢。你呢?

A: 还不错, 谢谢。我正要去看我的叔叔。

B: 那么再见吧, 保持联系。

A: 再见。



Unit
2

引见

Introduction

文化
链接

Culture Links

引见介绍时, (1) 总是把男士先介绍给女士。例如: “布朗夫人, 这是我的朋友李先生。” 然后转向男士, “李先生, 这是布朗夫人。” (2) 在简单介绍中, 必须先提女士名字, 后提男士名字。例如: “布朗女士, 这是李先生……”

在正式社交场合, 有人介绍不认识的人给你, 要说 “How do you do?” 而不说 “How are you?” 或 “Glad to meet you.” 被人家问 “How do you do?” 时, 回答也要用 “How do you do?”。

此外相互引见后握手也有一定的礼仪: (1) 男士之间在介绍时要握手。(2) 男士不与女士握手, 除非女士主动。(3) 握手时女士可以戴手套, 男士必须摘下右手手套, 但穿军服时例外。(4) 握手时应拿捏有力, 但不要用力太大(上下抖动)。(5) 握手时应避免松驰无力, 即使与女士握手时也不应如此, 但与女士握手时不能握得太紧。(6) 握手时不能用双手, 尤其是对方只伸出一只手时。(7) 握手一般应面带微笑。(8) 在和别人告别时可以握手。(9) 主人应和所有的客人握手。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues

1. 请帮引见新同事

A: Will you introduce me to the new colleague?

B: Haven't you met yet?

A: No, we haven't.

B: I'll be glad to do it.

A: 请帮我引见新来的同事好吗?

B: 你们还没见过面吗?

A: 嗯, 没有。

B: 我很乐意为你们介绍。

2. 自我介绍

A: Is this Yang Dong?

B: Yes, that's right.

A: Please allow me to introduce myself. My

A: 是杨东先生吗?

B: 是的。

A: 请允许我向您作自我介绍, 我叫岳群。

日常交际(一) · Daily Communication I

name is Yue Qun.

B: I'm glad to meet you, Mr. Yue.

A: I'll call you if you give me a name card.

B: I'm sorry, but I don't have any with me now.

A: So could you please tell me your number?

B: It's 88257690.

A: I'll call you tomorrow.

B: OK. Look forward to your call.

B: 很高兴认识你, 岳先生。

A: 给我一张名片吧, 我会打电话给您。

B: 真抱歉, 我现在身上没带。

A: 这样啊, 那就告诉我您的电话号码好了。

B: 88257690.

A: 明天我会打电话给您的。

B: 好的。等候你的来电。

相识熟人

A: Mr. Smith, may I introduce Miss Gao?
She is my English teacher.

B: How do you do?

C: How do you do?

B: Zhang Lin's told us quite a lot about you.

C: Oh, nothing unpleasant, I hope?

B: No, not at all. She is very happy about things.

A: 史密斯先生, 让我介绍一下高小姐好吗?
她是我的英语老师。

B: 您好!

C: 您好!

B: 张琳跟我们谈了许多关于您的情况。

C: 哎呀, 我希望不是些使人不愉快的事情吧?

B: 不, 一点也不。张琳对一切都很满意。

相识同学

A: Mrs. Coleman, I'd like you to meet Denise. She is at school with me.

B: Hello, Denise. Pleased to meet you.
Won't you come in?

C: Thank you.

B: How long have you been over here?

C: Not very long. I started school last week.

A: 科尔曼太太, 我想让您见见丹尼斯。她是我的同学。

B: 你好, 丹尼斯。见到你很高兴。请进来好吗?

C: 谢谢。

B: 你来到这里有多久了?

C: 没多久。我上星期刚来上学的。

相识朋友

A: Hi, Lucy! How are you?

B: Fine, thanks. And you?

A: Yes, I am all right I don't think you have met Li Lei, have you? Li Lei, this is Lucy.

C: Hello, Lucy. In fact, we have already

A: 嗨, 露西! 你好吗?

B: 很好, 谢谢。你呢?

A: 嗯, 我挺好。我想你没有见过李磊, 对吧? 李磊, 这是露西。

C: 你好, 露西。实际上我们已经见过面了。

met.

B: Have you?

C: Yes, we both went to your birthday party last weekend.

B: Really? Sorry, I didn't notice you.

B: 是吗?

C: 是的,我们都参加了上周末你的生日宴会。

B: 真的? 对不起,我没注意到你。

商务引见

A: Mr. Lin, let me introduce you to Mr. Cai, who is going to sit next to you tonight. He just came back from Hong Kong.

B: Very good.

A: Mr. Cai, this is Mr. Lin of Gao Sheng Electronics Company.

C: How do you do, Mr. Lin? I am very glad to meet you.

A: Me too. I am really honored.

A: 林先生,让我介绍一下,这是蔡先生,他今晚将坐在你旁边,他刚从香港回来。

B: 太好了。

A: 蔡先生,这是高盛电子公司的林先生。

C: 你好,林先生,很高兴见到你。

A: 我也是,真的感到特别荣幸。

介绍外国朋友

A: Ms. Green, let me introduce my friend, Mr. King to you.

B: Nice to meet you, Mr. King.

C: Nice to meet you, too.

B: How long have you been in China?

C: I just arrived last month.

B: Are you used to life in China?

C: No, not yet.

B: Please feel free to make yourself at home.

A: 格林女士,让我来为您介绍一下我的朋友金先生。

B: 金先生,很高兴认识您。

C: 我也很高兴认识您。

B: 您来中国多长时间了?

C: 上个月刚来。

B: 你习惯中国的的生活吗?

C: 没有,还不习惯。

B: 别客气,就像在自己家一样。

Unit
3

问路

Asking the Way

文化
链接

Culture Links

英美国家对可供人行走的街道有不同的称呼。如 Blvd 是 boulevard 的缩写,指林荫大道;Ave 则是 avenue 的缩写,是大马路的统称;一般街道称 street,小街则叫 lane。在美国,尤其在纽约,外国游客一般不会迷路。因为所有的 avenue 都是南北走向;而所有的 street 则都是东西走向。avenue 和 street 都有明显的标识。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues

1. 找邮局

A: How do I get to the post office from school?

B: Turn right outside the school; go along until you come to the main road; turn left; go straight ahead, straight on at the roundabout, down the hill, and turn left at the bottom.

A: OK, I see. Thank you very much.

B: You are welcome. Hope you can find it soon.

A: 从学校到邮局怎么走?

B: 出学校后右转;往前走直到大路上;向左转,向前走,一直走到环形路口,走下小山,在山脚下再左转。

A: 好的,知道了。非常感谢。

B: 不客气,希望你能尽快找到。

2. 找火车站

A: Excuse me, where am I on this map?

B: You're right here, bus station, we are in the center of the city.

A: Which bus should I take to railway station?

B: You can take a No. 2 bus here.

A: 对不起,请问我在地图上的什么位置?

B: 你就在这儿,汽车站,我们现在在市中心。

A: 请问到火车站,我该坐哪路车?

B: 您可以在这儿乘坐 2 路公共汽车。

问路 · Asking the Way

A: Where am I supposed to change?

B: At Yongding Street.

A: 我应该在哪站换车?

B: 在永定路换车。

3. 找银行

A: What's the name of this street?

B: University Street.

A: Do you know of any banks near here?

B: You'll see one at the corner on your right.

A: 这条街叫什么名字?

B: 学院路。

A: 您知道这附近有银行吗?

B: 在右侧拐角那儿就能看见一个。

4. 找公园

A: Excuse me, can you tell me where Central Park Street is?

B: Turn right at the third light and then go straight for two blocks.

A: Is it far?

B: No. It's only a ten-minute walk.

A: I see. Thanks a lot.

B: You're welcome.

A: 对不起, 请问中央公园大街在哪儿?

B: 第三个红绿灯处右转, 一直走, 过两个街区。

A: 请问远吗?

B: 不远, 走 10 分钟就到。

A: 我明白了, 多谢。

B: 不客气。

5. 找电影院

A: Excuse me. Could you please tell me how to get to the nearest cinema?

B: Turn left at the second light. You can't miss it.

A: Will it take me long to get there?

B: No. It's not far at all.

A: Thank you very much.

B: That's all right. Have a good day.

A: 对不起, 请问能告诉我最近的电影院怎么走吗?

B: 在第二个红绿灯处左转。你会找到的。

A: 到那里需要很长时间吗?

B: 不。一点也不远。

A: 非常感谢。

B: 不客气, 祝你度过愉快的一天。

6. 找名胜古迹

A: Excuse me, how do I get to the Forbidden City?

B: Follow this road and turn right at the second intersection. It'll be right there.

A: Is it far?

B: No, it should only take you about 15 minutes by foot.

A: 请问一下, 去紫禁城怎么走?

B: 沿着这条路往前走, 第二个十字路口右转。就到了。

A: 远吗?

B: 不远, 走路应该只要 15 分钟左右。

日常交际(一) · Daily Communication I

A: Thank you.

A: 谢谢。

7. 找商店

A: Excuse me. Where's the shop, please?

A: 请问一下, 商店在哪里?

B: The shop? Oh. Go straight on this road. Turn left at the third corner. Then you can see it.

B: 商店吗? 哦, 沿着这条街一直走, 在第三个街口左转, 然后就能看到了。

C: I'm walking that way. Let me lead you the way.

C: 我正朝那边去。让我给你带路吧!

A: Thank you very much.

A: 非常感谢。

C: You're welcome.

C: 不用谢。

8. 找宾馆

A: Excuse me. I'm afraid I got lost. Where am I on this map?

A: 对不起, 我恐怕是迷路了, 请问我在地图上的什么位置?

B: We are here, bus station, we are in the heart of the city.

B: 我们在这里, 汽车站, 我们现在在市中心。

A: Oh! Can I go from here to the Zhongshan Park?

A: 哦! 我能否从这里到中山公园呢?

B: Head straight up the street about two blocks then turn right.

B: 顺着这条街一直走过两个街区, 然后向右转。

9. 找剧院

A: Excuse me. I wonder if you could help me. I'm looking for the Oriental Pearl Theater.

A: 对不起, 打扰一下, 不知您能否帮我, 我在找东方之珠剧院。

B: Boy, you are lost. It's across town.

B: 哦, 你迷路了。它在城市的那头。

A: Oh! What bad luck! How can I get to the Theater?

A: 哦! 太糟糕了! 那我怎么去剧院呢?

B: You can take a No. 12 bus here and then transfer to a No. 23 bus to get there.

B: 您可以在此乘坐 12 路公共汽车, 然后换乘 23 路公共汽车到那里。

Unit
4

请人复述

Asking Someone to Repeat

文化
链接

Culture Links

询问是获取信息的主要途径之一。社交活动经常要涉及询问,如在赴约的时候迷路了需要询问,想了解社交活动的相关事项也需要询问。向陌生人询问时,最好停下或缓步走向对方,表情不要太紧张,否则会使对方产生不必要的戒备。与对方保持一定距离,尤其是当您要问的人是一位女性时,更应注意这一点。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 帮忙叫车

A: I'm sorry, but I didn't catch what you said.

B: I said, "Do you want me to help you?"

A: If you're sure you're not in a hurry, I can use a little help.

B: OK. Would you like me to get you a cab?

A: 对不起,我没听清你说的话。

B: 我说的是:“需要我帮忙吗?”

A: 如果你确定不太急的话,我需要你帮点忙。

B: 好的。要我帮你叫辆出租车吗?

2. 帮忙用语复述

A: I beg your pardon?

B: I said, "Do you need any help?"

A: That's very nice of you. I guess I could use some help.

B: Just tell me what you'd like me to do.

A: 请再说一遍好吗?

B: 我说的是:“需要我帮忙吗?”

A: 您真是太好了。我想我需要您帮个忙。

B: 只要告诉我要我做什么就可以了。

3. 帮忙拿行李

A: What was that?

B: I said, "Is there anything I can do?"

A: 您刚才说什么?

B: 我说的是:“有什么需要我做的吗?”

日常交际(一) · Daily Communication I

A: If it's not too much trouble, I would like some help.

B: It's no trouble at all. I'll carry this suitcase for you.

A: 如果不太麻烦的话,我需要您帮个忙。

B: 一点也不麻烦。让我来帮您拿手提箱。

4. 帮忙找书

A: Excuse me? I didn't hear what you said.

B: I asked you if you wanted some help.

A: I am new to this school and not familiar with this library. Can you help me?

B: Certainly. What's your topic?

A: I'm looking for information on tropical fish.

B: All right. You can use the computer over there, enter "tropical fish" under subject. If you know the title of the book, enter it under "title".

A: Great, thank you.

B: You are welcome.

A: 对不起?我刚才没听见您说的话。

B: 我是问您是否需要帮忙。

A: 我是一名新生,对图书馆不了解。你能帮我一个忙吗?

B: 当然可以。你想找什么类的书?

A: 我找关于热带鱼方面的资料。

B: 好。你可以用那里的计算机,在“主题”下输入“热带鱼”。如果你知道书名,在“书名”下将其输入。

A: 很好,谢谢。

B: 别客气。

5. 帮忙找邮局

A: I'm sorry, but I didn't catch what you said.

B: I said, "Do you want me to help you?"

A: I'm trying to find a post office.

B: Go three blocks and turn right. It's right there.

A: Should I take the bus?

B: No. It'll only take about five minutes to walk.

A: Thank you very much.

B: Anytime.

A: 对不起,我没听清你说的话。

B: 我说的是:“需要我帮忙吗?”

A: 我在找邮局。

B: 走三个街区然后右拐,就在那里。

A: 我需要坐公交车吗?

B: 不需要。步行只需5分钟。

A: 谢谢。

B: 随时恭候。

Unit
5

借还物品

Borrowing and Lending

文化
链接

Culture Links

请求别人做某事时,要根据事情的大小和难易程度来采取不同的方式提出请求。如果只是一件小事,比如请别人关一下窗户、借一把雨伞、用一下别人的钢笔,就可以简单的问: Would you close the window? Would you lend me your umbrella? 但如果要借一笔数目较大的钱,或借用昂贵的东西,如汽车,语气就要更加委婉。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues

1. 借自行车

A: Could you lend your bike to me for several days?

B: How long would you like to keep it?

A: Till the end of the week.

B: Yes, that'd be all right.

A: 你的自行车可以让我借用几天吗?

B: 你想用几天?

A: 用到周末吧。

B: 好的,可以。

2. 借钱

A: Hello, Jenny. What's the matter?

B: John, I'm hard up at the moment. Could you lend me five hundred yuan? I'll return it to you early next month.

A: No problem, Jenny. Are you sure five hundred is enough?

B: Yes. Thank you so much.

A: 你好,詹妮。出什么事了?

B: 约翰,我现在手头拮据。你能借我 500 块钱吗?下个月初我就还给你。

A: 没问题,詹妮。你肯定 500 块钱够了吗?

B: 够了。非常感谢。

3. 借还物品

A: Hi, Bob. Can I have the book back I lent to you last month?

A: 嗨,鲍勃。我上个月借给你的书能还给我吗?

日常交际(一) · Daily Communication I

B: Oh! I forgot all about it. Of course you can have it back, John. I'm sorry about the delay.

A: Well, it doesn't matter. I almost forgot it too if it is not for Peter who asked me about it this morning.

B: 哦,我忘记了。当然可以还给你了,约翰。很不好意思耽误了这么久。

A: 哦,没关系。要不是彼得今天早上问起我,我也差不多都忘了。



Unit
6

接机

Meeting at the Airport

文化
链接

Culture Links

去机场接陌生人,需自我介绍。在作自我介绍之前要打招呼,说些客套话或开场白。常用的有:Hello! how are you? Good morning! 等。我们中国人的习惯是见面就问“你吃饭了没有?”、“你从哪里来的?”或“你到哪儿去了?”,有些外国人不了解我们的风俗习惯,认为这样的开场白不礼貌,因此不利于今后的继续交往。如果我们一时找不到话题,可以谈论天气,这是英国人最愿意谈的一个话题,例如:Hello, lovely day, isn't it?

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 找人接机

A: Who will meet you at the airport?
B: No one.
A: Oh, then I will arrange one of my staff to meet you at the airport.

A: 谁会去机场接你?
B: 没有人。
A: 哦,那我安排一个职员到机场去接你。

2. 商务接机

A: Excuse me, but are you Mr. Martin from England?
B: That's it. I am Joe Martin. You must be Zhang Yao from Beijing Tianfa Foreign Trade Co. Ltd.
A: Yes. Nice to meet you, Mr. Martin.
B: Nice to meet you too, Mr. Zhang. Now let me introduce my family. This is my wife, Mary, and this is my son, Tom.
A: How do you do?

A: 您好,请问您是英国来的马丁先生吗?
B: 是啊,我是乔·马丁。您一定是北京天发对外贸易有限公司的张耀吧?
A: 正是,很高兴见到您,马丁先生。
B: 很高兴见到您,张先生。哦,让我来介绍一下我的家人,这是我的妻子玛丽,这是我儿子汤姆。
A: 你们好!

日常交际(一) · Daily Communication I

C: How do you do, Mr. Zhang?

A: Let me help you with your luggage.

B: No, thanks. I can manage it.

A: Did you have a good flight, Mr. Martin?

B: Wonderful! Nice food and good service.

But how long will it take us to get to the hotel?

A: About 45 minutes' ride. Our car is waiting over there. Let's go.

C: 您好! 张先生。

A: 我来帮您拿行李吧!

B: 不了,我能行,谢谢。

A: 旅途愉快吗,马丁先生?

B: 很愉快,食物美味,服务也不错。请问我们多久才能到达宾馆?

A: 大约 45 分钟的车程。我们的车在那边等着呢,走吧。

3. 代公司接机

A: How are you, Mr. Brown? How nice to see you again. How is everything going?

B: Very well. What about you?

A: Not bad, thanks. Our company has sent me to pick you up here.

B: That is so nice of you.

A: How was your flight?

B: Well, generally speaking it was fine. But it is really a long distance from New York to Shanghai. Oh, Mr. Liang, let me introduce my assistant, Mr. Blake.

A: How do you do, Mr. Blake? I am Liang Dong.

C: How do you do, Mr. Liang?

A: Is it your first visit to China?

C: Yes, I have been dreaming of coming to China for years. I am so glad that it has come true finally.

A: I hope you will have a nice stay in China.

C: Thank you, I am sure I will.

A: You must be very tired after such a long flight. Let me take you to your hotel in my car.

B: Great, thank you.

A: My pleasure.

A: 你好,布朗先生,很高兴能再次见到你。过得怎么样?

B: 很好,你怎么样?

A: 还可以,谢谢。我们公司派我来这儿接你。

B: 你们真是太好了。

A: 旅途怎么样?

B: 总体来说还好,就是从纽约到上海真的是一次长途旅行啊。哦,梁先生,让我介绍我的助手布莱克先生给你认识。

A: 您好,布莱克先生。我是梁东。

C: 您好,梁先生。

A: 这是您第一次来中国吧?

C: 是的,我多年来一直梦想能来中国。我很高兴,现在终于实现了。

A: 希望您能在中国过得愉快。

C: 谢谢,我相信会的。

A: 你们长途飞行后一定很累了,让我载你们去酒店吧。

B: 太好了,谢谢。

A: 很荣幸效劳。

Unit
7

送别

Seeing Off

文化
链接

Culture Links

本节特指东道主在异地来访的重要客人离开本地之时,特地委派专人前往来宾的启程返还之处,与客人亲切告别,并目送对方离去。在接待工作中需要为之安排送行的对象主要有:正式来访的外国贵宾、远道而来的重要客人、关系密切的协作单位的负责人、重要合作单位的有关人员、年老体弱的来访者、携带行李较多的人士,等等,当来宾要求主人之为送行时,一般应满足对方的请求。

考虑为来宾送行的具体时间问题时,重要的是要同时兼顾以下两点:一是切勿耽误来宾的行程,二是切勿干扰来宾的计划。为来宾正式送行的常规地点,通常应当是来宾返还时的启程之处。例如,机场、码头、火车站、长途汽车站等。倘若来宾返程时将直接乘坐专门的交通工具,从自己的临时下榻处启程,则亦可以来宾的临时下榻处作为送行地点,例如,宾馆、饭店、旅馆、招待所等。

若要举行送行仪式的话,则注主要选择宜于举行仪式的广场、大厅等。为来宾送行之际,对于送行人员在礼节上有着一系列的具体要求。一是要与来宾亲切交谈,二是要与来宾握手作别,三是要向来宾挥别致意,四是要等对方走后,自己才能离去。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 约好送机

A: I need a taxi to the airport.

B: It is unnecessary. I'll see you off at the airport.

A: 我想叫辆出租车去机场。

B: 没有必要,我将去机场送你。

2. 亲自送机

A: Mr. Martin, we're on arrival.

B: It's nice of you to see my off at the airport. Thank you very much.

A: 马丁先生,我们到了。

B: 您真是太周到了,非常感谢您来机场送我。

日常交际(一) · Daily Communication I

A: We'll miss you. I hope we'll keep in touch.

B: Sure. You've given a great help to me in the past days.

A: It's my pleasure. We hope you'll visit Beijing again.

B: Certainly. I'll be glad to.

A: It's almost time to get aboard.

B: Yes, we should go. Thank you very much. Goodbye!

A: Bye bye! Have a pleasant journey!

A: 我们会想念您的, 希望今后保持联系。

B: 当然会。这些天里您帮我大忙了。

A: 我很乐意那样做。我们希望您能再次来北京。

B: 当然, 我很乐意。

A: 该登机了。

B: 是啊, 我们该走了。非常感谢! 再见!

A: 再见! 旅途愉快!

3. 送行告别

A: Hello! So you are leaving today.

B: Hello. Thank you for seeing me off. You actually don't need to bother.

A: It is my pleasure to see you off.

B: Thanks a lot. I hope to see you again.

A: I hope so, too.

B: Thanks again for everything you have done for me.

A: You're welcome. Have a nice trip!

A: 您好! 您今天就要走了。

B: 您好。谢谢您来送我, 其实您不用这么费心。

A: 能来送您是我的荣幸。

B: 非常感谢。希望能再次见到您。

A: 我也这么希望。

B: 再次感谢您为我所做的一切。

A: 您太客气了。一路顺风!

4. 临别致谢

A: Thank you very much for everything you have done for me during my stay in China.

B: And I must thank you again for your generous help.

A: The help is mutual. I must thank you to see me off. My wife and I will be looking forward to seeing you. You will come to see us, won't you?

B: I promise I will take the first chance to call on you. Please send your wife with my best regards.

A: 十分感谢我在中国期间您为我做的一切。

B: 我必须再次感谢您的慷慨相助。

A: 帮助是相互的。谢谢你为我送行。我和我的妻子盼望着和您见面。你会来看我们, 是吗?

B: 我答应一有机会马上去拜访您。请代我向您的妻子问好。

5. 电话道别

A: Hello, Mr. Green. This is Lin Tong. How are you?

B: Hi, Mr. Lin. I am leaving tomorrow and I am just packing.

A: Oh, sorry to interrupt you. But I am calling to say goodbye to you. I am awfully sorry to tell you that I am afraid I could not see you off at the airport tomorrow, because I will have to attend a very important meeting.

B: It doesn't matter, Mr. Lin. I can understand. I know you are always very busy. Work must come first.

A: Thanks a lot. You have been here for almost three weeks. How time flies!

B: Yes. And I would like to convey my thanks to you for your help during my stay here in Nanjing.

A: It is our pleasure. It has been a great pleasure to work with you.

B: Me too. I am looking forward to cooperating with you again.

A: Really? Great! We will. Well, what's your flight number? When are you leaving tomorrow?

B: It's Flight No. 104, Northern Airlines, which leaves at ten O'clock tomorrow evening.

A: OK, I will send someone to see you off.

B: That is so thoughtful of you.

A: My pleasure. Take care and have a nice trip.

B: Thanks a lot. My wife and I will be welcoming and looking forward to your visit.

A: 您好, 格林先生。我是林潼, 您好吗?

B: 您好, 林先生, 我明天就要动身回国了, 我现在正在整理行装呢。

A: 哦, 对不起, 打扰您了。我打电话来是跟您道别的。非常抱歉我明天恐怕不能去机场给您送行了, 因为我要参加一个很重要的会议, 脱不开身。

B: 没关系, 我能理解, 林先生。我知道您总是很忙, 工作第一嘛。

A: 非常感谢您的理解。时间过得真快呀, 转眼您都在这儿待了快三周了。

B: 是呀, 时间过得真快。在此我要向您为我在南京期间所做的一切致以深深的感谢。

A: 这是我们的荣幸。很乐意跟您一起工作。

B: 跟您合作我也同样开心。我希望还能再有机会合作。

A: 真的吗? 那太好了! 我们会的。对了, 您乘坐的是哪次航班? 明天什么时候动身?

B: 是北方航空公司的 104 次班机, 明天晚上 10 点起飞。

A: 好的。我会派人去送您。

B: 哎呀, 您真是想得太周到了。

A: 您不用客气。您多保重, 旅途愉快。

B: 非常感谢。我太太和我将欢迎并期待您来做客。

日常交际(一) · Daily Communication I

A: Let's call it a deal. Hope to see you again soon. Keep in touch then. Bye-bye.

B: Goodbye. Thanks again.

A: 一言为定,我一定去。盼望与您再会。常联系,再见。

B: 再见,再次感谢。

6. 机场道别

A: Nick, it's very nice of you to see me off.

B: You're welcome. Did you have a good time on this vacation?

A: Very well. If I leave I'll miss you.

B: Me too. Please write to me as soon as you get Boston.

A: I'm sure and I remembered your phone number. I'll call you.

B: OK, they begin to register.

A: It's time I left.

B: Have a nice journey! Do give my regards to your parents.

A: 尼克,你来为我送行真是太好了。

B: 我非常乐意,你假期过得愉快吗?

A: 非常好。我离开后会想你的。

B: 我也一样,请一到波士顿就给我写信。

A: 我保证,而且我记住了你的电话,我会给你打电话的。

B: 哦,他们开始登机了。

A: 我得走了。

B: 旅行愉快! 代我向你的父母问好。



Unit
8

邀请

Invitation

文化
链接

Culture Links

1. 邀请别人一般要提前 1~2 个星期相告。
2. 正式的邀请一般要用书面形式(发请柬),其上要写明时间、地点以及着装要求等内容,请柬的下面往往还要写上“R. S. V. P.”的字样,此为法文,意思是“请予回复”。
3. 非正式的邀请可用口头方式或用电话联系,回答这种方式一般是用 Yes 或 No 这种简单而生硬的形式。
4. 别人邀请,如果你不能赴约,一定要有礼貌地告诉对方,并给出适当的理由。
5. 如果应邀到餐厅吃饭,对方未明确表示由其出钱,则要各付各的餐费。一般说来,男士向女士发出邀请,男女一块用餐时,则由男士付钱。过生日到餐馆吃饭,寿星不出钱,费用由其他参与者分摊。
6. 男女之间约会用 date,朋友间的约会常用 engagement,预约看病和事务上的邀约常用 appointment。
7. 着装原则:正式场合应坚持庄重、严谨、大方的原则。社交场合要突出时尚、个性的特点。休闲场合可体现舒适、自由的风格。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues

1. 邀约共进晚餐(1)

A: We'd like to invite you over for dinner this Friday evening. Can you come?

B: This Friday evening?

A: Yes. We hope you'll be able to join us.

B: Thank you for the invitation. I'll be very happy to go.

A: Good!

B: What time should I arrive?

A: 我们想这个周五请你吃晚饭。你能来吗?

B: 这个星期五吗?

A: 是的,我们希望你能来。

B: 谢谢你们的邀请,我很乐意去。

A: 太好了。

B: 我该什么时候到?

日常交际(一) · Daily Communication I

A: How about 6:00?

B: Fine. See you then.

A: 6 点怎么样?

B: 好的。到时见。

2. 邀约共进晚餐(2)

A: I'd like to invite you for dinner tonight.

Do you think you'll have time?

B: Thank you for your invitation. I'm free tonight.

A: Which kind of food do you like to eat, Chinese food, western food or seafood?

B: I prefer seafood.

A: OK. I will pick you up at your hotel at 5:30 p. m.

B: That's fine. I'll be waiting for you.

A: See you later.

B: Bye.

A: 我想邀请您今晚共进晚餐, 不知您是否有空?

B: 谢谢您的邀请, 我今晚有空。

A: 您喜欢吃哪一种菜? 中餐、西餐还是海味?

B: 我比较喜欢海味。

A: 好的, 我晚上 5 点半去饭店接您。

B: 很好, 我会等您的。

A: 待会儿见。

B: 再见。

3. 邀请远朋

A: Welcome to China, Mr. Martin.

B: Thank you so much. I have been expecting to come to China.

A: I am very glad that you say so. We have prepared a typical Chinese dinner this evening.

B: Oh, you needn't do that.

A: My pleasure.

A: 欢迎来到中国, 格林先生。

B: 非常感谢, 我一直盼望来中国。

A: 很高兴听你这么讲, 今晚我们准备了地道的中国菜。

B: 哦, 你不需要这么做的。

A: 别客气。

4. 面谈邀请

A: Hello?

B: Hello, is that Miss Smith?

A: Yes.

B: This is Mr. Gao. How are you?

A: Not too bad, thanks. And you?

B: Fine. Listen. Are you free on Wednesday night? I'd like to invite you to dinner.

A: I'm terribly sorry, but I've already made arrangements for Wednesday.

A: 您好。

B: 您好, 请问您是史密斯小姐吗?

A: 是的。

B: 我是高先生, 你好吗?

A: 还不错, 谢谢, 你呢?

B: 很好。你星期三晚上有空吗? 我想邀请你吃晚餐。

A: 真对不起, 我星期三已经有安排了。

B: That's a pity. How about Thursday?

A: That would be fine.

B: Great. What time would you like to meet?

A: Whenever is suitable for you. I have no plans for that day.

B: OK, let's say 6:30 p.m.

A: And where would you like to meet?

B: I can pick you up at the gate of your company. Also, what type of food do you like?

A: I'm not very familiar with Chinese cuisine. What can you recommend?

B: Well, have you heard of Peking Duck? It's a local specialty.

A: Of course! Peking Duck is world-famous. I would love to try it.

B: OK, let's have that then.

A: All right. Well, I'll see you later.

B: See you later, goodbye.

A: Bye.

B: 真遗憾, 那星期四怎么样?

A: 好吧。

B: 太好了! 你认为几点见面好呢?

A: 你看什么时间合适, 我几点都可以。我那天没什么安排。

B: 好吧, 那就晚上 6 点半吧!

A: 那么我们在哪儿见面呢?

B: 我可以在你的公司门口接你。还有, 你喜欢吃什么菜?

A: 我对中国菜不太了解, 你推荐点什么呢?

B: 哦, 你听说过北京烤鸭吗? 那是地方特产。

A: 当然! 北京烤鸭世界闻名。我很想试试。

B: 那样的话我们就吃北京烤鸭吧。

A: 好吧, 到时候见吧!

B: 到时见, 再见。

A: 再见。

5. 邀请小饮

A: We are just going round the corner for a drink. Won't you join us?

B: Well, I'd like to, but I am not sure I have time.

A: Oh, come on! Just a quick one!

B: All right, just a quick one.

A: 我们正要到附近去喝点什么, 你跟我们一起去好吗?

B: 嗯, 我倒是很想去, 就是恐怕没有时间。

A: 来吧! 一会儿就完。

B: 好吧, 赶紧喝一杯就回来。

6. 邀请到家里做客

A: Why don't you come round for a meal one evening next week?

B: I'd love to.

A: Which day would suit you?

B: Any day except Tuesday.

A: How about Thursday?

A: 你下星期找个晚上过来吃顿饭好吗?

B: 好啊, 我乐意去。

A: 对你来说哪一天合适?

B: 除了星期二, 哪一天都可以。

A: 星期四怎么样?

日常交际(一) · Daily Communication I

B: Yes, Thursday would be fine. What time shall I come?

A: Oh, about 6:00. Will that be OK?

B: Yes, of course. Thank you very much.

A: See you on Thursday, then.

B: 行, 星期四很好。我要几点钟来?

A: 哦, 6 点左右吧。这个时间行吗?

B: 行, 当然可以, 非常感谢你。

A: 那么星期四见。

7. 邀请共进午餐

A: Bill, do you know if the cafeteria around the corner's open today?

B: Yes. They were open this morning when I came to work. They must've finished remodeling. Why'd you want to know?

A: Well, I thought that maybe we could go there for lunch today. That is, if you haven't promised to go with someone else.

B: That'd be wonderful, Peter. But I hope you're in a better mood than you were this morning.

A: I'm sorry I was such a grouch. It must've been the weather. When it rains I get depressed.

B: Forget it. I'll see you at 11:30 am.

A: 比尔, 你知道街角的自助餐厅今天开业吗?

B: 知道啊, 今天早上我来上班时看到它开了。他们一定已经装修好了。为什么你想知道?

A: 嗯, 我想也许我们今天可以去那儿吃午饭。就是说, 如果你没答应别人去的话。

B: 那太好了, 彼得。不过我希望你现在的的情绪比早上要好一些。

A: 很抱歉, 我的脾气这么不好。一定是天气的缘故。每当下雨我就很沮丧。

B: 忘掉这事吧。那 11 点半见。

8. 邀请致谢

A: Have you enjoyed your weekend?

B: Yes, it's been marvelous. It really was very kind of you to invite me. I hope it hasn't been too much trouble.

A: Not at all. We've really enjoyed having you. I hope you'll come and stay again next time you're in Changsha.

A: 周末过得好吗?

B: 是的, 很好。您邀请我真是太好了。我希望没给你们添太多的麻烦。

A: 一点都不麻烦。和你一起, 我们真的很愉快。希望你下次来长沙时, 再来我们这里一起聚聚。

9. 邀请参加晚宴

A: Here is an invitation for you.

B: Oh, thank you. What is the occasion?

A: Tomorrow is the 100th anniversary of our company. Our general manager invites

A: 这有一份你的邀请函。

B: 哦, 谢谢, 是什么事?

A: 明天是我们公司 100 周年纪念日, 我们总经理邀请你参加晚宴, 你能安排得开

you to a dinner party. Do you think you can manage it?

B: Oh, yes, I'd very much like to go.

A: That is great. Dinner starts at 6:30. Can you be there by then?

B: I'll be there in time.

A: All right. Bye.

B: Bye.

吗?

B: 哦, 是的, 我非常愿意参加。

A: 那太好了, 晚餐将于 6 点半开始。你能准时参加吗?

B: 我会准时到的。

A: 好, 回头见。

B: 回头见。



Unit
9

预约

Making an Appointment

文化
链接

Culture Links

在美国以及许多西方国家,办一件事,见一个人,常常需要事先预约。比如看病,如请私人医生看病,除非得了重症、急症以外,一般都需要事先和医生预约。其他,如去某公司访问一经理、请教授审阅自己的论文以及到朋友家吃饭,都必须事先预约。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues

1. 预约看病

A: Would Dr. Black be able to see me at 9:00 a. m. tomorrow?

B: I'm sorry, but she won't have any openings until 11:00, unless there's a cancellation.

A: Would 1:00 p. m. be convenient?

B: Yes, she's free then.

A: 布莱克医生明天上午9点能给我看病吗?

B: 对不起,她直到11点才能有空档,除非有人取消了预约。

A: 那下午1点方便吗?

B: 可以,那个时候她有空。

2. 预约牙医

A: I wonder if the dentist could fit me in early tomorrow.

B: I'm afraid there's nothing available before noon.

A: How about 12:45?

B: Sorry, but he's busy then too.

A: 我想知道牙医明天早些时候是否能给我看牙?

B: 恐怕中午之前他都没空。

A: 那12点45怎么样?

B: 对不起,那时他还在忙。

3. 预约教授

A: I'd like to make an appointment with Professor Smith. Would 10:00 a. m. to-

A: 我想与史密斯教授预约一下时间。明天上午10点可以吗?

预约 · Making an Appointment

morrow be all right?

B: I'm afraid not. She doesn't have any openings in the morning.

A: Could I possibly make it early in the afternoon?

B: No. That's not good either. But give me your number and I'll call you if somebody cancels.

B: 恐怕不行。她上午的时间都满了。

A: 下午早一点可以吗?

B: 那也不行。你可以给我你的电话吗, 如果有人取消预约我会联系你。

4. 预约见面时间

A: May I have an appointment with you tonight?

B: Very sorry, I am occupied tonight. What about tomorrow night?

A: OK, where and when?

B: 7:00 in my staying hotel.

A: OK, I am going to the hotel to pick you up. See you tomorrow night.

A: 我们今晚可以碰个面吗?

B: 很抱歉, 我今晚排满了, 明天晚上如何?

A: 可以, 在哪里见面? 几点钟?

B: 7:00, 在我住的饭店。

A: 好的, 我会到饭店接您, 明晚见。

5. 预约一起看朋友

A: Do you feel like going to see Paul and Claire tonight?

B: I'd like that very much.

A: How does 7:30 sound?

B: Fine. See you later.

A: 今晚去看看保罗和克莱尔吧。

B: 好呀, 我很想去。

A: 7:30 怎么样?

B: 好的, 待会见。

6. 预约吃饭

A: Why don't you have dinner with me tonight?

B: I'd love to.

A: Let's say about 6:00?

B: That's OK with me.

A: 今晚和我们一起吃晚饭怎么样?

B: 太好了。

A: 6 点钟好吗?

B: 好的。

7. 预约晚餐

A: Let's set a time. When can you be available this week?

B: What about tomorrow evening at 6?

A: Fine with me. How about meeting at

A: 咱们定个时间吧, 你这周什么时候有空?

B: 明天晚上 6 点怎么样?

A: 我正好有空。在海伦家碰面好吗? 晚餐

日常交际(一) · Daily Communication I

Helen's? My treat for dinner?

B: Good. I'll be seeing you then. Bye.

A: Bye.

我来请吧?

B: 好的, 到时候见。

A: 再见。

8. 商务预约

A: I'd like to make an appointment with manager Mr. Wu. Would 10:00 a. m. tomorrow be all right?

B: I'm afraid not. He has a meeting tomorrow morning.

A: Could I possibly make it early in the afternoon?

B: No, that's not good either. But give me your phone number and I'll call you if somebody cancels.

A: Thank you very much.

A: 我想与经理吴先生约见, 明天上午 10 点行吗?

B: 恐怕不行, 他明天上午有一个会议。

A: 我可以约在下午早些时候吗?

B: 也不行, 不过请您把电话号码留给我, 如果有人取消约会, 我就打电话通知您。

A: 非常感谢。

9. 预约周末小聚

A: Let's get together this weekend, is that all right?

B: Sounds good, when?

A: When is it convenient for you?

B: Any time is fine.

A: Could you and your wife be ready at nine o'clock?

B: Please wait for us even if we're a little late.

A: Never mind. I'll be waiting for you.

B: See you then.

A: OK. Bye!

A: 我们周末聚一聚好吗?

B: 听起来不错啊, 什么时候?

A: 你什么时候方便?

B: 什么时间都行。

A: 你和你的夫人 9 点钟能准备好吗?

B: 即使我们稍晚一点, 也请你等我们。

A: 没关系, 我会等你们的。

B: 到时见。

A: 好的, 再见!

10. 预约会晤

A: May I have a word with you?

B: Certainly.

A: When will you be free?

B: Come by any time.

A: Shall I say around ten o'clock?

A: 我可以和你谈谈吗?

B: 当然可以。

A: 你何时有空?

B: 随时欢迎。

A: 10 点左右如何?

预约 · Making an Appointment

B: Yes, I'll be waiting for you in my home by 10:00.

B: 好, 那时我在家中等你。

11. 预约列席会议

A: Could we have the honor of your presence of the meeting?

A: 我们有这个荣幸请您出席这个会议吗?

B: I'm awfully sorry, I have other plan.

B: 实在抱歉, 我已有别的安排。

A: Would you prefer some other time?

A: 其他时间行吗?

B: I'd love to come other time if it can be arranged.

B: 如果能安排在其他时间, 我乐意参加。

A: Are you quite sure you can come next Tuesday?

A: 下周二您肯定能来吗?

B: Certainly, I'll be going.

B: 我一定去。

A: What time am I supposed to pick you up?

A: 您希望我几点钟接您?

B: I'll be waiting for you in our office about nine o'clock.

B: 9 点钟左右我在办公室里等你。

A: OK.

A: 行。

12. 预约专业人士

A: May I fix an appointment with Dr. Cui?

A: 我能和崔博士约个时间吗?

B: Sure.

B: 当然可以。

A: When will it be convenient for her?

A: 她何时方便?

B: Any time is all right, except Sunday.

B: 除了星期日其他时间都行。

A: How about ten o'clock tomorrow?

A: 明天 10 点如何?

B: OK. I'll tell her.

B: 行, 我告诉她。

13. 预约听音乐会

A: Are you free this Saturday evening?

A: 本周六晚上你有空吗?

B: Oh, it seems there is nothing that evening.

B: 哦, 那天晚上好像没什么事。

A: Would you like to go to the concert with me?

A: 你愿意和我一块去听音乐会吗?

B: I'd like to, where?

B: 我想去, 在什么地方?

A: At our club.

A: 在我们的俱乐部。

B: When?

B: 什么时候?

A: At 7:30 p. m.

A: 晚上 7 点半。

B: I'll go in time, thank you.

B: 我会按时去的, 谢谢。

日常交际(一) · Daily Communication I

A: I'm so pleased that you can go.

A: 非常高兴你能去。

14. 预约请人做客

A: Would you honor us with a visit?

A: 能否赏光来敝处做客?

B: I'd love to. Thanks.

B: 非常乐意, 谢谢。

A: When will you be convenient?

A: 你何时方便?

B: Any time will suit me.

B: 我随时都有空。

A: Are you doing anything tomorrow?

A: 明天你有安排吗?

B: I'm free tomorrow.

B: 我明天有空。

A: I'll pick you up at about nine o'clock, will it do?

A: 大约9点钟我开车去接你, 行吗?

B: All right, see you then.

B: 好的, 到时见。

15. 聚会预约

A: When will our party be held?

A: 我们的聚会何时举办?

B: Next Wednesday.

B: 下周三。

A: Have you sent out invitations by our party?

A: 你把我们聚会的请柬发出去了吗?

B: Yes, I have.

B: 是的, 发出去了。

A: When?

A: 什么时间发出去的?

B: Ten days ago.

B: 10天前发出去的。

A: Could Dr. Cole like to attend the party?

A: 科尔博士愿意来吗?

B: Yes, he will.

B: 他愿意。

A: That's fine.

A: 那太好了。

16. 婉拒邀请(1)

A: Would you care to join for the picnic tomorrow?

A: 明天你能参加我们的野餐活动吗?

B: Much to my regret, I'll have to meet my girlfriend at the airport then.

B: 太遗憾了, 明天我要去机场接我的女友。

A: We'd like to invite you for our dress party tomorrow evening, are you free?

A: 我们想邀你们参加明晚的化装舞会, 有空吗?

B: Much as we'd like to, but we've booked up already for that time.

B: 我们很想去, 但是明晚已有安排了。

A: What a pity! You can't join us.

A: 你们不能参加, 真可惜。

B: So sorry. Next time we'll go, thanks anyway.

B: 实在抱歉, 下次一定参加, 不管怎样还是要谢谢你。

17. 婉拒约请(2)

A: Hey, let's go out and grab a couple of beers tonight!

B: Sorry, I can't. I have to work late at the laboratory.

A: Nigel, you sure lead a dog's life, what's up with that?

B: My boss wants me to finish this project tonight.

A: 嘿,今晚出去喝两杯啤酒吧。

B: 抱歉,我去不了。我得在实验室工作到很晚。

A: 奈杰尔,你活得可真辛苦,怎么搞的?

B: 老板要求我今晚就完成这个项目。



Unit
10

改变约会计划

Changing an Appointment

文化
链接

Culture Links

有时在约定好时间后,你又由于某些特殊原因而无法如期赴约,这就应该及时地让对方知道,或取消约会,或另约时间,这样可以给对方有时间来调整自己的计划。赴约时尽量不要带太多随身物,先 shopping 后约会显然是不适当的安排。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues

1. 取消晚会

A: Hello, my name is Bill Martin and we have a reservation for party tonight.

B: Yes, what can I do for you?

A: I need to cancel that. We have had a last minute change of plans.

B: I see. Would you like me to reschedule you for another night?

A: OK, we will let you know as early as possible. By the way, will we be able to get a refund on this cancellation?

B: Certainly.

A: Thank you very much.

B: That's all right. I hope we can help you at some other time. Good-bye.

A: Good-bye.

A: 喂,您好。我叫比尔·马丁,我们在你们这预定了今晚的聚会。

B: 是的,我能为您效劳吗?

A: 我要取消预约,我们临时改变计划了。

B: 我明白了。要不要另外为你安排别的晚上。

A: 好的,我们会尽早让你们知道的。顺便问一下,我们取消后可拿回定金吗?

B: 当然可以了。

A: 谢谢你。

B: 没关系,希望我们今后还能为您服务。再见。

A: 再见。

2. 更改约会时间

A: Good morning, Mr. Robinson. I am afraid there is a change in today's pro-

A: 早上好,鲁宾逊先生。恐怕今天的计划有变。我刚得知您和西方纺织有限公司

改变约会计划 · Changing an Appointment

gram. I just got word that your appointment with Mr. Smith, the general manager of Western Textile Co., Ltd., will have to be put off.

B: But why?

A: Mr. Smith called just now that he had to fly to Shanghai on urgent business today.

B: OK, I see.

A: Mr. Smith is sending his apologies and has asked me to find out if the day after tomorrow would be all right with you.

B: Yes, that will be just as good.

A: Then shall we make it nine o'clock the day after tomorrow morning?

B: All right. Then I can do some shopping today before going back to my country.

的总经理史密斯先生的约会推迟了。

B: 为什么呢?

A: 刚才史密斯先生打电话过来说他今天必须得飞往上海处理紧急事务。

B: 哦, 知道了。

A: 史密斯先生表示歉意, 同时要我问一下您后天是否合适。

B: 可以, 后天也行。

A: 那么, 我们就定在后天上午9点, 好吗?

B: 好的, 我正好可以借此机会在回国前买些东西。

3. 更改见面时间(1)

A: We've changed the schedule again. I really want to meet with you, Mr. White. I just need some time to sort out my schedule.

B: Well, I know you are pretty busy these days. But we have got to work fast on this. Otherwise, we'll lose the market.

A: I realize that. We don't have anytime to waste. I can put you down for 9:30. Could you come to my office this time?

B: Let me see. That is no problem. I'll see you then.

A: 我们再次更改了时间。我真的想要见你一面, 怀特先生。我只是需要点时间来安排开我的工作日程。

B: 嗯, 我知道这几天你很忙, 可这件事我们得抓紧, 否则我们会失去市场。

A: 这点我知道, 我们没时间可浪费的了。我可以给你定在9点半, 你能来我办公室吗?

B: 让我看看, 没问题, 到时见。

4. 更改见面时间(2)

A: Good morning, Oriental Electric Limited.

B: Hello, this is Catherine. I am calling about the appointment with Mr. Liu for this afternoon. Something has just come

A: 早晨好, 东方电子有限公司。

B: 您好, 我是凯瑟琳。我打电话来是关于和刘先生今天下午会面的事。因为发生了一件意想不到的事, 恐怕约会不得

日常交际(一) · Daily Communication I

up. I am afraid the appointment will have to be rescheduled. I am very sorry about the change.

A: That is all right. Maybe we can make another arrangement.

B: You are very kind to say so. Thank you. Do you think tomorrow morning would suit him?

A: I'm afraid there is a bit of a problem. In fact, he has booked up the whole week except tomorrow afternoon.

B: Tomorrow afternoon. Um... When do you think I can come and see him tomorrow afternoon?

A: Please let me check... Tomorrow afternoon... Yes, he'll be free from 3:00 tomorrow afternoon. Do you think it's convenient for you?

B: Yes, that's quite all right for me. Can we change it?

A: All right. Let's change it. Tomorrow afternoon at three. I am going to schedule it for that time and inform Mr. Liu about the change.

B: Thank you very much. See you tomorrow afternoon.

A: See you.

不改期了。很抱歉有这样的变动。

A: 那没什么。也许我们可以再安排个时间会面。

B: 非常感谢您能这么说。那您觉得明天上午对他合适吗?

A: 明天上午可能有点问题。事实上,除了明天下午之外,他这一周的其余时间都有安排了。

B: 明天下午。嗯……您认为我明天下午什么时间可以来见他?

A: 我来查一查……明天下午……对,明天下午他三点以后就有空了。您认为这个时间对您方便吗?

B: 好吧,这个时间对我也很合适。我们能确定就改到这个时间吗?

A: 好的,咱们就定下来吧。明天下午三点。我会安排这个时间的预约,再把变更告诉刘先生。

B: 多谢,明天下午见。

A: 再见。

商务会谈时间

A: May I speak to Mr. Huang, please?

B: I'm sorry. Mr. Huang is quite busy right now. Could I pass him the message?

A: Well, you see, I won't be able to keep my 9:00 appointment today. Do you think I could see him tomorrow?

B: Let me see. He's free from 3:00 ~ 4:30

A: 请问我可以和黄先生讲话吗?

B: 很抱歉,黄先生现在很忙,有什么事情需要我转告吗?

A: 嗯,是这样的,我今天九点不能如约前来。我想明天去见他,您看行吗?

B: 让我想想,他明天下午三点到四点半有

改变约会计划 · Changing an Appointment

tomorrow afternoon. Can you make it then?

A: Yes, of course. Thank you very much.

B: You're quite welcome. Thank you for calling. Bye-bye.

空,那时您能来吗?

A: 当然可以,非常感谢。

B: 别客气,谢谢您来电通知,再见。

6. 取消约会

A: I'm sorry to tell you that I have to cancel our appointment.

B: What's happened?

A: I must meet someone at the airport tomorrow afternoon.

B: I'm sorry to hear that. May we meet the day after tomorrow?

A: OK. I'll be free from nine to eleven. I'll be there waiting for you.

B: We'll discuss the contract in detail.

A: Sure. I'm really sorry for the trouble I've made.

B: Not at all. See you.

A: 我很抱歉地告诉你,我不得不取消我们的约会。

B: 发生什么事了?

A: 我明天下午必须去机场接人。

B: 很遗憾。那我们可以后天见面吗?

A: 可以,我九点到十一点有空。我会在那儿等你。

B: 我们要详细地讨论一下合同。

A: 那当然。给你造成了麻烦我很抱歉。

B: 没关系。再见。



Unit
11

计划夜间外出

Planning an Evening Out

文化
链接

Culture Links

美国的男女生通常到十四、五岁时就开始外出约会。典型的约会是看电影、跳舞或参加社交聚会。临时作出计划约请朋友是可以的,但是提前做好计划则更为礼貌。答应邀请后如果临时有事可能迟到甚至取消约会,必须事先通知对方。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues

1. 外出晚餐

A: Why don't you have dinner with me to-night?

B: I'd love to.

A: Let's say about 6:00?

B: That's OK with me.

A: 今晚和我共进晚餐怎么样?

B: 我很高兴去。

A: 时间定在6点如何?

B: 我没问题。

2. 外出看电影

A: Do you feel like going to see a movie to-night?

B: I'd like that very much.

A: How does 7:30 sound?

B: Fine. See you later.

A: 今晚想要去看场电影吗?

B: 很想去。

A: 时间定在7点半怎么样?

B: 可以。待会见。

3. 去听演唱会

A: How about going to hear a country-and-western singer tonight?

B: I'd enjoy that.

A: I'll pick you up around 8:00.

B: OK. I'll see you then.

A: 今晚去听西部乡村歌手演唱会怎么样?

B: 我很乐意。

A: 我会在8点来接你。

B: 好的。到时见。

4. 外出参加派对

A: Would you like to go to a party tonight?

B: That sounds like a good idea.

A: Would 7:00 be OK?

B: That's fine. I'm looking forward to it.

A: 今晚想去参加一个派对吗?

B: 听起来是个好主意。

A: 7点可以吗?

B: 可以。我很期待。

5. 外出唱卡拉 OK

A: Do you know that song?

B: Which song?

A: The song you hear now.

B: No, I've never heard of this song before.

It's beautiful! Who sing it?

A: Elvis Presley. Don't you recognize his voice?

B: No. How about going to karaoke to-night?

A: Good idea.

A: 你知道那首歌吗?

B: 哪首歌?

A: 你现在听到的这首。

B: 我从来没听说过这首歌。很好听哟! 谁唱的?

A: 猫王埃尔维斯·普雷斯利呀! 你听不出他的声音吗?

B: 听不出。今晚去唱卡拉 OK 怎么样?

A: 好主意。



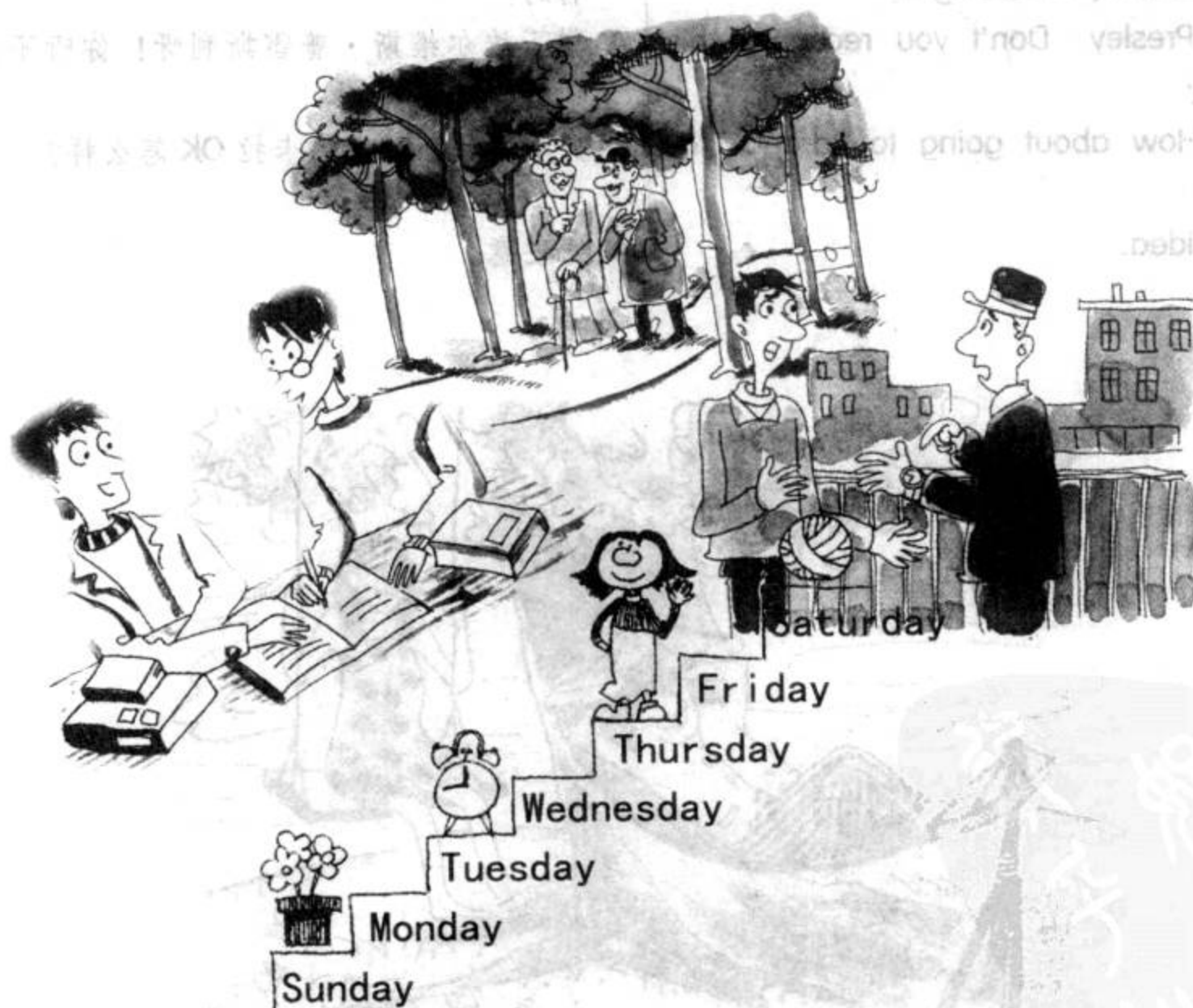
A: Would you like to go to a party tonight?
B: That sounds like a good idea.

A: Would you like to go to a party tonight?
B: That sounds like a good idea.

Chapter 2

日常交际 (二)

Daily Communication II



Unit
1

日期

Dates

文化
链接

Culture Links

在美国,应注意遵守时间的重要价值。各界人士都以时间表来组织他们的活动,结果在外国人看来,美国人似乎总是匆匆忙忙,赶这个忙那个,永远不能轻松舒坦一下。的确,从别国人得出的结论中可知美国社会是“受钟表统治的”。但也有人认为这是确保有条不紊完成目标的好办法。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 询问日期(1)

A: What day is today?

B: It's Thursday, I think.

A: Tomorrow is Friday. It's going to be the weekend.

B: We're busy on weekdays, but we'll have a good rest at the weekend.

A: We'll meet again in a few days.

A: 今天是星期几?

B: 大概是星期四。

A: 明天是星期五,又要到周末了。

B: 我们平时很忙,但周末可以好好休息一下。

A: 那过几天我们再见。

2. 询问日期(2)

A: By the way, could you tell me what day it is today?

B: Well, it's Thursday today.

A: And the date, please.

B: The 5th.

A: 顺便问一下,今天星期几了?

B: 哦,今天星期四。

A: 几号?

B: 5号。

3. 询问日期(3)

A: What is today?

B: Thursday.

A: 今天星期几?

B: 星期四。

日常交际(二) · Daily Communication II

A: So the weekend is coming! How about seeing a film?

B: I'd love to.

A: 那周末就要到啦! 去看场电影怎么样?

B: 我很想看。

4. 特殊日期

A: John, my father isn't there at all. Are you kidding?

B: Poor fellow! What's the date today, buddy?

A: It's... OH, it's the first of April, April Fools' Day.

B: You forgot all about it, didn't you?

A: 约翰,我爸爸根本就不在那儿。你不是开玩笑吧?

B: 可怜的家伙! 哥们儿,今天是几号?

A: 是……哎呀,4月1日,愚人节!

B: 你全给忘了,是不是?

5. 确定日期

A: What day is today? Tuesday?

B: Yeah. I bet you did forget everything.

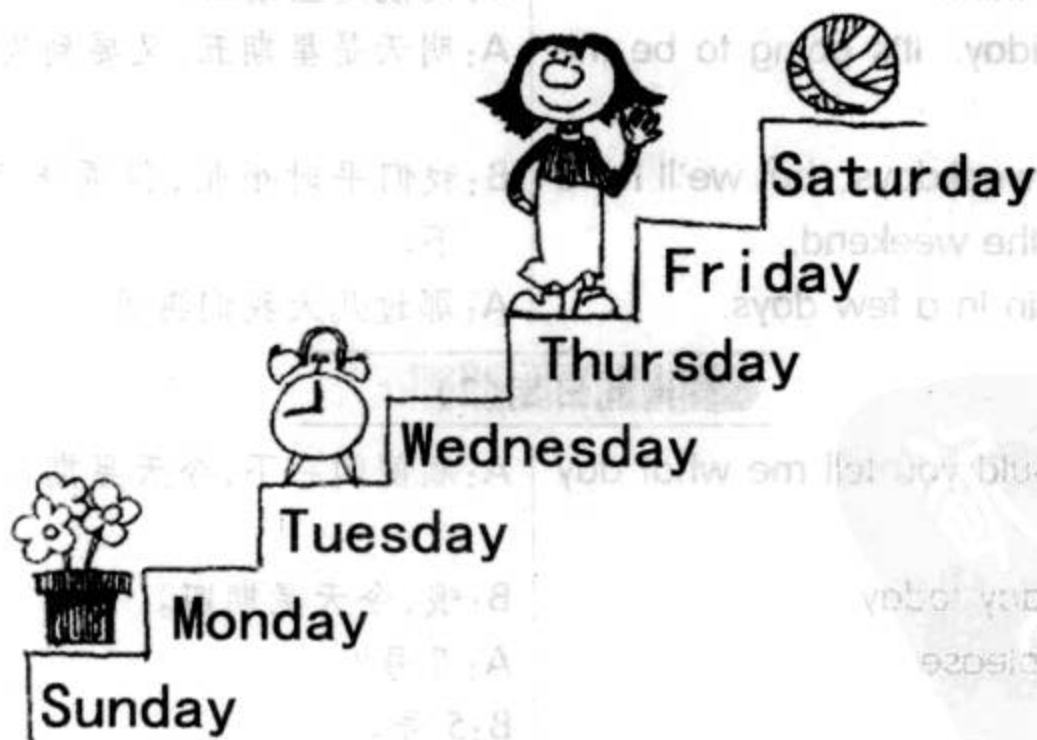
What's the date today, do you know?

A: I bet it's May 5th.

A: 今天星期几? 星期二吗?

B: 对,我想你把什么事忘了吧。你知道今天的日期吗?

A: 我想是5月5日。



Unit
2

时间

The Time

文化
链接

Culture Links

一般来说,谈论时间,我们可以获得有关时间的信息。但有时谈论时间却是一种策略的社交行为,它可以起到催促的作用,可以作为结束谈话的信号,还可以表示有意与某人进行交谈。交际过程中要注意谈论时间的真实意图并作出正确的行为反应和语言应答。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 询问时间(1)

A: What's the time? My watch has stopped.

B: Let me see. It's five minutes to eleven.

A: Is your watch right?

B: I think so. I see it by the radio this morning.

A: 现在几点了? 我的表停了。

B: 我看一下。10:55。

A: 你的表准吗?

B: 我想是准的。今天早上我和电台对过。

2. 询问时间(2)

A: Can you tell me the time?

B: It's 5:30 by my watch.

A: Is your watch right?

A: Yes. There's only a few seconds in a whole month.

A: 几点了?

B: 我的表五点半。

A: 你的表准吗?

B: 准,一个月只差几秒钟。

3. 用指法确定

A: What time is it by your watch?

B: I'm sorry, my watch has stopped.

A: It's 2:42 by my watch. But it moves a bit fast.

A: 你的表几点了?

B: 对不起,我的表停了。

A: 我的表2:42,可是它有点快。

日常交际(二) · Daily Communication II

B: Let's ask someone else.

B: 我们问问别人吧。

4. 时间偏差

A: Is the clock right?

A: 这钟准吗?

B: I'm afraid it gains a little.

B: 恐怕有点儿快。

A: By how many minutes?

A: 快几分钟?

B: Two.

B: 两分钟。

5. 赶赴约会

A: Can you tell me the time? I've got an appointment at 8:30.

A: 几点了? 我8点半有约会。

B: It's 8 sharp by my watch.

B: 我的表正好8点。

A: Gee! There's only thirty minutes to go.

A: 呀, 只剩30分钟了。

6. 赶着出门

A: What time do you have?

A: 你知道几点了吗?

B: A quarter past five.

B: 5:15。

A: I must be off now. I'm pressed for time.

A: 我得走了, 时间很紧。

B: See you.

B: 再见!



Unit
3

天气

The Weather

文化
链接

Culture Links

在一些公共场合,如车站、码头、候机厅等,彼此大都未曾相识,以谈天气作为开场白是最好不过的了,既实用又不得罪人,进而可以引出其他话题,这样就可以摆脱沉闷的尴尬局面。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 天气不错

A: It looks like it's going to be sunny.
B: Yes, it's much better than yesterday.
A: They say we're going to get some rain later.
B: Oh, let's just hope it stays warm.

A: 今天看来会是个晴天。

B: 是的, 比昨天好多了。

A: 据说待会儿要下雨。

B: 哦, 我只希望一直暖和下去。

2. 天气真好

A: Beautiful day, isn't it?
B: Yes, it's not like what the radio said at all.
A: I wish it would stay this way for the weekend.
B: As long as it doesn't snow!

A: 今天天气真好, 是不是?

B: 是的, 一点也不像收音机里说的那样。

A: 但愿整个周末都能保持这样的好天气。

B: 只要不下雪就行啊!

3. 天气变好

A: It seems to be clearing up.
B: It's such a nice change.
A: I really don't think this weather will last.
B: Let's just hope it doesn't get cold again.

A: 看来天要放晴了。

B: 真是令人高兴的转变。

A: 我确实认为这样的好天气长不了。

B: 但愿不会再冷。

日常交际(二) · Daily Communication II

4. 猜测天气

A: I think it's going to be a nice day.

B: It's certainly a big improvement over yesterday.

A: But it's supposed to get cloudy and windy again this afternoon.

B: Well, the worst of the winter should be over.

A: 我想今天会是一个好天。

B: 肯定比昨天大有好转。

A: 但是, 据说今天下午又要转阴而且刮风了。

B: 不过, 冬天最糟糕的一段日子总该过去了。

5. 天气太热

A: How's the weather today?

B: It's hot.

A: I really don't think this weather will last.

B: Let's just hope it doesn't get hotter.

A: 今天的天气怎么样?

B: 今天很热。

A: 我认为这种天气不会持续下去。

B: 希望不要更热了。

6. 天气糟糕

A: Is it going to rain today?

B: It's supposed to rain.

A: I really hate this weather.

B: Well, it won't last long.

A: 今天会下雨吗?

B: 好像会下雨。

A: 我真的很讨厌这种天气。

B: 嗯, 不会持续太长时间的。

7. 询问天气

A: What's the weather today?

B: It's fine today.

A: What was the weather like yesterday?

B: It rained all day yesterday. The weather was awful last week.

A: What will the weather be like tomorrow?

B: It's going to be sunny tomorrow.

A: 今天天气怎么样?

B: 今天天晴。

A: 昨天天气怎么样?

B: 昨天下了一整天雨。上星期天气坏极了。

A: 明天的天气将怎么样?

B: 明天将会是晴天。

8. 谈论天气

A: What's the temperature today?

B: It's about 5 degrees centigrade.

A: What's the weather forecast for tomorrow?

B: The weatherman says it's going to snow tomorrow.

A: 今天气温多少度?

B: 大约 5 摄氏度。

A: 天气预告说明天怎么样?

B: 天气预报员说明天要下雪。

A: Are you used to the climate here?

B: I think I'll soon get used to it.

A: What is the average temperature of Beijing?

B: It's about 18°C, but in winter the temperature may fall to 10 ~ 15 degrees below zero. And we have a long winter.

A: Which season do you like best?

B: I prefer spring when little by little everything becomes green and the weather is almost always nice.

A: 你对这里的气候习惯吗?

B: 我想我很快就能适应。

A: 北京的平均气温是多少?

B: 18 摄氏度左右, 可是冬季气温会下降到零下 10 ~ 15 摄氏度, 而且冬季是漫长的。

A: 你最喜欢哪个季节?

B: 我喜欢春天, 这时候万物转绿, 几乎总是晴天。

9. 好天气里去散步

A: Hello, Mary. Nice day, isn't it?

B: Yes, what a wonderful day! The sky has cleared up in the end.

A: I do feel like an outdoor exercise. After all, we haven't had such a beautiful day for a long time.

B: How about taking a walk in the park?

A: OK. It's delightful to have a walk in the park with the air so fresh.

B: (After they entering the park) Great, it's so quiet here. We have the park to ourselves, only you and me.

A: Are you kidding? Don't you see many people over there? Just on your right.

B: Oh, I see them. Beautiful weather should be shared by all the people.

A: Ah, you changed so fast.

A: 你好, 玛莉。天气真好, 不是吗?

B: 是啊, 多美好的一天啊! 天终于晴了。

A: 我想出去锻炼锻炼。毕竟, 好久我们都没有这么好的天气了。

B: 去公园散步怎么样?

A: 好呀。在这么新鲜的空气中去公园散步, 真是太高兴了。

B: (进入公园之后) 太棒了, 这里真安静。我们可以独享公园了, 只有你和我。

A: 你开玩笑吧? 你没看见那里有很多人吗? 就在我右边。

B: 噢, 我看见了。好的天气要大家分享嘛。

A: 哈, 你变得倒快。

Unit

4

问候健康

Asking about Health

文化
链接

Culture Links

人们常常出于礼貌问候健康。这是开始交谈时常说的话。如果你知道他一直身体不适,你或许可以问他感觉如何。但千万不要用牵涉个人的评语或问题。美国人可能会对于有关金钱以及个人外表的问题或批评,感到反感。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 询问朋友病况

A: I haven't seen Bill lately. How is he?

B: He's still pretty sick.

A: That's too bad. What does he have?

B: We don't know, but he's going to the doctor tomorrow.

A: Let me know if there's anything I can do.

B: Thanks a lot. I'll tell him.

A: 最近都没看到比尔。他怎么样?

B: 他仍然病得很严重。

A: 真糟糕。他患了什么病?

B: 我们不知道,但他打算明天去看病。

A: 如果有我能帮忙的请告诉我。

B: 多谢了。我会告诉他的。

2. 问候朋友家人(1)

A: How's your brother doing?

B: As a matter of fact, he hasn't been feeling too well.

A: I'm sorry to hear that. What's the matter?

B: He has a slight fever.

A: Tell him I hope he's better soon.

B: I'll tell him. Thanks for asking about him.

A: 你的哥哥最近怎么样?

B: 事实上,他身体不太舒服。

A: 听到这个我很遗憾,他怎么了?

B: 他有点发烧。

A: 转告他希望他能很快康复。

B: 我会转告的。感谢你对他的问候。

3. 问候朋友家人(2)

A: Where's Tom this evening?

B: He's a little sick under the weather.

A: Really! What's the matter with him?

B: He has the flu.

A: Tell him I was asking about him.

B: I will.

A: 今晚汤姆去哪儿了?

B: 气候的缘故他有点不太舒服。

A: 真的吗? 他怎么了?

B: 他得了流感。

A: 请转告我对他的问候。

B: 我会的。

4. 问候朋友

A: How's your father been?

B: He's been out of work for a couple of days.

A: What's wrong with him?

B: He has a bad cold.

A: Well, tell him to take it easy and that I hope he feels better.

B: Thanks. I'll tell him.

A: 你父亲最近怎么样?

B: 他已经好几天没去上班了。

A: 他怎么了?

B: 他患了重感冒。

A: 哦, 跟他说别着急, 希望他能感觉好一些。

B: 谢谢, 我会转告他的。



Unit
5

换零钱

Asking for Changes

文化
链接

Culture Links

在国外,很多时候都需要有零钱付小费。在旅馆付小费都是在早上要出门前,在每张床的枕头上放一元的纸钞,当然这是一般平价的旅馆,如果是去住高级的旅馆,可多付一些。另外如果有门房帮你提行李上楼,也请记得给小费,一般也都是给一元纸钞。不过美国的人力很贵,一般的旅馆都是自助式,这一元小费也就省下来了。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 打电话

A: Excuse me, but could you give me some change?

B: Let me see. Are dimes and quarters OK?

A: I want to make a long distance phone call.

B: Then you'll need small change.

A: 打扰一下,您能给我换些零钱吗?

B: 让我看看。一角和二角五分的硬币可以吗?

A: 我想要打个长途电话。

B: 那么你要用到小面额的零钱。

2. 买邮票

A: Pardon me, but I was wondering if you could break a one.

B: Let me look. What do you need?

A: I need the change for the stamp machine.

B: I think dimes and quarters will do.

A: 打扰了,请问能否换一元的零钱?

B: 让我看看。你需要用来做什么?

A: 我要在邮票自动售贩机上买邮票。

B: 我想一角和二角五分硬币就可以了。

3. 付停车费

A: Sorry to bother you, but do you have

A: 对不起打扰了,能换一元的零钱吗?

change for a one?

B: I'll have to look. What do you want it for?

A: I need it for the parking meter.

B: I can give you quarters, if that'll help.

B: 我得看看。你要用来做什么?

A: 我要付停车计时费。

B: 如果能用到的话,我可以给你换些二角五分硬币。

4. 买烟 (1)

A: Excuse me, could you give me change for a dollar?

B: I'll see what I have. What do you need it for?

A: I want to get cigarettes.

B: You can use quarters, dimes and nickels.

A: 打扰一下,能给我换开一美元吗?

B: 我得看看有没有。你要用来做什么?

A: 我想要买烟。

B: 你可以换二角五分、一角和五分硬币。

5. 买烟 (2)

A: Can I trouble you for some change?

B: I'll see what I have got. What's it for?

A: I need some cigarettes.

B: I can let you have some silvers if that is good.

A: OK, thanks.

A: 你能给我换些零钱吗?

B: 我看看有什么面额的零钱,干什么用?

A: 我买烟用。

B: 如果银币可以的话,我能给你换几个。

A: 可以,谢谢。

6. 换不同面额的零钱

A: Could you change this note for me, please?

B: Yes. How would you like it?

A: Eight tens, six ones and large silver for others.

B: OK, here you are.

A: Thanks.

B: It's OK.

A: 你能替我换开这张钞票吗?

B: 可以。你要换成什么票面的?

A: 8 张 10 元的,6 张 1 元的,其余的就换成大额银币。

B: 好了,请收好。

A: 谢谢。

B: 没什么。

Unit

6

请求与求助

Making Requests and Asking Favours

文化
链接

Culture Links

随着电脑网络和通讯技术的迅速发展,人们可以实时而方便地获取十分丰富的信息。在诸多公共场所也设有许多公用信息服务亭和信息显示屏,可方便地为人们提供信息服务。然而,有些信息则只能通过人际间的问讯方可取得。

1. 世界上没有万事不求人的情况,请人帮忙是常事,不必考虑过多。
2. 在请人帮忙时,除了注意必要的礼节之外,还应注意:
 - (1) 在提出自己的要求时,不必过多考虑自己的语言表达能力;
 - (2) 要坦率地提出自己要求帮忙的事,切勿绕圈子,也不必过分注意礼节而显得太拘束;
 - (3) 在别人请求帮忙时,只要自己能办到就应表示出乐于助人的精神来;实在办不到的,也应委婉地予以回应,忌用“No, I can't”这样生硬的回答方式;
 - (4) 如果别人提出要帮助你,而自己又出于某种原因不想接受时,则应婉言予以谢绝并且应当真诚地感激对方;这样,一来显得热情而有礼貌,二来也不至于扫对方的兴。
 - (5) 请西方人帮了忙,无论多么小的事,切记要说声谢。
3. 向不熟悉的人打听情况时,一要注意礼节;二要注意用语,力求简明(宜用口语不宜用书面语言);三要尊重别人的风俗习惯。如果自己问的问题对方不愿意回答时,切勿继续追问,而应找一个合适的话题岔开较为自然。
4. 当对方所问的信息自己不知道确切的答案时,要如实地向其讲清楚,切不可给别人以模糊不清甚至是错误的回答。
5. 一般说来,除了隐私问题之外,其他情况均可打听。
6. 对于西方国家的人,不应向其打听的情况有:个人财产、工资收入、婚姻状况、宗教信仰、年龄、尤其是女性的年龄和政治倾向等问题。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 向人借磁带

A: Do you think you could lend me some of your tapes?

B: Until when?

A: Oh, just over the spring holiday.

B: I'm not sure. I'll have to ask Tom first. I have promised to lend it to him.

A: 你看能借我几盘磁带吗?

B: 借到什么时候?

A: 哦, 过了春节就还。

B: 我不确定。我得先问问汤姆, 我已经答应借给他了。

2. 向人借车

A: Would you mind if I borrowed your car?

B: Well, when exactly?

A: Until Monday or Tuesday of next week.

B: I'm sorry, but it's just not possible.

A: 介意我借你的车用用吗?

B: 不介意, 具体是什么时候?

A: 用到下周一或周二。

B: 对不起, 那会儿刚好没办法借给你哦。

3. 请求借宿 (1)

A: I was wondering if you'd let me stay with you for a few days.

B: It really depends on when.

A: Until the end of this month, if that's possible.

B: Let me think it over, and I'll let you know later.

A: 我在想你能不能让我跟你住上几天。

B: 那真得看时间。

A: 如果可能的话, 要到这月末。

B: 让我好好想想, 过会儿告诉你。

4. 请求借宿 (2)

A: Would you do me a favor?

B: Sure.

A: I'm afraid it's a bother for you to do that.

B: I'd be happy to help you in anyway I can.

A: Could you put my friend up for a few days?

B: No problem.

A: You're very kind to take the trouble to help me.

A: 能帮我个忙吗?

B: 当然能。

A: 恐怕太麻烦你了。

B: 我乐意尽可能地帮助你。

A: 你能让我的朋友住几夜吗?

B: 没问题。

A: 你真好, 不嫌麻烦地帮助我。

日常交际(二) · Daily Communication II

B: I'd be glad to.

A: Thank you very much. I wish I'd repay you somehow for your kindness.

B: It's my pleasure.

B: 我乐意为 you 分忧。

A: 十分感谢你, 但愿对你的好意我能有所报答。

B: 这是我的荣幸。

5. 征求听课

A: Is there any chance of my attending your lecture?

B: When?

A: Anytime next week.

B: Yes, I guess that would be all right.

A: Thank you.

B: You are welcome.

A: 你有可能让我去听你的讲座吗?

B: 什么时候?

A: 下星期任何时间都行。

B: 好的, 我想可以。

A: 谢谢。

B: 不客气。

6. 向人借打字机

A: Is there any chance of my borrowing your type-writer?

B: For how long?

A: Until the end of the week.

B: Yes, I guess that would be all right.

A: 我能借用你的打字机吗?

B: 要用多长时间。

A: 用到周末。

B: 好, 我想没问题。

7. 向人借电脑

A: Would you mind my borrowing your computer?

A: Well, when exactly?

A: Until Tuesday or Wednesday of next week.

B: I am sorry, but I am using it these days.

A: 介意把你的电脑借给我吗?

B: 不介意, 具体什么时候?

A: 直到下周二或周三。

B: 对不起, 我这几天正在用呢。

8. 询问购物地点

A: Excuse me. Could you help me?

B: Yes, what can I do for you?

A: Can you tell me where I can get a map of Paris?

B: Sure, can you see that tall building at the end of the street?

A: Yes, that white building?

B: Right, that's a book store. I'm sure you can find the map there.

A: 劳驾, 你能帮个忙吗?

B: 可以, 有什么事要帮忙?

A: 你能告诉我, 在哪里能买到巴黎地图吗?

B: 当然能, 你看见街尽头的那幢高楼了吗?

A: 看见了, 是那幢白色的楼吧?

B: 正是, 那是一个书店, 在那儿你一定能买到。

请求与求助 · Making Requests and Asking Favours

A: Many thanks.

B: You're welcome.

A: 非常感谢。

B: 别客气。

9. 请人代买东西

A: May I ask a favor of you?

B: I would if I could.

A: Could you possibly do some shopping for me?

B: Yes, I can.

A: I'm afraid it's bother for you to do this.

B: It's not any bother. I'd be love to.

A: It's very kind of you. Many thanks.

B: Don't mention it.

A: 能请你帮个忙吗?

B: 如有可能我一定帮忙。

A: 你能帮我去买些东西吗?

B: 可以。

A: 恐怕这太麻烦你了。

B: 一点也不麻烦, 我乐意做此事。

A: 你真好, 非常感谢。

B: 没什么。

10. 请人代看孩子

A: Could you give me a hand?

B: Certainly.

A: Have you got a minute?

B: What can I do for you?

A: Could you baby-sit for me tonight?

B: I'd be like to.

A: Thanks a lot.

B: It's a pleasure.

A: 你能帮我个忙吗?

B: 当然可以。

A: 能耽误你一点时间吗?

B: 有什么我可以帮你做的?

A: 今晚你能帮我照看一下小孩吗?

B: 我乐意承担。

A: 谢谢。

B: 别客气。

11. 感谢帮忙

A: Thank you very much. You really helped me out.

B: Don't mention it. It's a chip shot.

A: No, you really save my skin this time.

B: That's what friends are for.

A: 非常感谢, 你真的帮我摆脱了困境。

B: 别客气, 小事一桩。

A: 不, 这次你确实帮了我一个大忙。

B: 这正是朋友的价值所在嘛。

12. 请人帮忙解题

A: Would you do me a favor?

B: What do you want me to do?

A: Can you help me with this math problem?

B: Sorry, I can't. It's beyond my power.

A: Then, could I borrow your new lap-top?

A: 请你帮个忙好吗?

B: 你想要我干什么?

A: 你能帮我解这道数学题吗?

B: 抱歉, 我解不了, 这超出了我的能力。

A: 那么, 能否借用一下你的新笔记本电脑?

日常交际(二) · Daily Communication II

B: How long for?

A: About four days.

B: I'd like to say yes, but it's just not possible.

B: 用多久?

A: 大约用 4 天。

B: 我想说可以, 但实在办不到。

13. 向人借钱

A: Would you like my help?

B: Just what I needed to have your help.

A: What do you want me to do?

B: Can I borrow some money from you?

A: Let me think it over and I'll tell you later.

A: 你要帮忙吗?

B: 我正需要你帮忙呢。

A: 你要我做什么?

B: 能借点钱给我吗?

A: 让我考虑一下, 过一会再告诉你。



Unit
7

表达谢意

Expressing One's Gratitude

文化
链接

Culture Links

在英美社会,别人为自己做了事,帮了忙,说声“谢谢”,这是起码的礼节。“Thank you”几乎用于一切场合,一切人之间,即使夫妻间、父母子女间也不例外。回到家里妻子给你送来了一杯咖啡,你说声“Thanks.”你准备明天早起,第二天早晨,妈妈准时叫醒了你,你说“Thank you.”

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 打车致谢

A: Good afternoon, madam. Is there anything I can do for you?

B: Yes, I spent so much time sightseeing here. It is already so late now. I am afraid I can't catch the last bus back to downtown.

A: Don't worry. I will try to get a taxi for you. You can take it to the bus station.

B: I am very grateful to your help.

A: Don't mention it. It is my duty.

B: Thanks again.

A: 女士,下午好。有什么能帮忙的?

B: 是的,我在这儿观光的时间太长了。现在已经这么晚了。恐怕我赶不上回城里的末班车了。

A: 别担心。我会尽力给你打个车。你可以坐出租去公车站。

B: 非常感激你的帮忙。

A: 不客气。这是我的职责。

B: 再次感谢您。

2. 招待致谢(1)

A: Hello, Mr. Smith, I am returning to Shanghai by the 10:00 plane. I am calling to thank you for all your help during my stay here.

B: Don't mention it. It's been my pleasure.

A: 你好,史密斯先生。我将乘10点的飞机返回上海。我打电话来是向你道谢的,承蒙在我逗留期间对我的招待和帮助。

B: 不用客气。这是我的荣幸。

日常交际(二) · Daily Communication II

A: Next time you are in Shanghai, please let me know, and let me be of some assistance to you.

B: OK. I will.

A: Have a nice flight back, and take care. Thanks for your call.

A: 下一次你去上海的时候,请通知我一声,让我给你提供点方便。

B: 好,我会的。

A: 祝你返航一路平安。多保重。谢谢你的来电。

3. 招待致谢(2)

A: Thank you for a lovely day. I really enjoyed it.

B: It was nice to have you with us.

A: Thank you for the picnic too. It was supper.

B: Not at all. It was a pleasure. Perhaps you will come out with us again while you are here.

A: Yes, I'd love to. Thanks again. Good-bye.

B: Goodbye.

A: 今天玩得很痛快,谢谢你们。我这一天过得真快乐。

B: 你能跟我们一起太好了。

A: 还得谢谢你们招待的野餐。这顿饭好极了。

B: 不必客气。我很高兴。你在此逗留期间,也许你愿意再跟我们出去玩。

A: 是的,我很乐意。再一次感谢。再见。

B: 再见。

4. 招待致谢(3)

A: Hello, Mr. Smith, Wang Peng speaks.

B: Hello! Mr. Wang, this is Smith.

A: I'm calling to thank you for the wonderful dinner I had yesterday.

B: It's a pleasure.

A: I'll come back to China tonight. I hope to see you again sometime.

B: I hope so.

A: I appreciate all help of you during my stay here.

B: Don't mention it.

A: Please let me know when you go to China and let me be of some assistance to you.

B: Yes, I will. Have a nice flight back.

A: Thanks, good-bye!

A: 史密斯先生,你好。我是王朋。

B: 你好,王先生,我是史密斯。

A: 我打电话感谢你昨天为我所设的丰盛晚餐。

B: 不必客气。

A: 今晚我就要回中国了,希望有机会再度相见。

B: 我也希望有机会再度见到你。

A: 衷心感谢我在此逗留期间,你对我提供的所有帮助。

B: 不必客气。

A: 你到中国时请一定告诉我,好让我给你提供点方便。

B: 我会的,祝你回程一路平安。

A: 谢谢,再见!

表达谢意 · Expressing One's Gratitude

B: Good-bye!

B: 再见!

5. 失物归还致谢

A: Here is your change and receipt. Please call again.

A: 这是您的零钱和收据。欢迎再来。

B: Thank you for your help.

B: 谢谢你的帮助。

A: Just a moment, please. Is this handbag yours, by any chance?

A: 请等一下。这个包也许是您的吧?

B: Oh, yes. I was really forgetful. Thank you very much indeed.

B: 哦, 是的, 我真是健忘。非常感谢。

A: Not at all.

A: 不用客气。

6. 收到礼物致谢

A: Mr. Mass, here is a gift for you.

A: 马斯先生, 这件礼物送给你。

B: Oh. Thanks a million.

B: 哦, 万分感谢。

A: It's a souvenir I bought for you from Rome.

A: 这是我从罗马为你买的一件纪念品。

B: How beautiful! I love it at all.

B: 真漂亮, 我非常喜欢它。

A: I'm glad you like it.

A: 我很高兴你喜欢它。

B: It's very kind of you. I really don't know how I can thank you enough.

B: 你真好, 我真不知道怎样感谢你才好。

A: Don't mention it. Just a little thing I did.

A: 小事一桩, 不必客气。

7. 麻烦对方致谢

A: Good morning, Madam, can I take your order now?

A: 太太, 早上好, 你点好菜了吗?

B: Yes, I'd like to have a roast chicken leg.

B: 我要一份烤鸡腿。

A: Anything else?

A: 还要别的吗?

B: No.

B: 不要了。

A: How about drink?

A: 喝点什么?

B: No, enough.

B: 不喝, 够了。

A: Please wait a moment.

A: 请稍等。

B: Waiter, come back.

B: 服务员, 回来一下。

A: OK. What's up, Madam?

A: 太太, 什么事?

B: It's not too salty.

B: 菜别太咸了。

A: OK.

A: 好的。

B: Waiter, come back again.

B: 服务员, 再回来一下。

日常交际(二) · Daily Communication II

A: Yes, anything wrong?

B: Not too rare.

A: Yes, I see.

B: Why do you come back again?

A: There's a question I want to ask you.

B: What's that?

A: Which leg do you want to have, right leg or left one?

B: Thanks, thanks a lot and thanks a million.

A: Why do you say so many thanks?

B: I can't forget about this when next time.

A: 是, 有什么问题吗?

B: 别烤得太嫩了。

A: 知道了。

B: 你怎么又回来了?

A: 还有一个问题要问你一下。

B: 什么问题?

A: 你要吃鸡的右腿还是左腿?

B: 谢谢, 多谢, 万分感谢。

A: 为什么你说这么多的谢谢?

B: 下次我就不会忘记这一点。



Unit
8

表达歉意

Expressing One's Apology

文化
链接

Culture Links

1. 生活中人们难免会发生过失,即便是小的过失,也要及时向对方道歉,以免招致别人的埋怨和不满。

2. 一般情况下,简单地说句道歉的话就行了。但有时,如损坏了别人的东西,伤害了别人的感情等,就要进一步做出解释,甚至还要主动向对方提出弥补措施。

3. 当别人向你道歉时,则应及时回答表示理解和不介意的用语。例如可以说: Not at all. It doesn't matter. That's quite all right. 以此来表示原谅了对方。

4. 参加活动需要提前离开时,应先向主事说 Excuse me.

5. 向对方表示不同见解或不得不打断对方的讲话时,也要先说 Excuse me.

6. 表示 Sorry, Excuse me, Pardon 应采用降调以示恳切,若用升调则会给人一种太随意的感觉。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 迟到致歉(1)

A: I am sorry to have kept all of you waiting. I was delayed by something urgent.

B: You are not late, Mr. Thomas. There're still 15 minutes to go. Mr. White has just called you.

A: What did he say?

B: He said there was a traffic jam, but he is coming.

A: He shouldn't drive his car. He should come here by bus.

B: 很抱歉让你们大家等了这么久。我被一些急事给耽搁了。

A: 你没有迟到,托马斯先生,还有15分钟。怀特先生刚才打电话给你了。

B: 他说什么?

A: 他说有些堵车,他在路上。

B: 他不该开车,他应该乘车来。

日常交际(二) · Daily Communication II

2. 迟到致歉(2)

A: I beg your pardon for being late.

B: Better late than never.

A: So sorry, I don't mean to be.

B: That's perfectly all right.

A: Thanks for your forgiving.

B: It's really of nothing.

A: I'll work hard.

B: That's quite all right.

A: 请原谅,我迟到了。

B: 迟到总比不到好。

A: 确实抱歉得很,我不是故意的。

B: 没关系。

A: 谢谢你的宽恕。

B: 真的没什么。

A: 我会努力工作的。

B: 那很好。

3. 遗失他人物品致歉

A: I'm sorry, but I can't find the book you lent me. I guess I have lost it.

B: Don't worry about it.

A: I really feel bad about it. Let me buy you a new one.

B: No. Don't be silly. I wouldn't dream of letting you do that.

A: 很抱歉,我找不到你借给我的那本书了。我想我是给丢了。

B: 别担心了。

A: 对此我真的很抱歉。让我再给你买本新的吧。

B: 不用了,别这么傻。我不会让你那么做的。

4. 弄脏物品致歉

A: I'm afraid I spilled coffee on the tablecloth.

B: Oh, never mind. I am just going to do the laundry today.

A: I want to apologize. Is there anything I can do for you?

B: It really doesn't matter at all. I never did like it anyway.

A: 对不起我把咖啡洒在桌布上了。

B: 哦,没关系。我正好今天要洗衣服。

A: 我要向你道歉。有什么我能为你做的?

B: 真的没关系。反正我一直不太喜欢这个桌布。

5. 打破物品致歉

A: I feel terrible, but I've just broken your ashtray.

B: It's nothing to get upset about.

A: I don't know what to say. I'd like to replace it.

B: No. It's out of the question.

A: 很对不起,我刚把你的烟灰缸打破了。

B: 不用为此担心。

A: 我不知说什么好。我想给你换个新的。

B: 不需要,那不是大事。

表达歉意 · Expressing One's Apology

6. 弄错物品致歉(1)

A: I'm really sorry, but I seem to have misplaced your towel.

B: Oh, that's all right.

A: I'm very sorry. Can I get you another one?

B: No. Forget about it. It's not important.

A: 真得很抱歉,我好像把你的毛巾放错地方了。

B: 哦,没关系。

A: 很抱歉,要不要我再给你拿一条?

B: 不用了。别放在心上。没多重要。

7. 弄脏物品致歉(2)

A: Oh, the ink is spilled on the desk.

B: Did it spill on your clothes?

A: No, but the table cloth was dirty.

B: That's OK.

A: I'm afraid it's too hard to wash off the stain.

B: It's no big deal.

A: I really feel great shame. Let me buy a new one for you.

B: Don't be silly, forget about it.

A: 哦,墨水泼到书桌上了。

B: 洒到你的衣服上了吗?

A: 没有,但是把桌布弄脏了。

B: 没关系。

A: 恐怕这些斑迹很难洗掉。

B: 没什么大不了的。

A: 我真感到惭愧,我给你买块新的吧。

B: 别犯傻,忘了吧。

8. 缺少物品致歉

A: Good morning, sir. May I help you?

B: Yes, thank you. I want to get a handbag.

A: Do you want it for yourself or for your girlfriend?

B: No, I have no girlfriend.

A: Please excuse me for what I said just now. What do you think of this one?

B: I am afraid it is too big.

A: Sorry. It is the smallest size we have.

B: Too bad. But, is there any other leather store nearby?

A: Oh, yes. There is a big one at the right corner of the street. Perhaps you will get one there.

A: 早上好,先生。能为您效劳吗?

B: 是的,谢谢。我想买一个手提包。

A: 是买给您自己还是您女朋友?

B: 不,我没有女朋友。

A: 请原谅我刚才所说的。您觉得这个怎么样?

B: 恐怕太大了。

A: 很抱歉,这是我们这里最小的了。

B: 真糟糕,那附近还有其他的皮革店吗?

A: 哦,有的,在这条街的右拐角处有一家。您也许会在那儿买到。

日常交际(二) · Daily Communication II

B: I hope so. Thanks.

B: 希望如此。谢谢。

9. 做事不要致歉

A: Please forgive me for rushing into your room forgetting to knock at the door.

B: Never mind.

A: I'm so sorry to disturb you so early.

B: It doesn't matter.

A: I'm dreadfully sorry. I forgot to book the tickets yesterday.

B: Oh, it's nothing.

A: I let you down. I'll make it up to you somehow.

B: Not a bit of it, don't blame yourself.

A: 请原谅,我忘了敲门就冲进了你的房间。

B: 不必介意。

A: 实在抱歉,这么早就打扰你了。

B: 没关系。

A: 抱歉至极,昨天我忘了订票。

B: 哦,那没什么。

A: 让你失望了,我会设法弥补的。

B: 一点关系也没有,不要自责。

10. 遗忘物品致歉

A: I'm terrible sorry. I seem to have mislaid your MP4.

B: Don't worry about that.

A: Very sorry that I have caused you so much trouble.

B: No trouble at all.

A: Won't you let me buy a new one tomorrow?

B: No, that's quite out of the question.

A: Please accept my deep apology.

B: I never did like this MP4 anyway. I won't hear of it.

A: 抱歉至极,我不知道把你的 MP4 放到哪里了。

B: 没关系。

A: 实在抱歉,给你造成了那么大的麻烦。

B: 一点麻烦也没有。

A: 让我明天给你买一只新的好吗?

B: 不,绝对不能要你赔。

A: 请接受我深深的歉意。

B: 反正我本来就不喜欢这只 MP4,不要再提这件事了。

Unit
9

称赞

Presenting Compliments

文化
链接

Culture Links

1. 应邀作客时,对于东道主的厨艺、家中的装饰、墙上的照片等应加以赞许。“Excellent”可用于称赞别人以技巧、知识等完成某事或某项工作并且有出色的表现,意为“十分出色”。如:—I got the champion. —Excellent! (——我获得了冠军。——你太出色了。)

2. 出席宴会(聚会)时,要对女宾的服装大加称赞。
3. 对于好久未见的朋友,见面时也要加以赞美。
4. 虽然赞美有时近于恭维,只要不离谱,效果准不错。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 称赞物品

A: That's a very nice pair of glasses.
B: Does it really look OK?
A: Yes, and I like the color too. It matches your eyes.
B: And I got it on sale.
A: That's incredible!

A: 那是一副非常漂亮的眼镜。
B: 真的看起来还可以吗?
A: 是的,我也喜欢它的颜色,和你眼睛很配。
B: 而且我是打折买的。
A: 难以置信。

2. 称赞装饰品

A: I love that vase.
B: Do you really like it?
A: Yes, it looks perfect.
B: It wasn't very expensive either.
A: That's amazing! It looks expensive.

A: 我很喜欢那个花瓶。
B: 你真的喜欢吗?
A: 是的,它看起来完美无瑕。
B: 价钱也不贵。
A: 真让人吃惊! 看起来很贵的样子。

3. 称赞着装(1)

A: I like your new skirt.

A: 我喜欢你的新裙子。

日常交际(二) · Daily Communication II

B: Do you think it fits me?

A: Yes. It looks terrific!

B: I bought it at half price.

A: You were lucky to find it.

B: 你认为适合我穿吗?

A: 是的, 看起来很漂亮。

B: 我是以半价买的。

A: 你真幸运买到这条裙子。

4. 称赞着装(2)

A: What a beautiful sweater!

B: Do you think it looks good on me?

A: Yes, and it goes beautifully with your pants.

B: You won't believe it, but it was really cheap.

A: I wish I could find one just like it.

A: 多漂亮的毛衫啊!

B: 你觉得我穿着漂亮吗?

A: 是的, 它和你的裤子搭在一起很漂亮。

B: 你不会相信, 它真的很便宜。

A: 多希望我也可以买到一件像这样的毛衫。

5. 称赞着装(3)

A: Anna, that outfit looks wonderful on you!
The color goes with your trousers perfectly.

B: Thanks, Carla. That's quite a compliment coming from you. You always dress so tastefully.

A: Well, that dress certainly shows your good taste. It must have cost a lot.

B: No, not much. I got it on sale at the mall—60% off.

A: Really? You're an amazing bargain hunter! Next time there's a sale, promise you'll let me tag along with you.

B: It's a promise.

A: 安娜, 你穿那套衣服真好看。颜色和你裤子的颜色正好相配。

B: 谢谢, 卡拉。你过奖了。你穿衣服一直很有品味。

A: 嗯, 那件衣服说明了你出色的鉴赏力。它一定花了不少钱。

B: 不, 不是很多。我在商店打折时买的——四折。

A: 真的吗? 你真是个淘宝专家。下次再有打折, 一定要让我跟着你。

B: 就这么定了。

6. 称赞嗓音好

A: Alice, I never knew you had such a lovely voice. You really can sing, can't you?

B: Thanks, Mark. I used to be a member of the school choir.

A: No wonder you can control your voice so well. You are a professional singer.

A: 艾丽斯, 我不知道你有这么好的嗓子。你唱得真不赖, 不是吗?

B: 谢谢你, 马克。我过去是学校合唱团的成员。

A: 怪不得你的嗓音控制得这么好, 原来你是个职业歌手呀。

称赞 · Presenting Compliments

B: Well, you are flattering me. I wouldn't say I am a professional, but I did receive some training at school. My music teacher used to be a professional singer.

A: Well, a good teacher makes good students.

B: You are quite right.

B: 噢,你过奖了。我可不敢说是个职业歌手,但在学校我确实受过一些训练。我的音乐老师曾经是位职业歌手。

A: 哦,名师出高徒啊。

B: 你说得很对。



Unit
10

表示祝贺

Congratulations

文化
链接

Culture Links

1. 朋友的晋升、乔迁、结婚、生孩子、生意发财、事业成功等宜及时送去友好的祝贺。

2. 同事、同仁之间,择机表示良好的祝愿,是社交活动的一项重要内容。这对于加深了解、增进友谊和开展业务活动都有一定的促进作用。

3. 对于同事的发明创造或完成了重大工程技术项目,要由衷敬佩地予以祝贺。

4. 在运动员创造了新纪录时,更应当充满激情地予以祝贺。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 祝贺竞赛获胜

A: Congratulations on your success in the competition. That is quite something.

B: Thank you. I was lucky this time.

A: I think luck played a very small part in your victory. It is solely due to your hard work and efforts. That brings honor to you and joy to us.

B: I am flattered.

A: It is real word.

B: Thank you very much.

A: 祝贺你在比赛中获得胜利。大有作为。

B: 谢谢你,这次我幸运罢了。

A: 我想运气在你的取胜中只占了一小部分。它主要归功于你的勤奋和努力。它给你带来荣誉,为我们带来了快乐。

B: 你过奖了。

A: 这是真话。

B: 非常感谢。

2. 祝贺升迁

A: I hear that you have been promoted. Congratulations on your promotion!

B: Thank you, but I hate having to leave here and working abroad.

A: 我听说你高升了。祝贺你!

B: 谢谢你。我不愿意离开这儿到国外去工作。

表示祝贺 · Congratulations

A: When are you going?

B: Sometime next month.

A: 你什么时候走?

B: 下个月某个时候。

3. 祝贺比赛获胜

A: I just heard that you won the long-distance race. Congratulations on your victory.

B: Thank you.

A: So it is really worth your great effort. And hope you can keep the record you've made today.

B: I will try my best.

A: 我刚刚听说长跑比赛你获胜了。祝贺你胜利了!

B: 谢谢。

A: 你的努力付出确实很值得。希望你能保持今天创下的这个纪录。

B: 我会竭尽全力的。

4. 祝贺考入名牌学府

A: I have just had my new paper published.

B: You have done excellent work.

A: I'm going to Britain.

B: Really? How did you get the chance?

A: I have been accepted by Oxford University on PhD.

B: My warmest congratulations on your entering the Oxford University.

A: I really appreciate your kind words.

A: 我发表了新的论文。

B: 你干得很出色。

A: 我要去英国。

B: 真的? 你是怎样得到这个机会的?

A: 我被牛津大学录取攻读博士学位。

B: 我热诚祝贺你考取牛津大学。

A: 真是谢谢你的鼓励。

5. 祝贺中奖

A: I made a fortune.

B: Wow! How did you make the fortune?

A: I have just won a car!

B: Congratulations!

A: It's too good to be true, thanks.

B: How lucky you are!

A: 我发大财了。

B: 哇, 你是如何发财的?

A: 我刚才中奖得了一辆汽车。

B: 恭喜!

A: 谢谢, 真叫人难以置信。

B: 你太幸运了!

Unit
11

抱怨

Complaining

文化
链接

Culture Links

抱怨是常有的,听到朋友的抱怨,正常的态度莫过于表示同情安慰。表示同情未必非要用上 sympathize 的字眼,这显得过于做作,因为有些书面化。简单的表达成 I feel sorry for you, 反倒让人感到舒心。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 抱怨噪音(1)

A: That radio's pretty loud. Could you turn it down, please?

B: Sorry. Was I disturbing you?

A: Yes. And something else, please don't borrow my clothes without asking.

B: Sorry. I guess I wasn't thinking. I won't do it again.

A: 收音机声音太大了。请把声音调小些好吗?

B: 对不起。我打搅到你了吗?

A: 是的。另外,请不要连问都不问就借我的衣服。

B: 对不起。我想我是没想到。不会再这样了。

2. 抱怨噪音(2)

A: You don't have to play that record so loud, do you?

B: I'm sorry. Has it been bothering you?

A: Yes. And please ask me the next time you want to use something.

B: I'm sorry. I meant to ask you.

A: 唱片不用放这么大声吧,是不是?

B: 对不起。打扰到你了吗?

A: 是的。另外下次用什么东西的时候先问一下我吧。

B: 对不起。我本来是打算问一下你的。

3. 抱怨噪音(3)

A: I wish you wouldn't play the TV so loud.

B: Sorry. Were you trying to sleep?

A: 我希望你不要把电视声音放得这么大。

B: 对不起。你是要睡觉吗?

抱怨 · Complaining

A: Yes, please ask when you want to borrow my records next time.

B: I'm sorry. You're right. I should have asked.

A: 是啊,下次再向我借唱片的时候记得问一下。

B: 对不起。你说得对。我本来应该问问的。

4. 抱怨噪音(4)

A: Do you think you could keep the noise down?

B: I'm sorry. Am I keeping you awake?

A: Yes. And another thing, would you mind not making long distance calls.

B: I'm sorry. I thought you wouldn't mind.

A: 你可不可以声音小点?

B: 对不起。我吵醒你了?

A: 是的。另外,你能不能不要打长途电话。

B: 对不起,我原以为你不介意的。

5. 抱怨室友

A: Yesterday I had a quarrel with my roommate. I'm really fed up with all this.

B: Tell me what seems to be the problem.

A: My roommate always brings a lot of friends from off-campus. They stay in the room until midnight, singing and talking, drinking and playing cards while I have no place for study. I even don't have the quietness to sleep.

B: Did you ever talk to him about it?

A: Yes, I did. He promised me not to bring his friends to our bedroom any more, or if he has to, he should let them go before 10 O'clock.

B: Did he bring many people in yesterday evening?

A: That's right. It really made my blood boil when he asked me to go to the library to study. I was coming to the end of my patience. So I shouted at his friends. They were all shocked at my anger and left at once.

B: So how did you start the quarrel?

A: 昨天我与室友吵了一架。我真的受够了这一切。

B: 跟我说说是怎么回事。

A: 我的室友总是带些校外的人来寝室。他们总是呆到午夜才走,唱歌、高谈阔论、喝酒、打牌,而我却没地方学习了。我甚至无法安静入睡。

B: 你有没有找他谈过?

A: 谈过。他答应我不再带他的朋友来寝室,如果非要带的话,会叫他们十点以前就走。

B: 他昨天晚上是不是又带了很多人来?

A: 是的。让我怒火中烧的是他竟然叫我到图书馆去看书。我的忍耐终于到了极限,就冲着他的朋友喊了起来。他们都被我的愤怒吓住了,立刻就走了。

B: 那你们怎么吵起来了?

日常交际(二) · Daily Communication II

A: He told me that I was interfering in his business. It's too much for me.

B: OK. I understand your situation. I will consider arranging you to another bedroom.

A: 他对我说我多管闲事,我受不了了。

B: 好吧,我能体会到你的处境,我会考虑把你安排到另一个寝室去的。

6. 抱怨加班

A: I am really exhausted, you know, I have been working without the weekend for two weeks. My boss always asks us to work overtime.

B: Does your boss pay you for the over-time work?

A: No. But he provides free meals and sometimes gives us some small gifts. Many of us get very tired of this, and we'd rather have weekends than stay in the office.

B: He should know that this is against the Labor Law in our country. Legally, employees should get double pay if asked to do extra work during the weekend or on holidays.

A: We all know about that, but we have no choice. The chairman of the trade union says he is going to negotiate with the management.

B: I suggest that you go to the lawyers' office to get some help.

A: That's a good idea. I think we will soon come to a solution to the problem.

A: 我真的筋疲力尽了,你知道吗,我已经有两周周末都在上班了。我的老板总叫我们加班。

B: 那你们老板给不给你们加班费?

A: 不给。但是他给我们免费供餐,有时候还送点小礼物给我们。我们很多人都不喜欢这样,我们情愿要周末也不想留在办公室加班。

B: 他应该知道这样做是违反我们国家《劳动法》的。根据我国的《劳动法》规定,员工节假日被要求加班则必须得到双份工资。

A: 我们都知道,可就是没办法。工会主席说要和老板谈谈。

B: 我建议你们去律师事务所求助。

A: 这倒是个好主意。我想很快我们就有解决办法了。

Unit
12

接受建议

Accepting Suggestions

文化
链接

Culture Links

一般说来,西方人喜欢独立自主行动,在听取别人的谏言时没有中国人那种谦虚精神。因此,对于交注不深的人,不要急切地提出建议,更不要直截了当地说“你应当如何去做”。

在日常生活中,提建议和进行劝告时,对于有把握和较熟悉的人,可以直截了当地讲出来;对于把握性不大的人或与其交注不深的人,则应婉转一些。

在提建议时常用 How about..., What about..., Shall we... 等,而使用 You'd better... 则显得更委婉一些。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 健康建议(1)

A: You look tired. Did you sleep well last night?

B: I stayed up all night writing a report.

A: Go easy. Overwork is bad for your health.

A: 你看起来很疲倦。昨晚睡得好吗?

B: 我昨晚熬了一个通宵,在写一份报告。

A: 放松点儿,超负荷工作对健康很不利的。

2. 健康建议(2)

A: You're looking rather pale, why?

B: I couldn't sleep well recently.

A: You'd get plenty of sleep for you work so hard.

B: I always drink too much wine in the evening.

A: You shan't drink more wine in the evening.

B: Yes, you are right.

A: And you'd take some exercise every day.

A: 为何你的脸色看起来这样苍白?

B: 近来我一直睡不好觉。

A: 你的工作这么辛苦,应当有充足的睡眠。

B: 晚上我总是喝太多的酒。

A: 晚上你不应该饮酒过多。

B: 你说得对。

A: 而且你应当每天都锻炼身体。

日常交际(二) · Daily Communication II

B: Many thanks for your advice.

B: 非常感谢你的指教。

3. 问医生建议

A: What's the matter with you, Mary? You look a bit pale.

A: 玛丽,你怎么了? 你看起来脸色有点苍白。

B: I'm afraid I've got a terrible cold. What should I do?

B: 恐怕我得了重感冒,我该怎么办?

A: Have you taken any medicine?

A: 你吃药了吗?

B: Yes, but I'm not feeling very better now. Actually I'm feeling even worse.

B: 吃了,但是我没感觉好,实际上反倒更重了。

A: Well, if I were you, I'd go to see the doctor. That might help. And you'd better stay in bed today instead of going to work.

A: 如果我是你的话,我会去看医生,那样才有用。而且你今天最好躺在床上,别去上班了。

4. 建议戒烟

A: You know, smoking does do harm to your health.

A: 你知道,吸烟有害健康。

B: Yes, you're right.

B: 你说得对。

A: Why don't you try to give it up?

A: 为什么不试着戒烟呢?

B: I've tried to give up smoking several times, but it's no good. Smoking relaxes me.

B: 我试过几次,但感觉不好。吸烟能让我放松。

A: Have you ever thought of just cutting down? You could do it gradually.

A: 你有没有想过真正戒烟? 你可以慢慢地戒。

B: Yes, maybe I should have another try.

B: 对,我应该再试一次。

5. 建议节食

A: You look a bit worried, Mary. What's the matter?

A: 玛丽,你看起来有点焦虑,怎么了?

B: I seem to be putting on weight these days.

B: 这些天我好像胖了。

A: Oh, dear! That's really a problem. Can I offer you some advice?

A: 哦,天哪,这真是个问题,我给你点建议好吗?

B: Of course. What do you think I should do?

B: 当然好呀,你觉得我应该怎么办?

A: I suggest you go on diet or at least stop

A: 我觉得你应该节食,至少不要吃太饱或

接受建议 · Accepting Suggestions

eating too much meal and sweets.

吃太甜的东西。

6. 工作建议(1)

A: You look upset, anything wrong?

A: 看上去你很烦恼, 怎么啦?

B: I'm going to quit the job.

B: 我打算辞职。

A: Why?

A: 为什么?

B: The task is tough.

B: 工作太棘手。

A: You'd look before you leap.

A: 你应当三思而后行。

B: Thanks for your concern.

B: 谢谢你的关心。

7. 工作建议(2)

A: Where can I find information on this subject?

A: 哪里能找到关于这个课题的资料?

B: I'm not sure. Let's look up the catalogue.

B: 我不太清楚, 还是查一下目录吧。

A: Will you give some advice on this experiment?

A: 关于这个实验, 请你提点建议好吗?

B: I advise that step be taken in power supply first.

B: 我建议在供电方面首先采取措施。

A: What's his suggestion for this work?

A: 对这项工作, 他有什么建议?

B: His suggestion is that the work be starting at once.

B: 他建议立即启动。

A: The way I see it is that they'd join us.

A: 依我看, 他们应当同我们一起干。

B: I think so too.

B: 我也这么看。

从人际关系建议

A: How do you think should I handle this problem?

A: 你看我该怎么处理这个问题?

B: You'd just let sleeping dogs lie.

B: 你应当少管闲事。

A: But I'm already in a lot of trouble with my boss.

A: 可是我已受到了老板的训斥。

B: Anything you say or do might make it worse. Just try to ride out the storm for a while.

B: 不管你说什么或做什么, 都会使事情变得更糟, 暂时避避风吧。

A: She's always bothering me. What should I do?

A: 她总是来烦我, 我该怎么办?

B: You'd better leave her alone.

B: 你最好不要惹她。

日常交际(二) · Daily Communication II

A: But she always harps on me.

B: Just tell her off.

A: Yes, great!

A: 但她总是对我唠叨个没完。

B: 那就臭骂她一顿。

A: 对, 太好了!

9. 医生建议

A: What do you think I should do, doctor?

B: Why don't you try Chinese herbal medicine?

A: Is it useful for me?

B: You have to try at least.

A: OK. Thanks a lot.

B: That's nothing.

A: 医生, 你看我该怎么办?

B: 为何不试试中草药呢?

A: 中草药对治我的病有效吗?

B: 至少你应当试一试。

A: 好的, 非常感谢。

B: 没什么。

10. 措施建议

A: I've got a complaint about the noise next door.

B: Yes, it's most irritating.

A: Some people aren't very considerate.

B: We're going to do something about it.

A: Yes, I think so.

B: We can't put up with it any more.

A: We'll play the CD loud, is that all right?

B: I don't think so.

A: What should we do?

B: Why don't we call them?

A: Good idea.

A: 我对邻居的噪声烦透了。

B: 是的, 实在令人讨厌。

A: 有些人就是不太替别人着想。

B: 我们得采取点措施。

A: 是啊, 我也这样想。

B: 我们不能再忍受了。

A: 我们把 CD 放大声些好吗?

B: 我看这样不好。

A: 我们该怎么办?

B: 为什么不打电话告诉他们呢?

A: 好主意。

Unit
13

拒绝建议

Rejecting Suggestions

文化
链接

Culture Links

禁忌：世界各国、不同民族乃至不同的地区，风俗习惯都不相同，礼仪禁忌迥异。真可谓“十里不同风，百里不同俗”。每到一地，应入乡随俗。但最重要的是不要犯忌。应当记住一些最平常的禁忌。例如：基督教徒忌 13 和星期五。穆斯林忌猪肉和酒。日本人忌送荷花，德国人忌送玫瑰花，英国人和加拿大人忌送百合花，意大利人和西班牙人忌送菊花。美国女人和法国女人忌送香水等。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 拒绝严厉处事建议

A: I hear you have just shown your hand first to Lin Ping.

B: Yes.

A: If I were in your position, I wouldn't give up an inch.

B: I regret to say I can't accept your suggestion.

A: 我听说你刚刚向林平主动示好了。

B: 是的。

A: 如果我处在你的位置，我会寸步不让。

B: 很遗憾，我不能接受你的建议。

2. 拒绝催促建议

A: Your teacher has left you not very much homework this weekend.

B: Yes.

A: My advice would be to finish it at once.

B: It's unnecessary.

A: 老师这周末给你们留的作业不太多啊。

B: 是的。

A: 我的建议是立刻做完。

B: 没必要。

3. 拒绝休息建议

A: You seem to be very tired.

A: 你看起来很累啊。

日常交际(二) · Daily Communication II

B: Yes, I have been working for eight hours.

A: Why don't you join us to go out for a walk?

B: No, really. I'm not in the mood for it.

B: 是的,我已经工作了8个小时了。

A: 要不要和我们一起出去散散步?

B: 真的不行,我没那个心情。

4. 拒绝帮忙建议

A: We seem to be lost here.

B: Possibly.

A: I suggest that we go and ask for help from the policeman.

B: Not a bit.

A: 我们似乎迷路了。

B: 有可能吧。

A: 我建议去找警察帮忙。

B: 一点儿用也没有。

5. 拒绝乘车建议

A: How far is it from here to the nearest post office?

B: About 1 kilometer.

A: I advise you to take a bus.

B: No, don't bother.

A: 从这儿到最近的邮局有多远?

B: 大概有1公里。

A: 我建议你乘公交车。

B: 不,别费心了。

6. 拒绝娱乐建议

A: Well, I'm thinking of going to see the ballet Swan Lake by the famous Russian National Ballet Troupe this evening at Beijing Grand Theater. Why don't you join me?

B: I'd like to, but I've got to write a term paper. It will be due by this Thursday.

A: You always work too hard, Jim. As the saying goes, all work and no play makes Jack a dull boy. You should spare some time for a rest.

B: I know it is no good for my health if I am staying in the classroom all day. But how about my paper?

A: Just take it easy. Come on with me.

B: I'm terribly sorry I can't go with you. Shall we find some other time?

A: 我打算今晚到北京大剧院去看著名的俄罗斯国家芭蕾舞团表演的芭蕾舞'天鹅湖'。跟我一起去吧?

B: 我也想去,可是我得写一篇学期论文。这个星期四要交。

A: 吉姆,你总是那么用功。俗话说:只工作不娱乐,聪明孩子也变傻。你应该留点时间休息一下。

B: 我知道每天呆在教室里对身体没好处怎么办。可我的论文怎么办?

A: 放轻松点。跟我走吧。

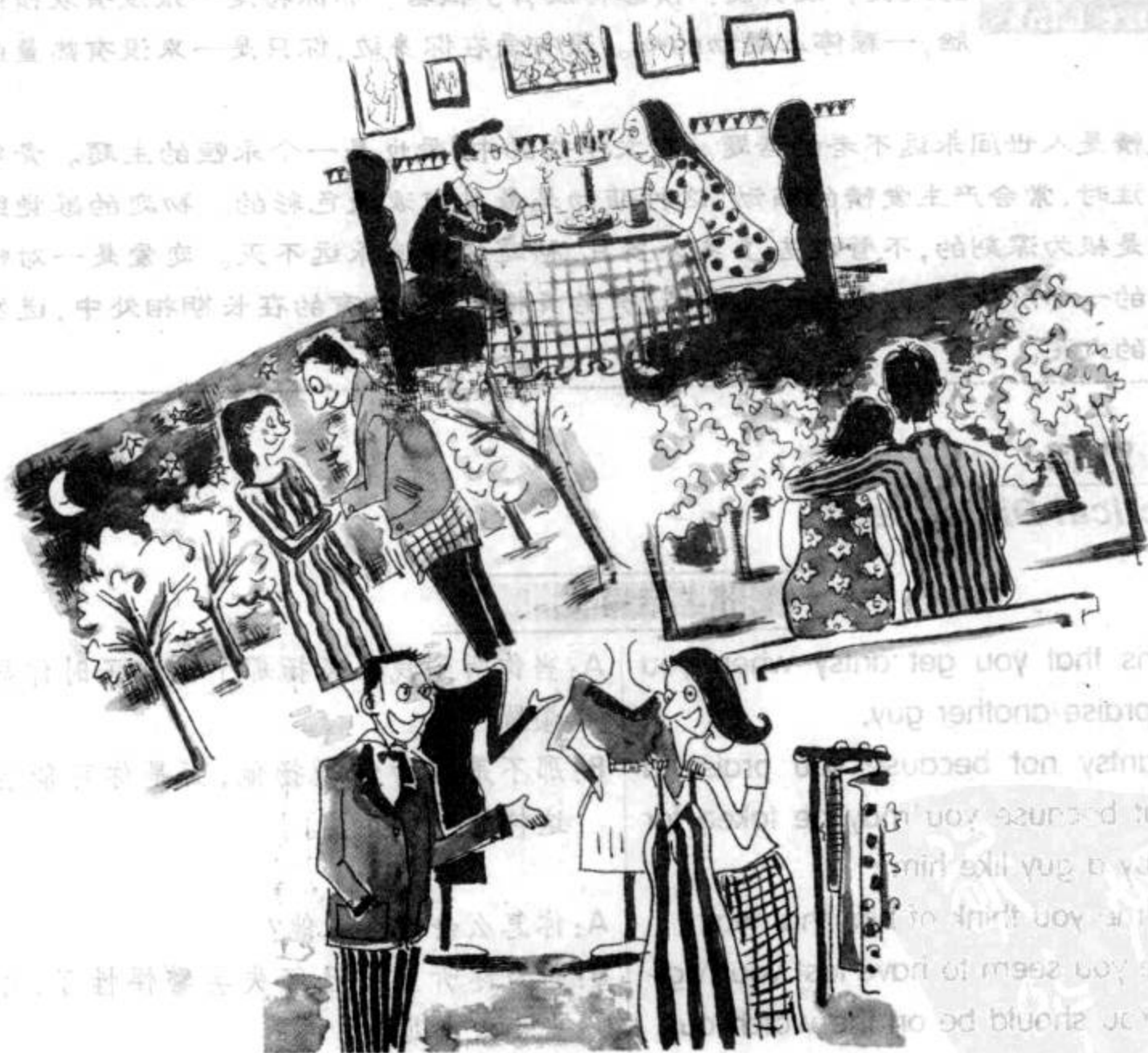
B: 对不起我真的不能跟你去。我们另外找个时间好吗?

浪漫爱情

Chapter 3

浪漫爱情

Romantic Love



Unit
1

爱情话题

Subject of Love

文化
链接

Culture Links

爱情之光照耀着我们的日常生活,就像闪电把平庸的沟壑和茂密的树林变成了神话般奇景一样。没有爱?人类将是没有目标的灵魂。没有爱?情感将没有了根基。而你将是一张没有表情的脸,一颗停止跳动的心。没有爱在你身边,你只是一束没有热量的火焰。

爱情是人世间永远不老的话题。在文学作品中,爱也是一个永恒的主题。青年男女交往时,常会产生爱情的萌动,这种萌动是最具有浪漫色彩的。初恋的感觉给人印象是极为深刻的,不管过去了多少岁月,初恋的印迹永远不灭。恋爱是一对情侣成长的一个阶段,他们有的一见钟情,有的青梅竹马,也有的在长期相处中,迸发出爱情的火花。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 情感话题

A: It seems that you get antsy when you hear I praise another guy.

B: I get antsy not because you praise a guy, but because you may be taken for a ride by a guy like him.

A: How come you think of him that way?

B: Because you seem to have lost your vigilance. You should be on the watch out.

A: I have no reason to distrust him. He's never caused any harm.

B: Isn't there anything that sounds fishy?

A: Nothing smells a rat. I told you that he's

A: 当你听到我来表扬那个小伙子时你显得烦躁不安。

B: 那不是因为你表扬他,而是你可能会被这样的人玩弄了。

A: 你怎么会这么看他?

B: 因为你听上去已经失去警惕性了,你应当小心点儿。

A: 我没有理由怀疑他。他也没做什么错事。

B: 难道你就听不出有什么可疑的?

A: 没什么不对劲的,我告诉你他是一个很

an all-right guy.

B: All-right guy? All right. Let's talk about something else instead.

好的小伙子。

B: 好小伙子? 好了, 还是谈谈别的吧。

2. 情感未明

A: Are you sure Lucy has it bad for you? If she does, she will certainly bend over backwards for you. But if she doesn't, it would be a job to change her.

B: I don't know whether she has it bad for me, but she enjoys being with me.

A: And do you really love her?

B: I think I do. I don't think I can be happier with another girl.

A: 你能肯定, 露西对你一往情深? 如果是, 她一定会为你倾倒; 但如果不是的话, 想改变她的心意并非易事。

B: 我不知道她是否钟情于我, 但她喜欢与我在一起。

A: 那你真的爱她吗?

B: 是的, 我爱她, 我觉得与其他女孩没有与她在一起快乐。

3. 浪漫爱情

A: Wow! So many beautiful roses. Which sister was hit by the arrow of Cupid in our dormitory?

B: Of course, Kate. Haven't you noticed that she is so happy recently?

C: She even smiles stealthily.

D: You are pulling my leg.

A: Don't be shy. Who is he?

D: You all know him.

B: Who? Tell, tell!

D: The tallest guy in our classroom.

A: 哇! 这么漂亮的玫瑰, 丘比特之箭射中咱们宿舍哪位姐妹了?

B: 当然是凯特了。你没见她最近有多快乐吗?

C: 她还偷笑呢。

D: 你们取笑我。

A: 不要害羞了, 他是谁?

D: 你们都认识他。

B: 谁? 快说, 快说!

D: 咱们班最高的人。

4. 恋爱季节

A: Hey, Joshua! Is Anny coming with us?

B: Yes, why?

A: Nothing. I'm just asking.

B: Just asking? But why is your face burning like mad? Aha, someone has a crush on Anny, doesn't he?

A: Who has a crush?

B: Come on, Josh, don't be such a chick-

A: 嗨, 乔舒亚! 安妮跟我们一起来了吗?

B: 是的, 怎么啦?

A: 没什么, 只是随便问问。

B: 只是问问? 那为什么你的脸发烧啊? 啊哈, 有人疯狂地爱上安妮了, 是不是?

A: 谁爱上了她?

B: 得了吧, 乔舒希, 别这么缩头缩脚。如果

浪漫爱情 · Romantic Love

en. If you like her, you've got to tell her.
Maybe she likes you.

A: I'd totally die if she turned me down.

B: You've got to let her know. Come on!
You've got to take a chance!

你喜欢她,就去告诉她。或许她也喜欢你。

A: 如果她拒绝我就死定了。

B: 你应该让她知道。去吧! 你得去争取机会!

5. 追求女孩

A: Hi, Bill. I saw you yesterday with a pretty girl.

B: Yes, she is my favorite girl. I've decided to go steady with her.

A: Are you sure she is the right girl?

B: Sure. She is the ideal girl, the one I had dreamed of.

A: What type of girl is she?

B: She is the mature, stable, feminine type. I hope one day I can marry her.

A: Oh, that's great. You're serious this time.

A: 嗨, 比尔, 我看见你昨天跟一个漂亮的女孩子在一起。

B: 是的, 她是我最喜欢的女孩子。我已决定追她。

A: 你确信她就是最适合你的吗?

B: 确信, 她是我理想中的女孩, 是我的梦中情人。

A: 她是哪一种类型的女孩子?

B: 她是那种既成熟、可靠又温柔的女孩。我希望有一天我能同她结婚。

A: 噢, 那太棒了。看来这次你是认真的了。



Unit
2

关注异性

Concerning the Opposite Sex

文化
链接

Culture Links

一个人爱上另一个人也许真的没有原因,那么执著地坠入爱河,不管这条河是深是浅,他(她)甘愿趟过这条河。恋爱是开启人生秘密的钥匙。如果甩掉爱情,那么人生就会变得无色无味。只要有爱情,鱼在水中游,鸟在天上飞,黑夜也透明;失去了爱情,生命如同断了弦的琴,没有油的灯,夏天也寒冷。

1. 了解异性

A: Come on, you must tell me everything about him.

B: Well, he's very tall and handsome.

A: Hmm ...

B: He has big blue eyes and long blonde hair.

A: Oh, how long?

B: Down to his shoulders. It's beautiful, like gold.

A: OK. OK. You'd better tell me what he does.

B: He's a very creative painter. His paintings sell well.

A: Really?

B: He's quite a patient teacher, too.

A: Fine.

B: You're going to like him. Everybody says he's a nice guy.

A: 来,你得告诉我关于他的每一件事。

B: 好吧,他长得很高很帅。

A: 嗯……

B: 他有一双大大的蓝眼睛,长长的金发。

A: 哦,有多长?

B: 披在双肩上。很美,像金丝一样。

A: 行了,行了。你最好告诉我他是做什么的。

B: 他是个很有创造性的画家,他的画很畅销。

A: 真的吗?

B: 他还是个很耐心的老师。

A: 不错。

B: 你会喜欢上他的。人人都夸他是个好小伙子。

2. 邀请异性(1)

A: Are you free this weekend, Miss Rose?

A: 罗斯小姐,这个周末你有空吗?

浪漫爱情 · Romantic Love

B: Yes, I am. What's up?

A: Then would you please go to a dance party with me?

B: With pleasure. I suppose you dance often.

A: Oh, no. As a matter of fact, I haven't danced for a long time.

B: But I am told that you dance wonderfully well.

A: Thanks for flattering me. I think you dance a lot, right?

B: No. Just occasionally.

A: What's your favorite dance?

B: It's hard to say, but I do love the foxtrot and waltz.

A: How about rock'n'roll?

B: To tell you the truth, I don't like it. It's too noisy.

A: And the tango?

B: Oh, it's really beautiful, but I just can't do it well.

A: Don't be so modest. I'm sure you can do it very well. Then I'll meet you at six. Is that all right?

B: OK.

A: Great! I'm your lucky fellow then.

B: 有啊。什么事?

A: 那么, 请你和我一起去参加舞会好吗?

B: 我很高兴。我猜你经常跳舞吧。

A: 哦, 不常跳。事实上, 我已经有很长一段时间没有跳舞了。

B: 但是我听说你的舞跳得特别好。

A: 谢谢你的夸奖。我想你经常跳舞, 对吧?

B: 不是, 只是偶尔跳跳。

A: 你最喜欢的舞步是什么?

B: 很难说呀。但我确实喜欢狐步舞和华尔兹。

A: 摇滚怎么样呀?

B: 说实话, 我不喜欢摇滚, 太闹了。

A: 探戈呢?

B: 哦, 那真是很美的, 可我就是跳不好。

A: 别谦虚啦, 我肯定你跳得很好。那么, 我6点钟来接你, 行吧?

B: 行。

A: 太好了! 那我可是你的幸运舞伴喽。

3. 邀请异性(2)

A: When can we expect you for dinner? Can you come tonight?

B: Not tonight. I promised to go to a concert with my sister.

A: Well ... How about Friday then?

B: That sounds fine.

A: Good. Shall we say seven o'clock?

B: I'll be there. You're still a fabulous cook,

A: 你什么时候能来和我们一起吃晚饭? 今晚能来吗?

B: 今晚不行, 我答应和我姐姐一起去音乐会。

A: 哦……那星期五怎么样?

B: 星期五可以。

A: 好极了。那就说好七点钟好吗?

B: 我一定到。你还是个精湛的厨师呢, 是

关注异性 · Concerning the Opposite Sex

aren't you?

A: That'll be for you to decide. I've got a new dish that I want to try out on you.

B: I'm ready. I'll look forward to it all Friday!

吗?

A: 那得由你来裁决。我新学会做一道菜,想让你试试我的手艺。

B: 我准备好了。我现在满心期待的都是星期五啦。

4. 赞美异性

A: Is your lady beautiful? Since I came here from the country, I've not seen her close. Tell me, is she beautiful?

B: Thomas, if I could write with the beauty in her eyes, I was born to look in them and know myself.

A: And, her lips?

B: Her lips? The early morning rose would wither on the branch if it could feel envy.

A: And her voice like a lark's song?

B: Deeper, softer, none of your twittering larks. I would banish nightingales from her garden before they interrupted her song.

A: Oh, she sings too?

B: Constantly. Without doubt, and plays the lute. She has a natural ear.

A: 你的爱人美吗? 因为自从我从乡下来,还没近看过她。告诉我,她美吗?

B: 托马斯,我简直无法描述她那双明眸的美丽。我生来注定是要在她的双眸中看清我自己。

A: 那,她的双唇呢?

B: 她的双唇? 清晨的玫瑰如果知道妒忌,都会在枝头枯萎。

A: 她的声音就像百灵鸟唱歌?

B: 更深沉、更轻柔,才不像那闹喳喳的百灵鸟。我要把花园里的夜莺都赶走,免得它们打断了她的歌声。

A: 哦,她还唱歌啊?

B: 经常唱,毫无疑问,她还弹古琵琶,她有音乐天赋。(出自《莎翁情史》经典对白)



Unit
3

迷人的爱情

The Charming Love

文化
链接

Culture Links

爱就是两个人紧挨着坐在一张长椅中间, 尽管长椅的两头还有足够的空间。爱情的秘密在于一起寻找生命中的变化, 决不要让千篇一律的和音破坏了浪漫的旋律。

闲暇之余, 与自己的同伴在一起随意聊天, 其话题飘忽不定, 但都是彼此熟知的话题, 语气随和, 充满了浪漫情调。即便当你静默的时候, 你的心仍在倾听他的心。因为在爱情里, 不用语言, 一切的思想, 一切的愿望, 一切的希冀, 都在无声的欢乐中发生并得到了共享。

1. 恋爱魔力

A: I finally went out to dinner with him last night.

B: Just the two of you?

A: Yup.

B: Where did you go?

A: Trum, a sea food restaurant.

B: Trum? The food is terrible.

A: I didn't notice. I don't really even know what I ate.

B: Really?

A: 昨晚我终于和他出去吃饭了。

B: 只有你们俩吗?

A: 是的。

B: 你们去哪儿了?

A: 一家叫 Trum 的海鲜餐厅。

B: Trum 餐厅吗? 那儿的食物很糟糕。

A: 我没注意到。我甚至不知道我吃了些什么。

B: 真的吗?

2. 坠入爱河

A: How wonderful it is to be in love! It's love at first sight! Oh, he's my Romeo!

B: Hey, Julie. How's it going?

A: Oh, Mary. You've surprised me!

B: Who were you talking to?

A: Um—I was just thinking aloud.

B: You look so happy. I see a twinkle in

A: 恋爱真是件美好的事! 我对他一见钟情! 他就是我的罗密欧!

B: 嗨, 茱莉, 近来好吗?

A: 哦, 玛丽, 你吓了我一跳!

B: 你刚在和谁说话?

A: 嗯, 我只是在自言自语。

B: 你看起来很高兴, 眼睛闪闪发亮。

迷人的爱情 · The Charming Love

your eyes.

A: Come off it, Mary.

B: Oh, you have a crush on someone, don't you? Maybe those are wedding bells in your eyes!

A: You certainly do like teasing me, Mary. Well I'm in love with someone. The question is, how do I get his attention?

B: Well, that's easy. Walk up to him and kiss him.

A: I guess I asked the wrong person.

er's love life. We're here to enjoy the

A: 别胡扯了, 玛丽!

B: 哦, 你喜欢上谁了, 是吗? 说不定你眼中的光是婚礼钟声的光辉!

A: 玛丽, 你看来很喜欢挖苦我。不过, 我是真的喜欢上一个人了, 但问题是要怎么才能引起他的注意呢?

B: 哦, 那还不简单, 走过去直接吻他啊!

A: 我想我问错人了。

3. 爱的信任

A: Please listen, Kate. I just happened to see her at the supermarket.

B: And you brought her to our apartment. She wasn't on my shopping list, was she?

A: Well, she had just moved into town and wanted to make friends. So I told her about our home party.

B: Why didn't you call me at work?

A: Yeah, I should have. I have no excuse for that.

B: As they say, "Honesty is the best policy." I always want you to be honest with me.

A: I am and always will be. You're my one and only, Kate.

B: Can I believe you? Can you prove that you really mean it?

A: 请听我说, 凯特。我只是碰巧和她在超市遇到而已。

B: 然后你就带她去我们的公寓。她应该不在我的购物清单上吧?

A: 是这样的, 她才刚搬到这个城镇, 而且想交些朋友, 所以我告诉了她我们的家庭宴会。

B: 那你为什么没在上班时打电话告诉我?

A: 对, 我应该打。这个我无话可说。

B: 有句话说得好“诚实为上策”。我一直希望你能诚实对我。

A: 我现在和以后都是啊! 凯特, 你是我的唯一。

B: 我能相信你吗? 你能证明你说的是真的吗?

4. 不伦之恋

A: I know I'm a blabbermouth, but what do you think she should do, John?

B: Honey, we're in the museum now. We're not here to discuss your cowork-

A: 我也知道自己是大嘴巴。但约翰, 你觉得她应该怎么做呢?

B: 亲爱的, 我们现在在美术馆。我们并不是来这里讨论你同事的爱情生活的, 我

浪漫爱情 · Romantic Love

er's love life. We're here to enjoy the great paintings by Picasso!

A: I know! But it's really important to her! Her whole life could be ruined by this man!

B: You're making a federal case out of it. One unhealthy love affair can't ruin anything. It could even make your life more interesting.

A: Are you serious, John?

B: All I'm trying to say is that life is ... like ... er ... this painting.

们是来这里欣赏毕加索名画的啊!

A: 我知道! 但这对她真的很重要。她的一生可能都会被这个男的给毁了。

B: 你太小题大做了。一次不伦之恋并不会毁掉任何事, 相反, 它甚至可能让你的人生更加有趣。

A: 你是认真的吗, 约翰?

B: 我想说的是人生就像……嗯……这幅画一样。



Unit
4

爱的约定

Appointment of Love

文化
链接

Culture Links

热恋中男女间的约会是极其浪漫的。约会是他们加深彼此了解、加深情感的一个必经阶段,是意中人相互进入彼此心灵的阶段。特别是初次约会,交谈可以拉近两人的距离。此情此景,多年以后,还会时时想起,久久不忘,成为深藏于心灵深处的永恒记忆。

拥有甜蜜的爱情是许多人的梦想。但是如果你想得到它,首先你应该做的就是:在第一次约会中取得成功。因此,许多人都非常重视他们的第一次约会,许多女孩子甚至花许多天的时间为她们的第一次约会做准备,但结果却往往事与愿违,因此,约会渐渐变成令人恐怖的话题。但它果真那么可怕吗?不,我不这样认为,如果你懂一些约会的准则,你就会给第一次的约会对象留下美好的印象。那么准则有哪些呢?第一,不要对衣着担心;第二,引导谈话;第三,约会结束前,采取主动;第四,继续发展。

1. 约会的约定

A: Can we sit on the grass, darling?

B: No, you can't, darling. The grass is wet.

A: Look, darling! I can see a bench near that tree.

B: No, you can't. The bench is wet, too.

A: It's not raining, darling. The bench isn't wet.

B: Can't you see a notice on the bench?

A: Yes, I can.

B: What does the notice say?

A: It says "Wet Paint"!

A: 亲爱的,我们可以坐在草地上吗?

B: 不行,不可以。草地是湿的。

A: 看,亲爱的! 我看见树旁边有一条长凳。

B: 不,亲爱的,不能坐那儿。那长凳也是湿的。

A: 亲爱的,没有下雨啊,长凳不会湿的。

B: 难道没有看见长凳上的“注意”吗?

A: 是的,我看见了。

B: “注意”上说些什么?

A: 它写着“油漆未干”!

2. 约会的结束

A: I want to say ...

A: 我想说……

浪漫爱情 · Romantic Love

B: Say it! What is it?

A: That I can't go on any longer without you.

B: You know you shouldn't say that at a time like this.

A: Nancy, I made up my mind you were the only woman for me at the first sight.

B: Too sudden! I'm not ready for it.

A: Forgive me for startling you with the impetuosity of my sentiments.

B: Stop it. No more of that talk.

A: I really love you.

B: No, I shall faint.

A: And I hope so. This is what you were meant for. Say you love me, say yes, say yes.

B: Yes.

B: 说吧! 说什么?

A: 我不能没有你。

B: 你知道你不应该在这时候说这个的。

A: 南希, 看到你的第一眼时, 我就认定你是我唯一想要的女人。

B: 太突然了! 我还没有准备好。

A: 原谅我, 我的情感放任吓着你了。

B: 别说了, 不要再说这样的话了。

A: 我真的爱你。

B: 别, 我要晕了。

A: 我希望如此, 这才是你应该有的感受。说你爱我, 说是的, 说是的。

B: 是的。

3. 情景遐想

A: Give me your hand. (takes Rose's hand)
Close your eyes. Go on. (Rose closes her eyes) Step up. Now hold on to the rail. Keep your eyes closed; don't peek.

B: I'm not.

A: Step up onto the rail. Hold on. Keep your eyes closed. Trust me?

B: I trust you.

A: All right, open your eyes.

(Rose opens her eyes. She stretches her arms, and Jack stands behind her, arms around her.)

B: I'm flying, Jack.

(singing) Come, Josephine, in my flying machine. Up she goes, and up she goes ...

A: 把手给我。(接过露丝的手) 闭上你的眼睛, 快闭上。(露丝闭上眼) 走上来, 抓住栏杆。别睁开眼, 别偷看。

B: 我没偷看。

A: 踏上栏杆, 抓住栏杆, 抓住, 别睁开眼。相信我吗?

B: 我相信你。

A: 好吧, 睁开眼。

(露丝睁开眼, 双臂展开, 杰克靠在她后面, 抱着她。)

B: 我在飞, 杰克。

(歌词) 来吧, 约瑟芬。坐上飞机, 跟我一起飞翔。她往上飞, 她往上飞……

4. 海誓山盟

A: Can you believe me?

B: Sure.

A: Please count on my love.

B: I will.

A: I'll be yours through endless time.

B: I see. And I'll always be devoted to you.

A: Thank you. I know I've nothing to offer you, but I'll never give you reason to cry.

B: I'll never hurt you; I'll never lie.

A: My love will grow, like a river to flow.

B: It can't be dry, and can't die.

A: I don't know whether we are in a dream.

B: Aha, Aha ...

A: 你能相信我吗?

B: 当然。

A: 请相信我的爱。

B: 我会的。

A: 我将永远属于你。

B: 我明白, 我将对你忠贞不渝。

A: 谢谢你。我知道我不能给你什么, 但我决不会让你伤心流泪。

B: 我决不会伤害你, 也决不会欺骗你。

A: 我对你的爱, 像河水滔滔不息。

B: 它永远不会干涸、不会枯竭。

A: 我不知道我们是不是在做梦。

B: 哈, 哈……



Unit
5

浪漫情侣

Romantic Lovers

文化
链接

Culture Links

情侣在悠悠漫步中交谈是最为浪漫的,尤其在万物复苏的三月。三月的小雨也是多情的,多情的雨给年轻人太多的遐思,有时也会将他们带回到那段浪漫的昔日时光中,让他们重温一下往日的浪漫情怀。那段情,那段爱,让人刻骨铭心,永远尘封于岁月的永恒记忆中。

1. 浪漫侃谈

A: Honey, what do you think love is?

B: Love has many meanings; it means different things to different people.

A: What's the best way to express love? I mean, really deep love?

B: Um, you can call it true love, or say you are crazy about the one you love.

A: No, I mean real love. Love more beautiful than a spring morning. Love better than a cool drink on a hot day. Real love.

B: Then you say you are head over heels in love.

A: Honey, I...

B: Yes? Yes?

A: I'm head over heels in love with my car.

B: Ah!

A: 亲爱的,你认为爱是什么?

B: 爱有很多层意义,不同的人对爱有不同的阐述。

A: 表达爱最好的方式是什么? 我指的是很强烈的爱。

B: 嗯,你可以称之为真爱,或者说你为你所爱的人疯狂。

A: 不,我是说真正的爱。比爱春天的早晨、夏天的冷饮更甚。真爱。

B: 那你就说你为之神魂颠倒了。

A: 亲爱的,我……

B: 怎么了? 怎么了?

A: 我实在是太爱我的汽车了!

B: 啊!

2. 浪漫时光

A: Happy anniversary, sweetheart!

B: Yes, to our first anniversary and many

A: 结婚纪念日快乐,亲爱的!

B: 好的,为了我们第一个结婚纪念日和未

浪漫情侣 · Romantic Lovers

more to come. Cheers!

A: I'll drink to that. Thanks for making this a night worth remembering.

B: Well, it's a special day. They say if you survive the first year, the rest is smooth sailing.

A: That's good to know. Oh, listen! The band's playing our song.

B: I requested it. What do you say? Do you have your dancing shoes on?

A: Always.

来更多的纪念日,干杯!

A: 我要干了这一杯。谢谢你为我营造了一个这么难忘的夜晚。

B: 今天是一个特别的日子。人们都说只要婚后第一年能够好好度过的话,以后的日子就会一切顺利的。

A: 这很好。啊,听! 乐队在演奏我们的歌曲。

B: 是我点的。怎么样? 你做好跳舞的准备了吗?

A: 随时奉陪。

3. 浪漫情怀

A: Rose, the weekend is coming. Let's discuss what we will do.

B: What about going to the zoo on Saturday and to the park on Sunday?

A: Sounds good. But on Saturday there's a football final.

B: Then, what shall we do on Sunday.

A: Let me see. We can visit the country. We haven't done that for such a long time.

B: Good idea. I'll go shopping in one of the department stores nearby. We'll go to the zoo and the park another time. After all, we can put that off.

A: OK.

A: 罗斯,周末要到了。我们讨论一下做什么吧。

B: 周六去动物园,周日去公园怎么样?

A: 听起来不错,不过周六有一场足球决赛。

B: 那么,周日我们干什么?

A: 我想想。我们可以去看看乡下的景色,我们已经很长时间没有去过了。

B: 好主意。我到附近的商店买点东西,改天再去动物园和公园,毕竟这个我们可以推迟一下。

A: 好的。

4. 浪漫舞厅

A: Flowers for my favorite girl.

B: How did you know that I love red roses?

A: That's a secret. Here, let me help you with your coat, and we'll be on our way.

(at the dance)

A: That band is playing good music. Shall

A: 鲜花送给我的心上人。

B: 你怎么知道我喜欢红玫瑰?

A: 这是个秘密。来,让我帮你穿上外套,我们出发吧!
(在舞会上)

A: 乐队正在演奏美妙的音乐。我们跳支舞

浪漫爱情 · Romantic Love

we dance?

B: Fine, what do you call this?

A: Foxtrot. Oh, you're a good dancer.

B: Really? Thank you. I am thinking the same thing about you.

A: I prefer the old style of dance because I enjoy holding a pretty girl like you closely.

好吗?

B: 好吧, 这是什么舞?

A: 狐步舞。哦, 你跳得真好。

B: 是吗? 谢谢。我还在想你跳得也不错呢。

A: 我喜欢古典的舞蹈风格, 因为我特别喜欢挽着像你这样漂亮的女孩子起舞。

5. 浪漫共舞

A: How do you like this waltz?

B: It's very nice. I like it very much.

A: Well, then, may I invite you for the first dance?

B: My pleasure. But I'm afraid I'm not much of a dancer, and I suppose you dance often.

A: Me? Oh, no. In fact, I only took up dancing quite recently.

B: Oh, really? But you're doing the waltz wonderfully well.

A: I'm glad you say so. You dance beautifully too. It's lucky that I got you as a partner.

B: Thank you for your compliments. It's just you are a good leader. Do you like the foxtrot and tango?

A: Yes. And what dances do you like best?

B: Disco is my favorite. I like it better than any other dances because it can release one's hidden feelings, and is a healthy exercise. But I don't do the rock and roll nor break-dancing.

A: Oh, well, the music has stopped. Thank you for the dance.

B: My pleasure.

A: 你认为这曲华尔兹怎样?

B: 不错, 我喜欢它。

A: 那好吧, 我可以请你跳第一个曲子吗?

B: 我很高兴, 可恐怕我不是一个好舞伴, 我猜你经常跳舞。

A: 我? 哦, 不。实际上, 我最近刚学会。

B: 哦, 真的? 可是你华尔兹不是跳得挺好吗?

A: 谢谢你的夸奖。你的舞跳得也不错, 我很庆幸有你这样一个舞伴。

B: 谢谢你的夸奖。你才是好的领舞者呢。你喜欢狐步和探戈吗?

A: 喜欢。你最喜欢哪种舞蹈?

B: 迪斯科是我最喜欢的。我之所以比较喜欢它, 是因为它能释放你被压抑的情感, 同时也是一种有益于健康的运动。但我不喜欢摇摆舞和霹雳舞。

A: 哦, 好的, 曲子停了, 谢谢你陪我跳舞。

B: 我的荣幸。

Unit
6

爱情甜果

Fruits of Love

文化
链接

Culture Links

婚姻是一个严肃的话题,一段婚姻是否健康,直接影响着两个人后半生的幸福,也影响着整个家庭的安定。唐突的婚姻,只能给整个家庭带来某种程度的阴影。因此有些热恋中男女的双方家庭成员会干涉他们,对他们加以正确引导。

在西方,按习俗要由男方向女方求婚。男方求婚时,少不了情深意切和甜言蜜语,借此来打动女方及其家人,必要时还要加强某种形式的攻势。女方倘若不答应,小伙子也不兴动怒,说明咱还需努力,相信功到自然成。当情侣的感情发展到一定阶段,便到了谈婚论嫁的时候了,在西方社会中,求婚是最浪漫的:男子单腿下跪,送上一束红玫瑰,还有些甜言蜜语,雨点般地向心上人袭来。

I. 情侣幽会

A: You went out on a date last night, didn't you?

B: Yes, I did, but Linda stood me up. She didn't keep the date for the first time.

A: How come?

B: I don't know.

A: Why don't you phone her for a date again?

B: I did phone her this morning, but she hung up on me. I think she is going to walk out on me.

A: Don't jump to conclusions. Look at the bright side, try to make another date again.

B: I will. Thanks for your advice.

A: 你昨晚又赴约了,是吧?

B: 是的,但琳达失约了。这是她第一次失约。

A: 怎么回事?

B: 我也不知道。

A: 干吗不打电话和她再约一次呢?

B: 今天早晨我打电话给她了,但她挂断了电话,拒绝和我说话。我想她准备和我吹了。

A: 不要妄下结论了。要看到积极的一面,试着再约一次。

B: 我会的。谢谢你的忠告。

2. 谈论婚姻

A: My daughter plans to quit her present job and wants to find another. She says she wants to get a better job with higher pay.

B: It seems quite normal to me. It is pretty much what I want to do.

A: But what about settling down to start a family? Doesn't anyone want to get married any more?

B: It is different now. The world is becoming colorful. Some of my friends don't feel the same pressure to marry. We all want to wait for the right moment.

A: What time is the right moment?

B: Let the universe find us instead of forcing love. We prefer natural love. The most important thing is to be happy. Love will find us later. That is what we say.

A: 我女儿打算辞掉现在的工作,再另找一份。她说她想找一份挣钱更多的工作。

B: 我觉得很正常,我也很想这么做。

A: 那么安定下来建立家庭这事怎么办?难道人人都不想结婚了吗?

B: 现在不同了。这个世界变得五彩缤纷,我的一些朋友不觉得非要结婚不可。我们想等一个合适的时候。

A: 何时才算合适的时候呢?

B: 让老天来安排而不要强求去爱,我们更喜欢自然而然的恋爱。对我们来说更重要的是快乐,爱情终究会找上门来的,这是我们常说的。

3. 快乐求婚

A: You pick the time and place for the wedding.

B: What will you do? Just sit there?

A: No. I can arrange anything you want me to. But you're the boss.

B: Why?

A: Since your parents are paying for it.

B: What? Why do my parents need to pay for it?

A: Don't you know? This is America and the girl's parents pay for the wedding.

B: I didn't know that. In China, it's the boy's parents who pay for the wedding.

A: Well, I was just kidding. I'll pay for it.

B: Jack! That wasn't funny! You're really bad!

A: 你来选定婚礼的时间和地点吧。

B: 那你干什么? 干坐着?

A: 不是啊,你让我干什么我就干什么,你当家。

B: 为什么?

A: 因为你父母付钱嘛。

B: 什么? 为什么要我父母付钱?

A: 你不知道啊? 在美国都是女方的父母办婚礼的。

B: 我不知道,在中国都是男方的父母办婚礼的。

A: 嘿,我在开玩笑,我会出钱的。

B: 杰克! 一点儿也不好笑! 你真坏!

4. 黄昏恋

A: They are nice middle-aged couple, just like us.

B: If they are just like us, they are not middle-aged.

A: Of course they are.

B: Middle-aged means in the middle, Ethel, middle of life. People don't live to a hundred and fifty.

A: Oh, we are the part on the edge of middle. That's all.

B: Oh, you know, we are not middle-aged. You're old, and I'm aging.

A: Oh, fool! You're nearly seventy and I'm in the low sixties. Would you like to spend the rest of the afternoon squabbling about this?

B: I can if you like.

A: 他们是一对幸福的中年夫妻, 就像我们一样。

B: 要是像我们一样, 他们就不是中年人了。

A: 当然是。

B: 中年意味着在中间, 埃塞尔, 一生的中间时段。可是谁也活不到 150 岁。

A: 哦, 我们是在中年的边缘, 如此而已。

B: 你知道, 我们不是中年人了, 你老了, 我也不年轻。

A: 哦, 傻瓜, 你快 70 了, 我也是 60 多。你打算就这一点和我争论到天黑吗?

B: 行啊, 只要你愿意。



Unit

7

把爱留住

Keep the Love

文化
链接

Culture Links

在有伴侣陪伴的日子里,阳光格外灿烂,特别是在特定环境里,有了伴侣的支持和帮助,什么事情都不可怕,因此一旦失去有力的臂膀,我们也许会因爱生恨。当爱情的浪潮退去以后,我们应当友好地分手,说一声“再见”,道一声“珍重”!

分手时会很难过,当然分手是对自己感情的一种保护。如果自己喜欢的人背叛了自己,那么只好分手,别无选择。分别时,我们没有流连的泪眼,只有相对无语。看夕阳透过文峰塔尖,把它的余晖洒在西清河畔。

1. 吵架

A: Mary, be calm.

B: It is impossible. You cheated on me.

A: No, listen to me. I always regard you as my best friend. I admire you, and of course you've helped me so much. I should thank you.

B: Shut up!

A: No, listen to me. Perhaps it's my fault that I treat everybody so well. Maybe in other people's eyes, I want you to be my girl-friend, but ... but ...

B: But you have had Lily already? You should have told me about her, but you didn't.

A: OK ... OK ... Anyway. I will treat you as my best friend. I hope you can do the same.

B: Leave me! Go away!

A: 玛丽,请冷静一些。

B: 不可能。你欺骗了我。

A: 不,听我说。我一直把你当作我最好的朋友。我欣赏你,当然你帮了我很多,我应该谢谢你。

B: 闭嘴。

A: 不,听我说。或许是我的错,我对别人都太好了,或许,在别人的眼里,我想要你做我的女朋友。但……但是……

B: 但是,你早有莉莉了? 你应该早告诉我关于她的存在,可是你没有。

A: 好……好……我还会把你当作我最好的朋友。我希望你也能这样做。

B: 离开我! 滚!

2. 恋人分手(1)

A: I really hate to say this, but don't go away mad, just go away.

B: I knew this would happen some day.

A: Then, why didn't you try to prevent it in the beginning?

B: Well. It's not all my fault, Anna. You are responsible, too.

A: I don't want to argue anymore. Please get out of my life!

B: I think we can still talk.

A: No way! Please don't follow me around.

B: Talk it easy, Anna. You really don't hate me, do you?

A: Yes, I do. Leave me alone!

A: 我真的很讨厌这样说,但是请你默默地走开,好吧。

B: 我知道事情迟早会发生的。

A: 那么,为什么不一开始就努力阻止它的发生呢?

B: 安娜,那不全是我的错,你也有责任啊。

A: 我不想再争辩了。请从我的生活中消失吧!

B: 我想我们还是可以谈谈的。

A: 免谈! 请不要再缠着我。

B: 平心静气地想一想,安娜。你并不是真的讨厌我吧?

A: 我是真的讨厌你。别烦我了!

3. 恋人分手(2)

A: Let's break up, Tom.

B: Are you serious?

A: I think you should move on without me.

B: Um, OK, if you insist.

A: I think we'll be better off if we are apart.

B: Let's just be friends.

A: That's a good idea. I think we'll feel more comfortable if we become just friends.

B: I agree with you.

A: So, we can still keep our friendship, right?

B: I guess so.

A: 汤姆,我们分手吧。

B: 你是认真的吗?

A: 我想你应该离我而去。

B: 嗯,好吧,如果你坚持这样。

A: 我想分手对我们彼此都好。

B: 让我们做普通朋友吧。

A: 这提议不错。我想如果我们成为普通朋友,会更自在一点。

B: 我同意你的想法。

A: 那么,我们仍可以保持我们之间的友谊,对吧?

B: 大概吧。

4. 挽留挽留

A: Then I must go—you have said it yourself.

B: No, you must stay! I swear it, and the

A: 那么我必须得走了——这是你亲口说的。

B: 不,你得留下! 我发誓——你不能走。

浪漫爱情 · Romantic Love

oath shall be kept.

A: I tell you I must go!

B: Where?

A: I have spoken my mind, and can go anywhere now.

B: I ask you to pass through life at my side—to be my second self and best earthly companion.

A: I'll never again come to your side; I am turn away now and can't return.

A: 我告诉你,我必须走!

B: 去哪儿?

A: 既然心里话都说出来了,我现在上哪儿都无所谓。

B: 我要你一辈子待在我身边,做我的另一半,做我在尘世间最好的伴侣。

A: 我永远不会再到你身边去,我要离开你,不能再回去了。

5. 夫妻离婚

A: Mary and Tom are breaking up.

B: It's unbelievable! They are only married for one month. Then who is at fault?

A: Mary said she couldn't put up with Tom, for he fell in love with another woman.

B: Do you think they'll become reconciled?

A: No, I don't think so. She said she would rather be single than cope with an unhappy marriage.

B: What a shame! Their marriage is really a mistake.

A: 玛丽和汤姆正在闹离婚。

B: 简直不可思议! 他们结婚才一个月。是谁的过错?

A: 玛丽说她不能容忍汤姆,因为他爱上了别的女人。

B: 你认为他们会言归于好吗?

A: 不,我认为不会。她说她宁愿一个人生活也不愿苟且这段不快乐的婚姻。

B: 真是太糟糕了! 他们的婚姻真是一个错误。



Unit
8

打听

Inquiry

文化
链接

Culture Links

有时候青年男女不自觉地会对某一个异性产生好感,这是爱情发展的第一阶段,有时并没有机会与其直接接触,自然会向周围的人打听,了解一些自己所关心的情况,而后决定下一步的行动,这比贸然出击效果要好一些。爱情就像在手里的水银,打开手掌,它会停留在那里;一旦握紧,则会飞溅而逝。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues

1. 打听情况

A: May I ask what the name is the girl?

B: Which one?

A: The tallest one.

B: She is Xiao Li. She's come here to see her brother.

A: Oh, it's so. She looks very lovely. Could you give me some else information on her?

B: OK. She's a costume designer and works in a garment mill.

A: How do you think about her?

B: She looks very beautiful. She is a nice girl.

A: I'm wondering if she has boyfriend.

B: No, she hasn't.

A: Great! Thank you very much.

A: 我可以问一下那个女孩的名字吗?

B: 哪一位?

A: 那个最高的。

B: 她叫小莉, 来这儿看望她哥哥。

A: 哦, 是这样。她看起来挺可爱的。你能告诉我关于她其他的信息吗?

B: 可以, 她是一个服装设计师, 在一家服装厂工作。

A: 你觉得她怎么样?

B: 看上去很漂亮, 是个不错的女孩。

A: 不知她有没有男朋友。

B: 没有。

A: 好极了! 谢谢你。

2. 追求异性

A: I've brought a little dog for Alice, girls usually like looking after pets.

B: Thank you, but Alice is only a visitor here. I don't know if she'll keep it.

A: To tell you the truth, the dog isn't my real reason for coming. I want to ask Alice if she'd like to be my girlfriend.

B: Really?

A: Yes. Do you know if she has any other young men courting her at the moment?

B: Oh yes, a lot of young men, you see, she's so beautiful, and so well-educated too. Of course, I haven't actually seen any of her young men, but she must have at least ten or twelve!

A: That's unfortunate, I am just a very ordinary man.

A: 我给艾丽斯带来一只小宠物狗,姑娘们一般都喜欢养宠物。

B: 谢谢你,可是艾丽斯在这儿只是个客人。我不知道她是否会留着这只小狗。

A: 不瞒您说,送这只小狗并非是我来这儿的真正原因。我想问问艾丽斯是否愿意做我女朋友。

B: 是吗?

A: 是的。您知不知道目前有没有其他年轻人在追求她?

B: 哦,有,有许多年轻人,你知道,她长得又漂亮,又受过良好的教育。当然,追求她的年轻人我实际上一个也没有见过,不过,她至少有十多个追求者。

A: 那可太糟糕了,我是个再普通不过的人了。

3. 了解异性

A: Do you know his sister?

B: Her name is Laura, isn't it?

A: That's right.

B: How old is she?

A: Um... let me see now, is it 18 or 19, I can never remember... 18... 19 next birthday, that's it.

B: What does she look like?

A: Well...

B: Pretty, is she?

A: Yes... quite pretty.

A: 你认识他妹妹吗?

B: 她的名字叫劳拉,是不是?

A: 是的。

B: 她有多大了?

A: 嗯……让我想想,是18岁还是19岁,我老是记不住……18……下一个生日是19,没错。

B: 她长得怎么样?

A: 嗯……

B: 很漂亮,是吗?

A: 是的,相当漂亮。

4. 谈论异性

A: What colour is her hair?

B: Oh, blonde, she's very blonde... quite short hair...

A: 她的头发是什么颜色的?

B: 嗯,金色的,她有一头金发……很短……

A: What, curly?

B: No, not all. Very straight. Her hair comes down like this... just over the ears.

A: Does she wear glasses?

B: No... no. I think you're thinking of someone else.

A: No. I'm sure I know her.

B: Er... what else can I tell you? Er... she's got... er a... round face, a very round face, and a very big mouth, sort of wide mouth, when she laughs, her face is all mouth.

A: Ah... No, I can't place her.

A: 什么,是卷发吗?

B: 不,一点都不卷,非常直发,她的头发就像这样……刚过耳朵。

A: 她戴眼镜吗?

B: 不,不戴。我想你可能说的是另外什么人。

A: 不是。我敢肯定我认识她。

B: 嗯……我还能告诉你些什么呢? 嗯……她……嗯……圆圆的脸,非常圆;一张大嘴,比较大的嘴。她要是一笑,就只看见她脸上的一张嘴了。

A: 啊……不会吧,我记不起她的模样来了。



Unit
9

赞美异性

Admiring Opposite Sex

文化
链接

Culture Links

人们在交谈中往往使用浪漫的词汇来赞美与他们交往密切的异性,同时也流露出他们心中对异性的爱慕。有时,他们会使用一些风趣的词句加以描绘,这也是青年男女表情达意常用的方法。但是请记住不要只为了爱而将别的人生意义全都疏忽了。人生的第一意义便是生活,人必须生活着,爱情才有所依附。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 称赞异性

A: I couldn't look at you, and say you aren't beautiful!

B: You are pretending!

A: No, Miss Anna, you must let me say how lovely you are! What's wrong with that?

B: It's wrong because—it isn't true.

A: You know that everybody notices how beautiful you are, don't you?

B: Well, no—that is, I've heard Linda say they do, but... Thank you. But please don't speak to me again.

A: Oh, Miss Anna! That's too hard! I won't be here long.

A: 我不能看着你,硬说你不漂亮。

B: 你在说谎!

A: 没有,安娜小姐,你一定要允许我说你是多么的漂亮!这有什么问题吗?

B: 有问题,因为这不是真的。

A: 你心里清楚人们都注意到你是多么的漂亮了,难道不是吗?

B: 嗯,不是啊,我只听琳达说过人们是这么说的,可是……谢谢你,但别再跟我讲话了。

A: 哦,安娜小姐!这太不近人情了!我不可能在这待很久的。

2. 美丽达人

A: Pretty! Say beautiful rather. Can you imagine any thing nearer perfect beauty than she altogether—face and figure?

A: 好看,简直太美丽了!你能想象得出她有多美吗?脸蛋漂亮,身段迷人。

赞美异性 · Admiring Opposite Sex

B: I do not know what I could imagine, but I confess that I have seldom seen a face or figure more pleasing to me than hers.

A: Such an eye! The true hazel eye — and so brilliant! Regular features, open countenance, with a complexion, Oh! What a bloom of full health, and such a pretty height and size; such a firm and upright figure! There is health, not merely in her bloom, but in her air, her head, her glance. One hears sometimes of a child being “the picture of health”; now, she always gives me the idea of being the complete picture of grown-up health. She is loveliness itself.

B: 我想象不出来,但是我承认我很少见到一张脸或一个身段像她这样赏心悦目的。

A: 这样的眼睛! 真正的淡褐色眼睛,而且熠熠发光! 五官端正,长相大方,面色红润,哦,多具有健康蓬勃的朝气啊,而且身材高挑,丰腴适度。不仅她的青春蓬勃健康,而且她的气度,她的头脑,她的眼神同样如此。人们有时会听到一个小孩子被称为“健康的形象”,现在她给我的感觉完全就是“成人健康的典范”。她是可爱的化身。



Unit
10

一见钟情

Love at First Sight

文
化
链
接

Culture Links

你对他(她)一见钟情。你所要求的全部就是给你一个机会,以赢取对方的芳心。只要给你一个开始的机会,你将证明这是前世的安排,你俩的结合是冥冥之中的定数,你就是他(她)的唯一。谁说偶然只是两片浮云相遇,只要善于把握,就会有延续;只要懂得珍惜,就会有结局。

一个人爱上另一个人也许真的没有原因,那么执着地坠入爱河,不管这条河是深是浅,他(她)甘愿趟过这条河。恋爱是开启人生秘密的钥匙。如果甩掉爱情,那么人生就会变得无色无味。只要有爱情,鱼在水中游,鸟在天上飞,黑夜也透明;失去了爱情,生命如同断了弦的琴,没有油的灯,夏天也寒冷。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



I. 舞会邂逅

A: It seems to me that you are on very good terms with him.

B: We actually met at a dance party. He fell for me.

A: He must be all over you the first time he saw you.

B: He said that I put all other girls in the shade.

A: That means he was head over heels in love with you.

B: Well, he indeed likes me.

A: But I think he can't hold a candle to you. I don't think he has ever popped the

A: 看起来,你与他的关系特别好。

B: 实际上我们是在一个舞会上遇到的。他爱上了我。

A: 他一定是一眼就被你迷住了。

B: 他说(我的魅力)把其他女孩子都给比没了。

A: 看来,他已深深地爱上你了。

B: 嗯,他确实很喜欢我。

A: 但我觉得他比不上你。我想他还没有向你求婚吧。

question.

B: No, he is the sort of man who likes to hide his candle under a bushel.

B: 没有,他是那种隐藏情感含而不露的那种人。

2. 浪漫邂逅

A: How did you first meet Jack each other?

A: 你和杰克是怎么初次相遇的?

B: That is a heavy raining afternoon. I was standing under the eaves of a shop to evade the heavy rain. It's getting dark.

B: 那是一个雨下得特别大的下午,我躲在一家商店的屋檐下避雨,天都快黑了。

A: And then?

A: 然后呢?

B: I was trembling in the wind when he ran to me with an umbrella in his hand and asked, "Where is your home?"

B: 我在风中发抖,这时他拿着伞跑过来说,“你家在哪里?”

A: Then he sent you to your home?

A: 接着他就送你回家了?

B: Yeah.

B: 是啊。

A: It's a romantic meeting. I can say that a hero saves a beauty.

A: 真是个浪漫的邂逅,可以说是英雄救美了。

B: He joked later that I was so poor that he had a kind of impulse to protect an ant.

B: 他后来开玩笑说,我当时太可怜了,使他产生一种想保护小蚂蚁的冲动。

A: He is so humorous.

A: 他真幽默。

3. 爱情魔药

A: I'll help you, Lucy. Look at what I've got here. In this small bottle, there's a magic love potion.

A: 我会帮你的,露西。看我带了什么!这个小瓶子里装着爱情魔药。

B: A magic love potion?

B: 爱情魔药?

A: Yes. If you put a few drops on someone's eyelids while he's asleep, he'll fall in love with the first person he sees when he wakes up.

A: 没错。等他睡着了,把药水滴几滴在他的眼睛里。他一醒过来,就会爱上他第一眼看到的人。

B: It can't be true.

B: 这不会是真的吧!

A: Take my word for it.

A: 听我的,没错。

B: So what am I going to do?

B: 那我该怎么做呢?

A: Just come to our house and stay over. You'll sit by his bed and greet him like a beautiful red rose, "Good morning!"

A: 到我家来住一晚,然后坐在他的床边,美得像朵红玫瑰,跟他说“早安”。

B: That sounds like a blue rose! My sitting

B: 不可能吧!我坐在他的床边?

浪漫爱情 · Romantic Love

by his bed?

A: Don't be so shy, Lucy.

A: 露西, 别害羞。

4. 陷入情网

A: Herman, why are you so excited?

B: I have met a beautiful girl.

A: Have you fallen in love?

B: Yes. At first sight.

A: Can you describe the situation at that time?

B: At that time her back was ramrod straight as she sailed by, her tone is best, neither over—passionate, nor too cold.

A: What's her outlook?

B: She was pretty, her hair was the color of rich dark chocolate, waving gently to her shoulders. Her complexion was clear and golden.

A: 赫尔曼, 为什么你如此兴奋?

B: 我遇到了一位漂亮的女孩。

A: 你是不是已经陷入情网了?

B: 是的, 一见钟情。

A: 你能描述一下当时的情形吗?

B: 那时她轻盈地闪过, 腰挺得直直的, 说话的口气也恰到好处, 既不过分热情, 也不显得冷淡。

A: 她长得如何?

B: 她美, 深棕色的秀发在肩上轻轻摇摆, 面容清秀, 肤色是健康的金黄色。



Unit
11

打电话

Telephone Call

文化
链接

Culture Links

随着通讯技术的发展,谈情说爱的方式也因此迅速新潮起来,网络情人,已不是什么新鲜的事物,而更多的情人愿意相互打个电话,方便快捷,何不乐哉?听到心爱的人在电话那端热切的声音,心里倍感甜蜜,真可谓“千里姻缘一线牵”哪。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues

1. 打电话

A: Hi, is you, John?

B: Oh, Jane. What on earth have you been?
I've called you a thousand times.

A: Sorry, John. I suddenly got a severe stomachache last night, and stayed in hospital the whole day.

B: But I called your cell phone, and there was no answer.

A: I know, I left it at home.

B: Do you feel better now?

A: It's OK now. Don't worry, John.

A: 嗨,是你吗,约翰?

B: 哦,简。你究竟去哪了?我给你打了上千个电话了。

A: 对不起,约翰。我昨晚突然胃痛得厉害,今天住了一天医院。

B: 但我打你的手机也没人接啊。

A: 我知道,我把它落在家里了。

B: 你现在好些了吗?

A: 好了,不用担心,约翰。

2. 电话问候

A: Hi, dear, I've got your voice at last.

B: Hi, darling, I am thinking it is the time of your calling.

A: Are you OK today?

B: Quite good except thinking of you so much.

A: 嗨,亲爱的,终于听到你的声音了。

B: 嗨,亲爱的,我正在想是时候你打电话来吧。

A: 你今天好吗?

B: 挺不错的,就是非常想你。

浪漫爱情 · Romantic Love

A: So do I. You are a beautiful flower in my mind.

B: It's called love is blind, I think.

A: 我也是啊。你是我心中美丽的花儿。

B: 我想这是情人眼里出西施吧。

3 情人电话

A: Are you still busy today?

B: It seems to be. How about you today?

A: Fine, honey. Rome couldn't be built within one day.

B: OK, I'll find the time to relax soon.

A: Take care, honey. I am always expecting you.

A: 你今天还是很忙吗?

B: 应该是的。你今天如何?

A: 挺好的, 宝贝。罗马不是一天建成的。

B: 知道了, 我很快就会找时间休息的。

A: 保重啊, 宝贝。我可一直想着你呢。

4 打电话道别

A: Hello, Mr. Black, I'm calling to say goodbye.

B: You're leaving so soon? I wish you stayed a little longer.

A: I wish I could stay a little longer, but a lot of things to do back home.

B: Have you got the ticket?

A: Yes, I did.

B: What time are you going?

A: At 11:00 o'clock.

B: I'll pick you up by nine o'clock and take you straight to the airport.

A: No, I'll go by myself, thanks.

B: OK, goodbye.

A: 你好, 布莱克先生, 我打电话同你告别。

B: 你这么快就离开? 我希望你能多待段时间。

A: 我也希望能多待段时间, 但家中有很多事要做。

B: 你拿到票了吗?

A: 拿到了。

B: 你什么时候出发?

A: 11 点钟。

B: 我 9 点钟开车去接你, 然后直接送你到机场。

A: 不用了, 我自己去, 谢谢。

B: 那好吧, 再见。

Unit
12

互相了解

Know More about Each Other

文化
链接

Culture Links

私生活在西方国家是一个敏感问题,一般谈话不会涉及,但是情侣间,或是至亲的人之间可以谈论,因为这是增进双方彼此了解的一个方面,同时也是今后有可能遇到的问题。私生活的话题范围很广,包括个人喜好、婚姻、家庭及财产等诸多方面的问题。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 谈论工作情况

A: What do you usually do in your work time?

B: Some routine job. Files, documents, faxes and so on.

A: Are you usually busy?

B: It depends. Sometimes I am very busy.

A: What depends?

B: Oh, that means I can't make sure for my own.

A: Oh, I see.

A: 你上班都做些什么啊?

B: 一些日常工作,处理文件、公文、传真什么的。

A: 你通常很忙吗?

B: 看情况。有时很忙。

A: 看什么情况?

B: 哦,那意思是说不是我自己决定的。

A: 哦,明白了。

2. 谈论生活习惯

A: Do you get up early every morning?

B: About 6 in the morning. I like to walk to the office.

A: Good habit. How long does it take?

B: About 20 minutes. Do you live alone?

A: No, my little sister lives with me.

B: How old is she?

A: 你早上都起得很早吗?

B: 大约6点吧,我喜欢走路去上班。

A: 好习惯。要走多久啊?

B: 大约20分钟吧,你自己住吗?

A: 不,我妹妹跟我一起住。

B: 她多大了?

浪漫爱情 · Romantic Love

A: About 12. She is a good girl.

B: I think so.

A: 12岁,她是一个很乖的孩子。

B: 我想也是。

3. 谈论爱好

A: What's your favorite hobby?

B: I'd like reading books best.

A: What kinds of books do you like to read?

B: Literature and economy.

A: By the way, would you like to see movies?

B: That's OK.

A: What do you do in your spare time?

B: I like to play golf, play badminton or crack jokes.

A: I just like to sleep like a lazy cat.

B: That's a bad habit.

A: 你最大的爱好是什么?

B: 我最喜欢看书。

A: 你喜欢看哪方面的书?

B: 文学和经济。

A: 顺便问一下,你喜欢看电影吗?

B: 还可以。

A: 你业余时间做什么?

B: 我喜欢打高尔夫球、打羽毛球或开玩笑。

A: 我只喜欢像懒猫一样睡懒觉。

B: 那可是个坏习惯。

4. 谈论休闲生活

A: I often go to a place of leisure.

B: Really?

A: I very much like to go to a cafe and doze in the afternoon sunshine.

B: Sounds great.

A: The coffee, books, music and sunshine are just beautiful there.

B: How nice.

A: I may take you there some day.

B: Good.

A: 我时常去一个休闲场所。

B: 是吗?

A: 我非常喜欢到咖啡屋,可以一个人在下午的阳光中打瞌睡。

B: 听起来很棒!

A: 那里的咖啡、图书、音乐和阳光真棒。

B: 真不错。

A: 哪天我可以带你去那里坐坐。

B: 太好了。

5. 谈论家庭情况

A: How many persons are there in your family?

B: There are three: my parents and I.

A: Do you live together?

B: No, I live alone in a flat near my work place.

A: Do you often go back to see your par-

A: 你家多少人?

B: 就三个:我父母和我。

A: 你们住在一起吗?

B: 没有,我自己住在离上班地方较近的公寓里。

A: 你经常回去看你的父母吗?

互相了解 · Know More about Each Other

ents?

B: Yes, almost once a week.

B: 是的, 几乎每周回去一趟。

6. 谈论朋友

A: You are outgoing person, quite easy to talk with.

A: 你是个开朗的人, 非常容易交谈。

B: Yes, my friends like to get along with me well.

B: 是啊, 我的朋友都喜欢跟我在一起。

A: Do you have many friends?

A: 你有很多朋友吗?

B: Yes, I like to make new friends.

B: 是啊, 我喜欢结交新朋友。

A: What do you usually do with them?

A: 你们在一起都做些什么呢?

B: We like to get together, chat and enjoy beautiful music.

B: 我们喜欢聚在一起, 聊天、听美妙的音乐。



Chapter 4

餐饮及旅馆

Food and Beverage & at Hotel



Unit
1

订餐

Booking a Table

文化
链接

Culture Links

在美国,吃晚餐的时间不尽相同。在小城镇可能早在下午五点就吃晚餐,而在大城市可能晚到九点才吃。如果上高级餐厅或有名的饭店去吃晚饭,最好是先打电话预订。

而且,现在提供网上订餐服务的餐馆数目正在急剧膨胀。如对此感兴趣,可访问各美食网站。只需一部电脑和一张信用卡,就可全天订座。即便你并非名流或常客,也不是厨师的朋友,照样能和他们平起平坐地在知名食府用餐。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



预订位子(1)

A: Good evening, sir. What can I do for you?

B: Good evening. Would you please offer a table far from the entrance for us?

A: Yes, of course. This way, please.

A: 晚上好,先生,能为您效劳吗?

B: 晚上好。能提供一张离入口远点的桌子吗?

A: 当然可以,这边请。

预订位子(2)

A: I'd like to reserve a table for three at 6:30 this evening.

B: Let me check. Hold on, please... Yes, that's fine. Smoking or nonsmoking area?

A: Nonsmoking, please.

B: All right. May I have your name?

A: My surname is Gao.

B: How do you spell it, sir?

A: G-A-O.

A: 我想要订一张今晚六点半三个人的桌位。

B: 我来查查看。请稍候。……好的,没问题。您要吸烟区还是非吸烟区?

A: 请给我非吸烟区。

B: 好的。请教您的大名是?

A: 敝姓高。

B: 先生,请问怎么个拼法?

A: G-A-O.

餐饮及旅馆 · Food and Beverage & at Hotel

3. 确认预订位子

A: Good afternoon, sir. May I help you?

B: I booked a table yesterday.

A: What's your name, please?

B: Smith.

A: A minute, please. ... Yes, this way, please.

A: 下午好, 先生。我能为您效劳吗?

B: 我昨天订了位子。

A: 请问您叫什么名字?

B: 史密斯。

A: 请稍等……没错, 这边请。

4. 订菜

A: Would you like to book a table, sir?

B: Yes, would you arrange it for me the day after tomorrow?

A: Sure, when?

B: Six o'clock in the afternoon.

A: For how many guests, please?

B: Six.

A: How much would you like to spend?

B: We don't care about money. We'd like to have some good dishes of local specialties.

A: OK.

B: How many courses are there altogether, please?

A: Eight.

B: Could you tell me some of entrees about the dinner?

A: Sure. The main courses are roast Beijing duck and fried eel slices.

B: Very good.

A: 先生, 您想订一桌宴席吗?

B: 是的, 安排在后天行吗?

A: 当然可以, 何时来用餐?

B: 下午6点。

A: 请问有几位客人?

B: 一共6位。

A: 你们要订多少价位的宴席?

B: 价格多少无所谓, 但要吃上高品质的地方特色菜。

A: 好的。

B: 请问宴席上共有多少道菜?

A: 总共8道菜。

B: 你能告诉我这顿宴席上的几道主菜吗?

A: 当然可以。主菜是北京烤鸭和炒鳊鱼片。

B: 很好。

5. 订晚餐

A: Hello, could you arrange a dinner for us?

B: Sure, what time?

A: Eight o'clock tomorrow evening.

B: For how many people?

A: 喂, 能为我们订个晚宴吗?

B: 当然能, 什么时间用餐?

A: 明天晚上8点。

B: 多少人用餐?

订餐 · Booking a Table

A: Ten.
 B: Western food or Chinese food?
 A: Chinese food.
 B: Do you want an expensive meal?
 A: No, not too lavish.
 B: How much would you like to spend for each person?
 A: What is the usual thing here?
 B: Forty to eighty RMB Yuan a plate.
 A: Let's say sixty Yuan then.
 B: OK. Is there anything special you'd like to have on the menu?
 A: We'd like to have typical Chinese food.
 B: Anything you'd rather not have?
 A: No snakes, please.
 B: How about drinks?
 A: Mao Tai and Qingdao Beer.
 B: Well. Dinner for ten at sixty Yuan a plate, drink's extra, at 8 o'clock tomorrow evening. Is that all right?
 A: Right, thanks.
 B: My pleasure, see you tomorrow evening.
 A: See you then.

A: 10 个人。
 B: 要订西餐还是订中餐?
 A: 订中餐。
 B: 要订高档的宴席吗?
 A: 不, 不要太铺张。
 B: 你想每人消费多少钱?
 A: 你这里通常是什么水平?
 B: 一份菜品 40 ~ 80 元。
 A: 我们订 60 元的。
 B: 那好, 你们对菜谱有什么特殊要求吗?
 A: 我们要吃典型的中餐。
 B: 有你们不爱吃的菜吗?
 A: 不吃蛇。
 B: 要什么酒水?
 A: 茅台酒和青岛啤酒。
 B: 好的。明晚 8 点, 10 位客人, 每盘菜 60 元, 酒水费另计。对吗?
 A: 对, 谢谢。
 B: 不必客气, 明晚见。
 A: 到时见。

预订单间

A: Hello, Friendship Restaurant. May I help you?
 B: I'd like to book a table tonight.
 A: Yes, Sir. For how many people, please?
 B: Eight.
 A: What time?
 B: Eight o'clock tonight, would you please set us in a private room?
 A: So sorry, we're fully booked in that room. Would you like to make reserva-

A: 你好, 友谊餐厅, 能为您效劳吗?
 B: 我要预订今晚的桌位。
 A: 好的, 先生, 请问多少人用餐?
 B: 8 个人。
 A: 何时用餐?
 B: 晚上 8 点, 能为我们安排一个单间吗?
 A: 实在抱歉, 单间已订满了, 能改在别的时间吗?

餐饮及旅馆 · Food and Beverage & at Hotel

tion some other time?

B: Maybe not, thank you all the same then.

B: 可能不行, 同样感谢你。

7. 预订二人餐位

A: Good morning. Panyu Restaurant. May I help you?

B: What time do you open this evening?

A: We open at 6:30, sir.

B: I see. I'd like to reserve a table for two.

A: Yes, sir. What time would you like your table, sir?

B: I'm not sure, perhaps around 8 pm.

A: Fine! I'll reserve a table for two at 8 pm, sir. May I have your name, please?

B: Davis.

A: Thank you, Mr. Davis.

B: Oh, any chance of a table by the window? My wife loves the bird's eye view. As it's her birthday, I want it to be a celebration.

A: I see. We have already received many bookings and though I can't guarantee anything, please be assured that we'll try our best, Mr. Davis. I hope you'll understand.

B: I do, but I would appreciate you, if it could be arranged.

A: We'll try our best.

B: Thank you.

A: 早上好, 这是番禺宾馆。我能帮您什么吗?

B: 今晚你们什么时候开始营业?

A: 6:30, 先生。

B: 知道了。我想预订两个人的餐位。

A: 好的, 先生。具体什么时间呢?

B: 还不确定, 大概是晚上 8 点吧。

A: 可以, 我给您预订一个晚上 8 点的餐位, 共两个人。请问您的姓名?

B: 戴维斯。

A: 谢谢您, 戴维斯先生。

B: 哦, 对了。能不能给我一张靠近窗户的桌子? 我的妻子特别喜欢观看外面的景色, 而且今天又是她的生日。我想给她庆祝一下。

A: 我明白。我们已经接受了许多预订, 所以不能保证一定有。但请放心, 我们会尽力的。戴维斯先生, 希望您能理解。

B: 我能理解。如果能够安排一下, 我会十分感激你们的。

A: 我们会尽力的。

B: 谢谢。

Unit
2

点菜

Ordering

文化
链接

Culture Links

在西餐馆,吃正式的西餐(dinner)点菜的顺序依次是:1. 开胃酒(appetizer),这是为增进食欲而在饭前喝的一种酒。如雪利酒(sherry)、鸡尾酒(cocktail)等。2. 开胃菜(hors d'oeuvre),是在主菜前所上的一种简单开胃食品。3. 汤(soup),分清汤和浓汤。4. 主菜(main course),一般有鱼和烤肉(roast)。5. 色拉(salad)。6. 餐后甜食(dessert),这是最后一道菜,如水果、布丁、馅饼、蛋糕、冰激凌等。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 点调味汁

A: We have three dressings for salad. Which one would you like?

B: What kind do you have?

A: We have Italian, French and Thousand Island.

B: Make it French please.

A: 我们有三种沙拉调味汁,您要哪种?

B: 你们有什么?

A: 有意大利(香醋汁)、法汁和千岛汁。

B: 给我法式的吧。

2. 点沙拉

A: May I have a menu, please?

B: Of course.

A: Could you tell me how this thing is cooked?

B: Lobster? It is steamed and served with our special sauce.

A: Is it good?

B: Sure. It is a most popular dish.

A: I think I will try some lobster, and give me some green salad together.

A: 我可以看一下菜单吗?

B: 当然。

A: 能否告诉我这道菜是怎么做的?

B: 龙虾吗? 清蒸后加上本店特制的调味料。

A: 好吃吗?

A: 当然,很受欢迎的。

B: 我想我来点儿吧。再给我一份蔬菜沙拉。

餐饮及旅馆 · Food and Beverage & at Hotel

3. 中餐点菜(1)

A: Are you ready to order, sir?

B: What's the special here?

A: We have steamed chicken, braised pork and Beijing roast duck and so on. Here's the menu. What would you like to have?

B: Well, let's try some braised pork, sweet and sour fish and some fried beans.

A: Would you like anything to drink?

B: Just some soft drinks and only a bottle of beer.

A: All right. Wait for a moment, please.

A: 可以点菜了吗, 先生?

B: 这里有什么特色菜?

A: 我们这里有炖鸡、红烧扣肉、北京烤鸭等。菜单在这儿, 来点什么?

B: 嗯……来个扣肉、糖酥鱼和炒黄豆。

A: 喝点什么饮料?

B: 就来点软饮料好了和一瓶啤酒。

A: 好的, 请稍等。

4. 中餐点菜(2)

A: Are you ready to order now, Sir?

B: May I have the menu, please?

A: Yes, here you go.

B: I'd like to have some local specialties. Would you recommend for me, please?

A: Sure, the Huanghe carp with sugar and vinegar is famous in our restaurant.

B: OK. We'll take it.

A: Anything else?

B: A fried crisp chicken and an eggplant with chili sauce.

A: How about drink?

B: Coffee, only black coffee.

A: 先生, 现在点菜吗?

B: 请给我看一下菜单好吗?

A: 好的, 给您。

B: 我们想吃当地特色菜, 请你推荐一下好吗?

A: 当然可以, 糖醋黄河鲤鱼是我们餐馆的名菜。

B: 好的, 来一份。

A: 还要点别的菜吗?

B: 再要一盘香酥鸡和一份鱼香茄子。

A: 喝点什么?

B: 只要杯清咖啡。

5. 中餐点菜(3)

A: Have you made a reservation?

B: Yes, I have booked table for four. My name is Liu Fan.

A: We have had a window table reserved for you. This way, please.

B: Thanks.

A: You're welcome.

A: 您预订座位了吗?

B: 是的, 我叫刘凡, 预订了一个4人桌。

A: 我们为你们留了一个靠窗户的桌子, 请这边走。

B: 谢谢。

A: 别客气。

B: Can we see the menu, please?

A: I'll bring it over.

B: Anything good for this evening?

A: We have squirrel shaped mandarin fish, seeds prawn, etc.

B: Very good, we'll take them all.

B: 请给我们看一下菜单好吗?

A: 我马上拿来。

B: 今晚有什么好菜?

A: 有松鼠桂鱼、松子虾仁等。

B: 太好了, 我们全要。

6. 西餐点菜(1)

A: Would you like to order now?

B: Yes. I'll have the shrimp cocktail to start.

A: What would you like for your main course?

B: I'll have a steak, medium rare.

A: 现在要点菜吗?

B: 是的。我想先来盘虾作为开胃菜。

A: 主菜要什么?

B: 来份牛排, 要半熟的。

7. 西餐点菜(2)

A: May I take your order?

B: Yes. I'd like a cup of onion soup.

A: And what would you like after that?

B: I'd like the roast chicken, please.

A: 现在要点菜吗?

B: 是的。我想来份洋葱汤。

A: 然后还要什么?

B: 请来个烤鸡。

8. 西餐点菜(3)

A: Are you ready to order?

B: Yes. I'll have the fresh fruit cocktail.

A: And for your entree?

B: I think I'll try the crisp deep-fried chicken.

A: 可以点菜了吗?

B: 是的。先来份新鲜水果作为开胃菜。

A: 主菜要什么?

B: 来份香酥鸡。

9. 西餐点菜(4)

A: Have you decided what you'd like?

B: Yes. First I'll have tomato juice.

A: And then?

B: I'll have the lamb chops, well-done, please.

A: 决定要点什么菜了吗?

B: 是的。先来个番茄汁。

A: 然后哪?

B: 来份羊排, 全熟的。

10. 西餐点菜(5)

A: Here are the menu and wine list.

B: What would you like to drink? Mr. Ford?

C: I like to try German Beer.

B: Bring us two bottles of the German Beer.

A: OK, sir. What about something to eat?

A: 这是菜单和酒水单。

B: 您想喝点什么, 福特先生?

C: 我想试试德国啤酒。

B: 来两瓶德国啤酒。

A: 好的, 先生。您还想点什么吃的吗?

餐饮及旅馆 · Food and Beverage & at Hotel

B: What's the special food in this restaurant?

A: We have special beef steak, pork, chicken and fish.

C: I like beef steak.

B: Make it two.

A: How would you like to have it, rare, medium or over done?

B: I want it medium.

C: Me, too.

B: 这家餐厅的招牌菜是什么?

A: 我们有特制牛排、猪肉、鸡肉和鱼。

C: 我喜欢牛排。

B: 来两客。

A: 您要几分熟? 三分、五分或全熟?

B: 我要五分熟。

C: 我也是。

11. 西餐点菜(6)

A: May I take your order?

B: What would you like, Miss Tang?

C: Well, (Pointing to the menu) I'll take this and this.

B: I'd like a steak and some French fries. Er ... may I see the wine list, please?

A: Here you are.

B: A bottle of red wine, please.

A: Anything else?

B: No, thank you. That's all.

A: 可以点菜了吗?

B: 您想吃点什么, 唐小姐?

C: 嗯, (指着菜单) 我要这个和这个。

B: 我要一份牛排和一些薯条。嗯……可以给我看一下酒单吗?

A: 给您。

B: 来一瓶红葡萄酒吧。

A: 还要点别的吗?

B: 不要了, 谢谢, 就这些。

12. 西餐点菜(7)

A: Waiter, show me the menu, please.

B: Yes, here you are. Would you care to order now, Sir?

A: I'll have the baked salmon.

B: Any vegetable?

A: I'd rather have broccoli.

B: OK. Can I serve you anything else?

A: Yes, I'd like another cup of coffee.

B: All right.

A: 服务员, 请把菜单给我看一下。

B: 给您, 先生, 现在点菜吗?

A: 我要吃烤鲑鱼。

B: 要蔬菜吗?

A: 来一份甘蓝。

B: 好的, 还要别的吗?

A: 要, 再来一杯咖啡。

B: 好的。

13. 西餐点菜(8)

A: How is your appetite today?

B: I'm rather hungry now. / I'm extremely hungry. / I'm starving.

A: What would you like to have?

B: Please give me a piece of pie first.

A: Which would you rather have, beef or chicken?

B: Beef, please.

A: How about drinks? Coffee or tea?

B: Coffee, please.

A: Do you want to take milk and sugar?

B: Only black coffee.

A: 今天的胃口怎么样?

B: 我饿极了。

A: 您想吃点什么?

B: 请先给我一块馅饼。

A: 您想吃哪一道菜, 牛肉还是鸡?

B: 请来一道牛肉。

A: 您想喝咖啡还是喝茶?

B: 来点咖啡。

A: 要加点牛奶和糖吗?

B: 清咖啡就行。

14. 西餐点菜(9)

A: May I have your order now?

B: We'd have your regular dinner. What courses are there, please?

A: The courses for our regular dinner are: appetizer, soup, salad, choice of the main course, dessert, coffee.

B: All right, we'll have it.

C: Today's mutton chop is very good. Would you like to have it as the main course?

B: That's a good idea. And as for dessert, we'll have apple pie. We'd like to have some coffee afterwards.

A: Good, here're your appetizers. Your dinners will be ready in five minutes.

A: 你们可以点菜了吗?

B: 我们想吃你们这儿的套餐。请说说都有哪些几道菜?

A: 有开胃菜、汤、沙拉, 可选一种主菜, 还有点心和咖啡。

B: 好的, 我们就要套餐吧。

C: 今天的羊排不错。主菜就点它吧。

B: 好主意。甜点我们要苹果馅饼。饭后给我们来点咖啡。

A: 好。这是你们的开胃小菜, 过五分钟给你们端饭菜来。

15. 点甜品

A: What will you have for dessert?

B: Well, what do you have?

A: Cakes, fruit and ice cream.

B: Give me ice cream and a piece of cake.

C: I will have a cake and fruit.

A: 你们来些什么甜点?

B: 你们有什么?

A: 蛋糕、水果和冰激凌。

B: 给我冰淇淋和一块蛋糕。

C: 我要一块蛋糕和水果。

餐饮及旅馆 · Food and Beverage & at Hotel

- A: OK. And which would you like to drink, coffee or tea?
 B: I prefer tea.
 C: I want coffee.
 A: Thank you. Please wait a minute.
- A: 好的。你们要来点什么喝的, 咖啡还是茶?
 B: 我比较喜欢茶。
 C: 我要咖啡。
 A: 谢谢, 请稍等。

16. 点海鲜

- A: What's the special today?
 B: "All-you-can-eat" dinner special.
 A: I don't like to.
 B: Do you care for seafood?
 A: Yes, I'm very fond of seafood.
 B: Which seafood do you prefer?
 A: I'd like to have red cooked sea cucumber.
 B: Is there anything else you would like to have?
 A: Bring me an assorted cold dish, please.
 B: Would you care for beverage?
 A: No, thanks. I'm fine.
 B: What would you like to drink?
 A: A bottle of champagne.
- A: 今天有什么特色菜?
 B: 有自助晚餐。
 A: 我不想吃。
 B: 你爱吃海味吗?
 A: 是的, 我很喜欢吃海味。
 B: 你喜欢吃哪种海味?
 A: 我爱吃红烧海参。
 B: 还想要点别的什么吗?
 A: 请再来一个什锦冷盘。
 B: 你要喝杯饮料吗?
 A: 不用, 谢谢, 我不渴。
 B: 喝点什么?
 A: 来一瓶香槟酒。

17. 点饮品

- A: How about drink, Sir?
 B: A cup of coffee, please.
 A: Would you like cream or sugar in your coffee?
 B: I'd like a little sugar, please.
 A: Sorry, I don't have any sugar.
 B: Why did you ask me if I wanted some?
 A: I don't know. I just wasn't thinking.
- A: 先生, 喝点什么?
 B: 请来一杯咖啡。
 A: 要加点奶油或糖吗?
 B: 请稍加点糖。
 A: 抱歉, 这里没糖。
 B: 那为什么你问我要加点什么?
 A: 我不知道。我刚刚心不在焉。

18. 家中点餐

- A: My dear, what's for supper?
 B: Red cooked carp and rape with fresh mushrooms.
- A: 亲爱的, 晚饭做什么吃?
 B: 红烧鲤鱼和鲜蘑油菜。

A: What about soup?

B: Sour-peppery soup.

A: Which condiment do you use for?

B: I'll use ginger, garlic scallion, hot pepper and vinegar.

A: Very good, need I help you?

B: No, don't need, I can do myself.

A: Thanks. I can watch TV now.

B: But you must cook that dinner next time.

A: Okay, I'll do it next time.

A: 做什么汤?

B: 酸辣汤。

A: 你要用什么调料?

B: 我要用姜、蒜、葱、辣椒和醋。

A: 很好, 要我帮忙吗?

B: 不, 不需要, 我一个人就行了。

A: 谢谢, 现在我可以看电视了。

B: 不过, 下次你得做正餐。

A: 好的, 下次我一定做。



Unit
3

用餐中

During the Meal

文化
链接

Culture Links

吃西餐时应该注意几点 (table manners):

1. 人要坐直, 用刀叉送食物, 不能将餐碟端到嘴边, 不能张嘴露出食物。

2. 喝汤时要用汤勺, 嘴里不能发出声音。

3. 骨头等要吐到盘子边上, 而不能吐到餐桌上。

4. 进食时左手拿叉, 右手拿刀。

5. 需要离得较远的东西时, 不能站起来伸手去够, 而应请离得近的人帮忙传。

你可以说: Will you please pass me the pepper? 请把胡椒递给我好吗?

实用对话

Practical Dialogues

1. 餐饮

A: Cheer!

B: Cheer!

A: So what time tomorrow?

B: Half past seven in the morning.

A: Where to meet?

B: In the market.

A: OK. Bottoms up.

B: Bottoms up.

A: It's on me.

B: Thank you. This place is nice.

A: 干杯!

B: 干杯!

A: 那么明天几点钟?

B: 早上7点半。

A: 哪里见?

B: 在市场里。

A: 好的, 喝完。

B: 喝完。

A: 我请客。

B: 谢谢, 这地方不错。

2. 朋友家聚餐

A: What would you like to drink, Dongdong?

B: Why don't we start off with a little beer?

A: 东东, 你喜欢喝什么酒?

B: 我们先喝点啤酒怎么样?

用餐中 · During the Meal

A: Great idea! Lucy, will you join us?

C: I certainly will. The more, the merrier.

To your health!

A: To your health!

B: And to yours!

C: Have some of this roast beef and some Yorkshire pudding to go with it. Help yourself to vegetables.

B: This is marvelous. What a wonderful cook you are.

A: Some of the credit should go to me. I made the pudding!

A: 好主意! 露西, 一起来吧?

C: 当然。人越多越高兴。祝你健康!

A: 祝你健康!

B: 祝你健康!

C: 吃点烤牛肉, 用约克夏布丁配着吃, 请随便吃点蔬菜。

B: 菜好极了。您真是一个了不起的厨师。

A: 这里面也有我一份功劳。布丁是我做的。

3. 送别酒会

A: Another glass of beer, will you?

B: Thanks, I'm enough.

A: At least one for your trip.

B: I'll have it if you insist.

A: 你再来一杯啤酒, 好吗?

B: 谢谢, 我已喝足了。

A: 为了你的旅途愉快, 至少得再饮一杯。

B: 那就恭敬不如从命了。

4. 饱餐一顿

A: How do you like these dishes?

B: Fine, they are colorful and tasty.

A: Did you enjoy your dinner?

B: Yes, I did. I have never tasted anything like this.

A: Would you like some more rice?

B: No, thanks. I'm full.

A: Another piece of meat pie?

B: No, thanks. I'm on diet.

A: How about the dessert?

B: Ice cream, please.

A: 你觉得这些菜的味道如何?

B: 很好, 色香味美。

A: 晚餐吃得满意吗?

B: 很满意, 我从来没有吃过像这么好吃的东西。

A: 要再来点米饭吗?

B: 不要, 谢谢, 我已经吃饱了。

A: 再来一块肉馅饼吧?

B: 不用, 谢谢。我正在节食。

A: 要甜点吗?

B: 请来点冰淇淋。

5. 送餐失误

A: Waiter, can you come here for a moment?

B: Yes, is there something wrong?

A: I'm afraid you've made a mistake. This

A: 服务员, 能过来一下吗?

B: 好的, 有什么问题吗?

A: 恐怕你搞错了, 这不是我点的菜。

餐饮及旅馆 · Food and Beverage & at Hotel

isn't what I ordered.

B: So sorry, I must have confused the orders. I'll check it.

A: And also this soup is cold.

B: I'm really sorry, I'll bring you a hot one right away.

B: 非常抱歉,一定是我搞混点菜单了,我去查一下。

A: 还有,这碗汤也是凉的。

B: 实在对不起,我马上给您换一碗热汤来。

6. 享用中餐

A: It's very nice of you to invite me.

B: I'm very glad you could come, Mr. Liu.

Will you take a seat at the head of the table? It's an informal dinner, please don't stand on ceremony... Mr. Liu, would you like to have some chicken?

A: Thank you. This is my first time to come to a Chinese restaurant. Could you tell me the different features of Chinese food?

B: Generally speaking, Cantonese food is a bit light; Shanghai food is rather oily; and Hunan dishes are very spicy, having a strong and hot taste.

A: Chinese dishes are exquisitely prepared, delicious, and very palatable. They are very good in colour, flavour, and taste.

B: Mr. Liu, would you care for another helping?

A: No more, thank you. I'm quite full.

B: Did you enjoy the meal?

A: It's the most delicious dinner I've had for a long time. It's such a rich dinner.

B: I'm so glad you like it.

A: Thank you very much for your hospitality.

A: 你真是太好了,请我来做客。

B: 刘先生,您能来我很高兴,请上坐。这是一次家常便饭,请大家别客气。刘先生,要吃点鸡肉吗?

A: 谢谢,这是我第一次来中餐馆,请给我讲讲中国菜的不同特色好吗?

B: 一般来讲,广东菜清淡一些;上海菜比较油腻;湖南菜香味浓,辣味很重。

A: 中国菜做得很精细,色、香、味俱全。

B: 刘先生,再来一点吧?

A: 不啦,谢谢。我已经够饱了。

B: 您吃得怎么样?

A: 好久没有吃过这样美味的饭菜了。这顿饭菜太丰盛了。

B: 你能喜欢,我不胜荣幸。

A: 谢谢你的盛情款待。

Unit
4

餐后买单

Paying the Bill

文化
链接

Culture Links

有时去餐厅就餐,常常不清楚该谁来付款,可能主人付,也可能主人期望客人分摊。至于采用哪一种形式,取决于双方之间的关系。如果双方是朋友或同事关系,一般分摊付款。但是,如果是为了某人庆祝生日,那么过生日的人通常不付款。男女共餐如果是男士付款,除非是已建立了密切的关系。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues

1. 请客吃饭

A: Mm, they taste delicious. Let's settle the bill.

B: Yes. Let's go Dutch.

A: No. It's on me this time.

B: You are always so hospitable.

A: 嗯,味道不错,可以结账了。

B: 是啊,我们各付各的吧。

A: 不了,今天我请客。

B: 你总是这么好客。

2. 结账 (1)

A: Well, waiter! Give me the bill, please.

B: Twenty-eight dollars, sir.

A: Here is thirty. Keep the change.

B: Thank you very much, sir. Please come again.

C: It's a nice restaurant. Thank you for the dinner.

A: You are welcome.

A: 服务生,请给我账单。

B: 先生,一共是 28 美元。

A: 这是 30 美元。不用找了。

B: 谢谢,先生,请再次光临。

C: 这家餐厅不错,谢谢你请我吃晚餐。

A: 不客气。

3. 结账 (2)

A: May I have the bill, please?

A: 请给我结账好吗?

餐饮及旅馆 · Food and Beverage & at Hotel

B: Here is it.

A: How much altogether?

B: The total amount is \$185.00.

A: Does it include the charge for drinks?

B: Yes.

A: Here is \$200.00, keep the change, please.

B: Thanks.

B: 这是账单。

A: 总共多少钱?

B: 共计 185 美元。

A: 包括了酒水费用吗?

B: 包括了。

A: 这是 200 美元, 不用找钱。

B: 谢谢。

4. 现金结账

A: Delicious! The restaurant is fantastic.

Thank you very much.

B: My pleasure. (To the waiter) Bill, please.

C: Yes, sir.

B: Do you accept credit cards?

C: Sorry, we only accept cash. That is 102 Yuan in all.

B: Here you are.

A: 真好吃! 这家餐馆很不错。非常感谢。

B: 这是我的荣幸。(对服务生)买单。

C: 是的, 先生。

B: 这里接受信用卡付账吗?

C: 对不起, 这里只接受现金。一共 102 元。

B: 给你。



Unit
5

在快餐店

At Fast Food Restaurants

文化
链接

Culture Links

随着美国人生活节奏的加快,快餐食品便应运而生。其快餐连锁店遍及世界各地,其中影响最大的当属麦当劳快餐连锁店。其供应的快餐食品有:汉堡包、烤牛肉、牛排、火腿、三明治、鸡块、油炸土豆片、烘馅饼、冰淇淋以及各种碳酸饮料等。

美国的快餐馆因快速供应便宜的饭菜和小吃而深受欢迎。你得自己选购食品,自己端到餐桌上。如果你选购“带走”的食品,你还可以拿出店外。在这种餐馆里无需付小费。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1 代人点餐 (1)

A: What do you want?
B: I think I'll have a piece of apple pie.
A: Do you want something to drink?
B: Coffee would be fine.
A: OK. Sit down and I'll get it.

A: 想吃什么?
B: 我想来个苹果派。
A: 想来点喝的吗?
B: 咖啡就可以了。
A: 好的。坐下,我去买。

2 代人点餐 (2)

A: What would you like to eat?
B: I'd like a hamburger with lettuce and tomato.
A: How about something to drink?
B: A Coke, please.
A: OK. I'll see if I can get waited on.

A: 想吃点什么?
B: 我要一个生菜番茄汉堡。
A: 来点喝的怎么样?
B: 请给我来个可乐。
A: 好的。我得看看是否有服务员招待。

3 亲自点餐 (1)

A: What can I get you?

A: 买点什么?

餐饮及旅馆 · Food and Beverage & at Hotel

B: A cheeseburger and an order of french fries would be great.

A: Would you like anything to drink?

B: I feel like having a Coke.

A: That's a good idea. I think I'll join you.

B: 来个干酪汉堡包和一份薯条。

A: 想喝点什么吗?

B: 我想要一杯可乐。

A: 好主意。我要买点和你一样的。

4. 热间点餐(2)

A: What are you going to have?

B: I'll try a steak sandwich.

A: Can I get you anything to drink?

B: Yes, I'd like a chocolate shake.

A: That sounds good. I think I'll have the same.

A: 要来点什么?

B: 我来个牛排三明治。

A: 要来点喝的吗?

B: 给我来个巧克力奶昔。

A: 听起来很好。我想我也来份同样的。

5. 麦当劳外带

A: Welcome to the McDonald's. What will it be for you, madam?

B: One Big Mac and French Fries.

A: Is there anything else?

B: Give me one coke, please.

A: Is this to go or to eat here?

B: To go, please.

A: That comes to four dollars and ten cents.

B: And can I have some ketchup, please?

A: It's on the service counter over there. Please go to help yourself.

A: 欢迎光临麦当劳。女士,您需要点什么?

B: 一个巨无霸,一包炸薯条。

A: 还要别的吗?

B: 请再给我一杯可乐。

A: 带走吃还是在店里吃?

B: 带走吃。

A: 一共是4美元10美分。

B: 请给我一点番茄酱好吗?

A: 在那边的调料台上。请您自取。

6. 肯德基用餐

A: Tu Mao, I'm hungry, let's get something to eat.

B: Me too. Is there a place nearby that we can get something to eat?

A: There's a Kentucky's not far ahead and there's a McDonald's in down street.

B: Kentucky's? Is that a chain restaurant?

A: Don't you know about Kentucky's?

A: 屠茂,我饿了,去吃点东西吧。

B: 我也饿了,这附近有什么可以吃的吗?

A: 前面不远有家肯德基,街那头有家麦当劳。

B: 肯德基? 是连锁餐馆吗?

A: 你不知道肯德基吗?

在快餐店 · At Fast Food Restaurants

B: I've heard about it, but never had one.

A: They sell pieces of fried chicken, you've got to try one this time.

B: OK. Let's go.

B: 我听说过, 但从未吃过。

A: 他们是卖炸鸡块的, 这回你得尝一尝。

B: 那好, 我们走吧。

7. 自助餐厅

A: All the food smells tasty today and makes my mouth water.

B: Let's line up here. This line seems a little shorter.

A: What's on the menu today?

B: Fish, beef, pork, chicken, vegetables and beancurd. For staple food we have rice, steamed bread, stuffed buns and noodles.

A: Oh, we're lucky today, aren't we?

B: I'd rather take stewed cabbage with beef.

A: I think I'll take fried fish, because fish is one of my favorites.

B: That's good, we can share what we have. Here we are. You go ahead.

(They get everything ready)

A: Here is a free table. Let's sit down. Help yourself to some fish please. Isn't it delicious and appetizing?

B: I'm sorry I don't like it. It's a little too salty.

A: I see you people from south prefer sweet, don't you?

B: Yes, I like the fish cooked in sweet and sour sauce best. Try some beef, please.

A: Thank you. I'm through with one steamed bread and I'd like a second helping.

B: Your appetite is good.

A: I'm always feeling hungry.

A: 今天所有的食物闻起来都很香, 我都流口水了。

B: 我们在这儿排队吧。这一队看起来短些。

A: 今天的菜单上有什么?

B: 有鱼、牛肉、猪肉、鸡肉、青菜和豆腐。主食有米饭、馒头、包子和面条。

A: 噢, 今天我们很幸运, 不是吗?

B: 我想吃牛肉炖白菜。

A: 我想吃炸鱼, 因为鱼是我最喜欢的。

B: 那太好了, 我们可以分享我们的菜。到我们了, 你先买。

(他们买好了)

A: 这里有一张空桌子。我们坐下吧, 请吃鱼。难道不好吃?

B: 很抱歉我不喜欢。有点咸。

A: 我知道你们南方人喜欢吃甜食, 是吗?

B: 对, 我最喜欢吃糖醋鱼。请吃点牛肉吧。

A: 谢谢你。我已吃完一个馒头了, 而且我还想吃一个。

B: 你的胃口不错。

A: 我总是感到饿。

Unit
6

在咖啡馆

In the Café

文 | 化
链 | 接

Culture Links

咖啡馆是大众化的、价格公道的餐馆。在这里可以吃早餐、午餐和晚餐,也可以只吃点点心。咖啡的美味总是与温暖的心意并存的,以正确的方式品味一杯好咖啡,不仅更容易欣赏咖啡的美味,也不至于辜负冲泡者的心意。一杯好咖啡,应该是清澈明亮 & 透明度良的,浓度与混浊是不同的。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues

1 早上用餐(1)

A: You're having coffee, aren't you?
B: Yes, I always have coffee in the morning.
A: What are you going to have to eat?
B: I'm going to order scrambled eggs and toast. What about you?
A: That sounds good to me. I'll have the same.

A: 你在喝咖啡,是不是?
B: 是的,我总是在早上喝咖啡。
A: 那么打算吃点什么?
B: 我想点份摊鸡蛋和烤面包。你呢?
A: 听起来也很合我的胃口,我也点一样的吧。

2 早上用餐(2)

A: You'd like coffee, wouldn't you?
B: I think I'd rather have tea this morning.
A: What else are you going to have?
B: Just an English muffin. What are you going to have?
A: That sounds good. I'm going to order the same thing.

A: 你想来杯咖啡,是不是?
B: 我想我宁可早上喝点茶。
A: 还要其他什么东西吗?
B: 来份英式松饼。你打算点些什么?
A: 听起来不错。我也要点一样的。

3. 早上用餐(3)

A: You're going to have coffee, aren't you?

B: Yes. I could use a cup of coffee.

A: Are you going to have anything to eat?

B: French toast sounds good. What are you going to order?

A: I'll have that too.

A: 你想喝咖啡, 是不是?

B: 是的, 我可以喝杯咖啡。

A: 还要吃些什么东西吗?

B: 法式烤面包听起来不错。你打算点什么?

A: 我也吃一样的吧。

4. 早上用餐(4)

A: A cup of coffee sounds good, doesn't it?

B: Yes, but I think I'll have orange juice first.

A: Do you feel like having anything to eat?

B: Well, I think I'll try the pancakes. How about you?

A: Sounds great. That's just what I feel like having.

A: 喝杯咖啡似乎不错, 不是吗?

B: 是的, 但是我想先喝杯桔汁。

A: 想吃些什么吗?

B: 嗯, 我想吃些薄饼。你呢?

A: 听起来不错。正是我想吃的。



Unit

7

在鸡尾酒会上

At a Cocktail Party

文化
链接

Culture Links

为商务和社交的目的举行鸡尾酒会是很普遍的事。酒会可能是非正式的,也可能是正式的,而且经常在晚上六点至八点间举行。酒会上通常会招待各种饮料、开胃小吃或点心。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 喝杯杜松子酒

A: Hi! I'm happy you could make it.
B: Well, I've been looking forward to seeing you.
A: What can I get you?
B: I'd love a gin and tonic.

A: 嗨! 很高兴您能来这儿。
B: 我一直在盼望看到您。
A: 想来点什么吗?
B: 来杯奎宁杜松子酒吧。

2. 喝杯苏打水

A: Come in. It's nice to see you again.
B: It's nice to be here.
A: Would you care for a drink?
B: Just a club soda for me, please.

A: 请进。再次见到您真是太好了。
B: 到这儿来我也很高兴。
A: 想来点什么喝的吗?
B: 来杯苏打水就可以了。

3. 喝杯啤酒

A: Hello. It's a pleasure to see you again.
B: Thank you. I've been looking forward to your party.
A: You'll have a drink, won't you?
A: I think I'll have a beer, if you have any.

A: 你好,很高兴能再次见到你。
B: 谢谢。我一直盼望来参加你的宴会。
A: 喝点东西吧,怎么样?
B: 如果有啤酒的话,我想来点。

4. 喝杯白酒

A: Good evening, I'm so happy you could | A: 晚上好,很高兴您能来。

come.

B: Thank you for inviting me.

A: What would you like to drink?

B: A glass of white wine would be fine, thank you.

B: 谢谢邀请我来。

A: 想喝点什么吗?

B: 来杯白酒就好了, 谢谢。

5. 喝酒庆祝

A: Mr. Wilson I'm very glad we reached the agreement at last. Now I'd like to propose a toast to the further development of our cooperation.

B: I'm very delighted too. I'm sure that we'll have a wider range of cooperation. So, let's drink to the signing of our contract.

A: Bottoms up!

B: Cheers.

A: 我非常高兴我们最终达成了协议, 威尔逊先生。让我提议为我们之间的进一步合作干杯!

B: 我也很高兴。我相信我们之间会有更广泛的合作。来, 让我们为签订合同干杯!

A: 干杯!

B: 干杯!



Unit
8

预订旅馆

Making a Reservation

文化
链接

Culture Links

国外的旅馆住宿费都很昂贵,价钱是自租房屋的几倍以上。有一些旅馆稍微便宜一些,像汽车旅馆(motel),这是专为开车旅游者开的旅馆,或青年旅馆(youth hotel)、招待所(hostel)等是有关当局专为青年旅游者或大学生开办的。如果你参加了某些青年组织,在一些青年旅馆或招待所里可享受半价或仅付很少钱即可入住。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 预订单人房

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>A: Can I help you?</p> <p>B: Wait a minute, please.</p> <p>A: Have you made a reservation?</p> <p>B: No, I'd like to book a single room with one double bed.</p> <p>A: How long will you be staying?</p> <p>B: 2 nights, how much does it cost?</p> <p>A: A single room costs you \$ 85/day.</p> <p>B: Does the charge include everything?</p> <p>A: Yes.</p> <p>B: Do you require a deposit?</p> <p>A: No, You can pay when you check out.</p> | <p>A: 能为您效劳吗?</p> <p>B: 请稍等片刻。</p> <p>A: 您预订了吗?</p> <p>B: 没有,我想要订一间有一张双人床的房间。</p> <p>A: 您准备在这里住多久?</p> <p>B: 两晚,请问房价是多少?</p> <p>A: 一间单人房是 85 美元/天。</p> <p>B: 这些费用包括所有的服务吗?</p> <p>A: 是的。</p> <p>B: 需要付押金吗?</p> <p>A: 不需要,您可以在退房的时候结账。</p> |
|--|---|

2. 预订双人房(1)

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>A: Calton Hotel.</p> <p>B: I'd like to reserve a double room. I will be arriving next Monday, the 12th. My name is Wilson.</p> | <p>A: 这是卡尔顿酒店。</p> <p>B: 我想订一个双人房间。我下星期一,12号到,我姓威尔逊。</p> |
|---|--|

预订旅馆 · Making a Reservation

A: A double room for the 12th? The name is Wilson?

B: Yes, that's right.

A: How long will you be staying?

B: Three or four days-perhaps longer.

A: Very good, sir. We will be expecting you next Monday, the 12th.

A: 订一个 12 号的双人房间, 姓威尔逊?

B: 是的。

A: 您要住多久?

B: 3 或 4 天, 也许更久一点儿。

A: 好的, 先生。我们下星期一, 12 号恭候您的光临。

3. 预订双人房(2)

A: Room Reservations. Good afternoon.

B: I'd like to book a double room for December, 4th.

A: That's fine, sir. A double room for December 4th, right?

B: Yes. What is the rate, please?

A: The current rate is \$ 35 per night.

B: What services come with that?

A: You'll have a radio, a color television, a telephone and a newspaper delivered to your room every day.

B: That sounds not bad. I'll take it.

A: How long will you be staying?

B: From the evening of December 4th to the morning of December 7th.

A: That'll be three nights. Could you tell me your name, please?

B: Yes, this is Bill.

A: And what is your telephone number, please?

B: (0211) 268 4563.

A: (0211) 2678 4563. Thank you very much, and we look forward to seeing you on December 4th.

B: Great. That's all. Goodbye.

A: Goodbye.

A: 订房中心。下午好。

B: 我想订一间 12 月 4 日的双人间。

A: 好的, 先生。一间 12 月 4 日的双人间是吗?

B: 是的。请问房价是多少?

A: 现在的房价是 35 美元一个晚上。

B: 这个价格包括哪些服务?

A: 房里有一台收音机、一台彩电、一部电话, 每天还有一份报纸送到您的房间。

B: 听起来还不错。我订一间。

A: 您打算住多久?

B: 从 12 月 4 日晚上到 12 月 7 日上午。

A: 那就是 3 个晚上。先生, 能告诉我您的名字吗?

B: 好的, 我叫比尔。

A: 请问您的电话号码是多少?

B: (0211) 268 4563。

A: (0211) 268 4563。非常感谢, 我们盼望 12 月 4 日能见到您。

B: 好的, 那就这样, 再见。

A: 再见。

餐饮及旅馆 · Food and Beverage & at Hotel

4. 预订套房

A: Royal Hotel, can I help you?

B: Yes. I urgently need a room for tomorrow night, and do you have any vacancies?

A: Yes, we have. What kind of room would you like?

B: I'd like a suite with an ocean view, please.

A: No problem, sir.

B: What is the price of the suite?

A: It is \$ 200 per night.

B: It is a little high. I'm told that your hotel is offering discount now.

A: Yes, but the offer ended yesterday. I'm sorry.

B: Oh, I see. Then do you have anything less expensive?

A: No, sir. So far it is the least expensive suite for tomorrow night.

B: OK, I will take it. By the way, does the price include breakfast?

A: Yes, it does. Now could I have your name, please?

B: My name is David White.

A: Would you kindly spell it for me?

B: That is D-A-V-I-D, W-H-I-T-E.

A: Thank you, I got it. And how long do you expect to stay?

B: About three days.

A: OK. Our check-in time is after 12:00. And see you tomorrow.

B: Thank you. See you.

A: 皇家酒店,我能为您服务吗?

B: 我急需一个房间要明晚住,请问你们还有空房吗?

A: 是的,还有空房。您想要什么样的房间?

B: 我想要一个可以看到海景的套房。

A: 没问题,先生。

B: 价格如何?

A: 每晚 200 美元。

B: 价格有点高。我听说你们酒店正在打折。

A: 是的,但打折期昨天就结束了。很抱歉。

B: 哦,我明白了。那么你们是否还有其他便宜一点的套房?

A: 没有了,先生。到目前为止,这是明晚能提供的最便宜的套房了。

B: 那好吧,我就预订它了。顺便问一下,房价是否包括早餐?

A: 是的,包括早餐。现在我能请问您的尊姓大名了吗?

B: 我叫大卫·怀特。

A: 能有劳您能拼一下吗?

B: D-A-V-I-D, W-H-I-T-E。

A: 谢谢,我记下了。另外您预计在此停留多久?

B: 大约三天。

A: 好的。我们的登记时间是在十二点钟之后。明天见。

B: 谢谢。明天见。

Unit
9

登记入住

Checking in

文化
链接

Culture Links

住旅馆时必须凭护照办理入住手续(check in)。住宿手续多是在旅馆大厅里办理的。办好住宿手续后,要及时熟悉室内外的设施。在高档宾馆里,你需要任何服务项目,都可以用电话联系,在电话中把服务内容、要求、时间等说清楚就行了。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



入住单人房

A: Good afternoon, sir.

B: Good afternoon. I have a reservation under the name of Hilton.

A: Could you spell that, please?

B: Sure. It's H-I-L-T-O-N.

A: One moment, please. Ah yes, Mr. Hilton, you booked a single room for three nights. Is that correct?

B: Yes, that's right.

A: I see from the computer that you are a frequent guest there. Do you have your loyalty card?

B: Yes, here you are. And here's my credit card, too.

A: Thank you. Right, your room number is 105. Here's your key and receipt. Thank you for choosing our hotel again, sir.

B: Thank you, goodbye.

A: 下午好, 先生。

B: 下午好。我以希尔顿的名字定了一个房间。

A: 请您拼写一下好吗?

B: 好的, H-I-L-T-O-N。

A: 请稍等。啊, 是的。希尔顿先生, 您预订了一个单人间, 打算住三晚, 对吗?

B: 是的。

A: 电脑显示您是我们这里的常客。您有贵宾卡吗?

B: 是的, 给你, 还有, 这是我的信用卡。

A: 谢谢, 好了, 您的房间号是 105 号。这是钥匙和收据, 感谢您再次光临我们宾馆, 先生。

B: 谢谢, 再见。

餐饮及旅馆 · Food and Beverage & at Hotel

A: Goodbye.

A: 再见。

2. 入住双人房(1)

A: Which hotel are we going to, Mr. Zhang?

A: 张先生,我们住哪家宾馆?

B: Jindu Hotel. It's No. 12 in Jining Road not far from the downtown. I've booked a double room with a shower for you.

B: 金都宾馆,就在金顶路12号,离市中心不远。我已经为您预订了一个带淋浴的双人间。

A: Thanks a lot.

A: 多谢了。

(They entered the lobby of Jindu Hotel)

(他们来到了金都宾馆前厅)

C: Good evening, sir. What can I do for you?

C: 晚上好,先生,要住宿吗?

B: I made a reservation with you last week.

B: 上个星期我已预订了。

C: Your name, please?

C: 请问,什么名字?

B: Simon Pemberton from Canada.

B: 西蒙·派伯顿,从加拿大来的。

C: Oh yes, you did. (To Mr. Pemberton) Welcome to our hotel. Please fill in the form.

C: 哦,是的,没错。欢迎您,派伯顿先生。请填写一下这张表格。

A: Okay. (After finishing the form) Here you are, lady. By the way, have you got 24 hour room service?

A: 好的。(填好以后)给你,小姐。顺便问问,这里有24小时客房服务吗?

C: Sure. We also serve both Chinese food and Western food. Here's the key to Room 201. The bellman will show you to your room. Hope you will enjoy your stay here.

C: 有的。而且我们还提供中西餐。这是201房的钥匙,服务生会带您去的。希望您在这里住得愉快。

A: Thank you very much. See you.

A: 谢谢。再见。

3. 入住双人房(2)

A: Good morning, sir. How may I help you?

A: 早上好,先生。有什么可以为您效劳的吗?

B: Good morning! Do you have any rooms available at the moment?

B: 早上好,请问现在有空房吗?

A: Yes, we do. What kind of room would you like?

A: 是的,先生。您想要什么样的房间呢?

B: I'd like a suite for four nights.

B: 我想要一间套房,住四晚。

A: Please wait a moment while I check

A: 请稍等。我为您查一下。啊!很抱歉,

登记入住 · Checking in

availability. Ah, I'm sorry, sir. We only have a double room available now.

B: That's all right. How much do they cost?

A: Each night costs 320 RMB, but for a four-night stay, we can offer a discount of 15%.

B: How much in total?

A: 1088 RMB.

B: Is breakfast included?

A: Yes, it is. You also have free use of the leisure facilities here.

B: That's fine. I'll get it.

A: OK. Please fill out this form with your details.

B: I would like to pay by cash. Do I need to pay a deposit?

A: Yes, you do. There is a 300 RMB deposit, which we will refund when you check out. So, in total, you need to pay 1388 RMB.

B: Fine. Here you are.

A: Thank you. Here's your key and receipt. Your room number is 408. A porter will take your luggage to your room. The elevator is just around the corner.

B: Thank you very much.

A: It is my pleasure, sir. I wish you a pleasant stay here. Goodbye!

B: Bye-bye!

先生,我们现在只有双人间了。

B: 那也可以。双人间是怎么收费的?

A: 每晚人民币 320 元。但如果您住四天,可以打 15% 的折扣。

B: 一共需要多少钱?

A: 人民币 1088 元。

B: 这个费用里包括早餐的费用吗?

A: 是的,而且您还可以免费使用这里的休闲设施。

B: 很好,那我就住这了。

A: 好的,请您详细填写这份表格。

B: 我想用现金付款,需要交押金吗?

A: 是的,您需要交 300 元押金,这个押金等您结账的时候会返还给您的。所以您一共需交 1388 元。

B: 好的,给你。

A: 这是您的钥匙和收据。您的房间号是 408 号,服务员会把您的行李送到您的房间。电梯就在拐角处。

B: 非常感谢。

A: 不客气,先生。希望您住得愉快,再见。

B: 再见。

Unit
10

住宿期间

At the Hotel

文化
链接

Culture Links

到旅馆定房间时,要问清房价里是否包括服务费(service charge),因为很多高档旅馆经常会加收一定比例的服务费,有时还有高达20%~40%的各种税费。

在英、美国家,如果搬运工(porter)为你搬运了行李,你要付给他一些小费(tip),这是欧美旅馆里很重要的礼貌之一。

旅馆里的服务员还有:bellboy 青年侍者;bell captain 侍者领班;room clerk 客房服务员;room maid (chamber maid) 客房女服务员。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues

I. 提供客房服务

A: I'd like to order room service to room 202, please.

B: How can I help you?

A: I'd like two sandwiches and one green fruit salad, please.

B: Will that be all, sir?

A: No. Could you also get some extra towels and soup too? We went to the pool today and used up our two clean towels.

B: I will have someone bring that up right away. How would like to pay for the dinner?

A: Just put in on with the rest of my hotel

A: 我住 202 号房,我需要客房服务。

B: 我能帮您做些什么?

A: 我要两个三明治和一个蔬菜沙拉。

B: 就这些吗?

A: 不,可以再多给我几条毛巾和几块肥皂吗?今天我们去游泳了,两条干净的毛巾都用过了。

B: 我马上派人拿过去。您的晚餐准备怎么付钱?

A: 与其他房费算在一起。

bill.

B: All right, sir. You would receive dinner in about 15 minutes.

B: 好的, 先生。晚餐大概 15 分钟后就会送过去。

2. 询问客房服务

A: Excuse me. Do you speak English?

B: Yes, I do. How can I help you?

A: Well, I've just arrived in my room, but there are no instructions in English about the facilities available! Could you help me for a moment?

B: Of course not. What exactly would you like to know?

A: First, what is the number for room service?

B: It's 1200. Room service is available 24 hours a day.

A: Very good. Now, could you help me to adjust the air conditioning, please? It's too hot in my room.

B: Yes, the control unit is on the wall next to the bathroom. Is 24°C all right?

A: Yes, that's perfect. Another thing, if I need more items for the mini-bar, which Number should I call?

B: You should call the Housekeeping Department on 2300. They will replace any stock for you immediately.

A: I see. So, is it possible to make international phone calls from my room?

B: That's no problem. Just dial 9 to get an outside line, and then dial the number as usual.

A: Well, thanks a lot for your help.

B: No problem, sir. If there's anything else you need, you can find me at the desk

A: 打扰一下, 请问你会说英语吗?

B: 是的, 有什么可以为您效劳的吗?

A: 是这样, 我刚到房间, 但是我发现这里的电器设备没有英文说明。您介意帮我一下吗?

B: 当然不介意了, 您具体想知道什么?

A: 首先, 客房服务部的电话是多少?

B: 1200, 客房服务全天 24 小时都能为您提供服务。

A: 非常好, 现在您能帮我调一下空调吗? 我的房间里太热了。

B: 好的, 控制开关就在浴室旁边的墙上。24°C 行吗?

A: 可以, 刚刚好了。另外, 如果我的“小型酒吧”还需要东西, 我应该拨哪个号码?

B: 您可以拨客房服务部的电话, 号码是 2300。他们可以马上为您替换任何储藏物品。

A: 我知道了。那从我的房间可以拨国际长途吗?

B: 没问题。您只要先拨 9 接外线, 然后正常拨号就可以了。

A: 好的, 非常感谢你的帮助。

B: 不客气, 先生。如果您还需要其他的服

务, 您可以乘电梯到柜台来找我, 或者可

餐饮及旅馆 · Food and Beverage & at Hotel

by the elevator, or you can call house-keeping if I'm not there.

A: OK, goodbye.

B: Goodbye, sir.

以联系客房服务员。

A: 好的, 再见。

B: 再见, 先生。

3. 换房要求

A: Good morning, sir. What can I do for you?

B: I'm Bill. I'm in Room 908. Can you change the room for me? It's too noisy. My wife was woken up several times by the noise the baggage elevator made. She said it was too much for her.

A: I'm awfully sorry, sir. I do apologize. Room 908 is at the end of the corridor. It's possible that the noise is heard early in the morning when all is quiet.

B: Anyhow, I'd like to change our room.

A: No problem, sir. We'll manage it, but we don't have any spare room today. Could you wait till tomorrow? The American People-to-people Education Delegation will be leaving tomorrow morning. There'll be some rooms for you to choose from.

B: All right. I hope we'll be able to enjoy our stay in a quiet suite tomorrow evening and have a sound sleep.

A: Be sure. I'll make a note of that. Everything will be taken care of. And if there is anything more you need, please let us know.

A: 先生, 早上好。有什么需要帮忙的吗?

B: 我是 908 号房的比尔。能为我换一下房间吗? 我的房间太吵了。我妻子被行李电梯发出的噪音吵醒了好几次。她说无法再忍受了。

A: 先生, 真是对不起, 我得向您道歉。908 号房在走廊尽头, 早上十分安静的时候有可能听到噪音。

B: 不管怎么样, 我想要换房。

A: 没问题, 先生。我们会处理的, 但是今天我们没有空闲房间了。能等到明天吗? 美国教育代表团明天上午离开, 那时会有供您选择的房间。

B: 好的。希望明天晚上我们能换到安静的套房里去, 睡个好觉。

A: 肯定会。我会做个记录, 一切都会得到处理的。如果还有别的什么需要, 请告知我们。

4. 要求客房服务

A: Good evening, madam. Did you ring for service? What can I do for you?

B: Yes. The light in this room is too dim.

A: 女士, 晚上好。您按铃服务了吗? 有什么要帮忙的吗?

B: 是的。这个房间的灯光太暗了。请给我

住宿期间 · At the Hotel

Please get me a brighter one.

A: Certainly, madam. I'll be back right away. Do you mind if I move your things?

B: Oh, no. Go ahead.

A: Thank you. How is the light now?

B: It's much better now. Thank you.

A: You're welcome. And if you need any other things, please let us know.

B: Ah, yes, the room is too cold for me. I feel rather cold when I sleep. Can you turn off the air-conditioning?

A: The air-conditioning is already off, madam.

B: Maybe I'm getting a cold.

A: Would you like an extra blanket?

B: OK. And would you please get me some hot water, too? I think I need to take some medicine.

A: Certainly, madam. I'll be right back. Here is a blanket and hot water for you. Anything else?

B: No, thanks.

A: Good night, ma'am.

换一个亮一点的灯。

A: 当然可以了, 女士。我马上就回来。介意我搬一下您的东西吗?

B: 不介意, 请随便吧。

A: 谢谢。灯现在怎么样?

B: 现在好多了。谢谢。

A: 不客气。如果还需要其他东西, 请告诉我们。

B: 哦, 有点事, 这个房间对我来说太冷了, 睡觉时感觉特别冷。你能把空调关掉吗?

A: 女士, 空调已经关了。

B: 也许我要感冒了。

A: 要加条毯子吗?

B: 好的, 同时请给我拿些热水来好吗? 我想我得吃药。

A: 当然可以了, 女士。我很快就回来。给您的毯子和热水。还有其他事吗?

B: 不需要了, 谢谢。

A: 晚安, 女士。



Unit
11

离店结账

Checking out

文化
链接

Culture Links

在给客人结账时,出纳员会特别注意以下事项:

1. 他们将查看清楚你是否交过预订金。如果交过,就把预订金从账目中扣除。
2. 他们将查看你是否有条件享受折扣或优惠价格。如果有,就扣除应该去掉的数额。
3. 他们将提醒你在离店之前把房间的钥匙交给接待处。
4. 如果你用旅行支票结账,他们将要求你当面在支票上签字,不会接受事先签好了的支票。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues

1. 信用卡结账(1)

A: I want to check out today. My plane leaves at 3 p. m.

B: Which room are you staying in now, sir?

A: I am in Room 205. My name is Bill Smith. When shall I check out?

B: Usually if you are leaving today, you'd better check out before 12 noon, and leave the room. If you check out after 12 noon, we will count one day more.

A: Oh, I didn't know that.

B: Since your plane leaves at 3 p. m., it will be too early for you to leave the hotel at 12 o'clock. We can arrange you to stay in the room until 1 p. m.; but first you

A: 我想今天结账。我的飞机下午三点钟起飞。

B: 先生,请问您住在哪个房间?

A: 我住 205 房。我叫比尔·史密斯。我应该什么时候结账?

B: 一般情况下,如果您想今天就走。你最好在中午 12 点以前结账退房。如果您在中午 12 点以后结账,我们则要多算您一天。

A: 哦,我还不知道有这种事。

B: 因为您的飞机要到三点才起飞,您中午 12 点就走太早了。我们可以安排您在您的房间里等到一点钟再走,但您得先要在 12 点以前结账。

should still check out before 12 noon.

A: That's very considerate of you. May I have my bill?

B: Yes, sir. Here it is.

A: How much is it?

B: Your bill comes to 60 dollars. How would you like it to be paid? With cash or credit card?

A: I'd like it to be charged to my credit card.

B: Would you please give it to me, and I will imprint it?

A: 你们想得太周到了。现在可以结账吗?

B: 好的, 先生, 这是账单。

A: 多少钱?

B: 60 美元。您想用什么付账? 现金还是信用卡?

A: 我想用信用卡付账。

B: 请把您的卡给我, 我来划账好吗?

2. 信用卡结账(2)

A: I'd like to pay my bill now.

B: Your name and room number, please?

A: Tom Wilson in Room 306.

B: Have you used any hotel services this morning?

A: No.

B: OK. You have stayed for four nights at 90 US dollars each, and here are the meals that you had at the hotel. That makes a total of 660 US dollars.

A: Can I pay by credit card?

B: Of course. Please sign your name here.

A: 我想现在结账。

B: 请问您的姓名和房间号码?

A: 汤姆·威尔逊, 306 房。

B: 请问您今天早晨是否用过旅馆内的服务设施?

A: 没有。

B: 好的。4 个晚上, 每晚 90 美元, 加上膳食费, 总共是 660 美元。

A: 我可以用信用卡支付吗?

B: 可以, 请您在这里签名。

3. 信用卡结账(3)

A: The total cost is 850 dollars. How would you like to pay?

B: By credit card.

A: We take Visa and Master Card.

B: Do you take American Express?

A: No, we don't.

B: Ok, I'll use my Visa. Here you are.

A: Thank you. ... please sign on the line.

A: 总共是 850 美元, 您想怎么付款?

B: 用信用卡。

A: 我们收维萨卡和万事达卡。

B: 你们收美国运通卡吗?

A: 不, 我们不收。

B: 好, 那我用维萨卡, 给你。

A: 谢谢您……请在横线上签名。

餐饮及旅馆 · Food and Beverage & at Hotel

4. 现金结帐

A: Excuse me. We're leaving today. I'd like to pay our bills now.

B: OK. By the way, I'd like to tell you that the check-out time is 12:00 noon, sir.

A: I see.

B: Have you used any hotel services this morning or had breakfast at the hotel dining room, Mr. Green?

A: Yes, my friend and I just had breakfast at the dining room, but we didn't use any services.

B: How about the charge for the days you shared the room with your friend?

A: Please add to my account.

B: The total for the eight days is five hundred sixty yuan.

A: OK. Here you are.

A: 劳驾。我们今天要离开了。我希望现在就把账结清。

B: 好的, 先生, 顺便告诉您, 结账后离开旅馆时间是 12 点。

A: 我知道了。

B: 格林先生, 今天早晨您是否用过旅馆服务设施, 或在旅馆餐厅用过早餐?

A: 是的, 我的朋友和我在餐厅刚用过早餐, 但是我们没有使用过任何服务设施。

B: 这几天您的朋友与您同住费用怎么办呢?

A: 请记在我的账里。

B: 8 天的费用总计是 560 元。

A: 好, 给你。



逛超市

Chapter 5

购物

Shopping



A: Here, take one of these trolleys. What
A: That's good of you.
A: 到了, 请推一辆手推车。你到底想买些
A: 你真太好了。
B: There is a supermarket in Kensington
A: Can anyone tell me where I can buy
ingredients to make Chinese food?
A: Welcome to my shop next time.
B: Thank you.
A: Here is your change, please.
B: Here is ten Yuan.
A: 3.00 Yuan.
B: And how much for this coat?
A: 2.50 Yuan.
B: What's the price of the dress?
A: May I help you?

Unit
1

逛超市

At the Supermarket

文化
链接

Culture Links

商场(店)有很多种类,各有对其感兴趣的群体。国外有:

超级市场(supermarket)

大型综合商场(shopping mall)

普通商店(shop)

杂货店(grocery)

打折商店(discount store)

连锁商店(chain shops)

跳蚤市场(flea market)

庭院市场(yard market)等等。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues

1. 买食物

A: May I help you?

B: What's the price of the bread?

A: 2.50 Yuan.

B: And how much is the coco cola?

A: 3.00 Yuan.

B: Here is ten Yuan.

A: Here is your change, please.

B: Thank you.

A: Welcome to my shop next time.

A: 你要买点什么?

B: 面包多少钱一个?

A: 2元5角。

B: 可口可乐多少钱一听?

A: 3元。

B: 给你10元钱。

A: 这是找你的钱。

B: 谢谢。

A: 欢迎下次光临。

2. 买蔬菜肉类

A: Can anyone tell me where I can buy the ingredients to make Chinese food?

B: There is a supermarket in Kensington High Street. I'll come and give you a hand.

A: That is good of you.

A: Here, take one of these trolleys. What

A: 谁能告诉我哪里可以买到做中国菜的食材?

B: 肯辛顿高街上有家超市。我可以跟你一起去,帮你忙。

A: 你真是太好了。

A: 到了,请推一辆手推车。你到底想买些

逛超市 · At the Supermarket

do you want exactly?

B: I'm after things to stuff dumplings with, like Chinese cabbage, bean sprouts, that sort of thing. I also need some soya sauce and vinegar. Oh, and some lychees or honeydew melon to finish with.

A: The fruit and vegetables are over there.

B: Pork. Where's the meat counter?

A: Over there.

什么?

B: 我要买些包饺子的馅料, 比如说白菜、豆芽之类的, 还要买些酱油和醋。哦, 最后还要买些荔枝和蜜瓜。

A: 水果和蔬菜在那边。

B: 猪肉。卖肉的柜台在哪里?

A: 在那边。

3. 购买服装

A: This place is great. I'm surprised there are so many things here.

B: Yes, but it takes a while to find things. It's not organized as carefully as a regular store.

A: What's the difference between an outlet and a regular store?

B: Usually a clothes company will send their overstock to an outlet. The prices are very low. But you may find faulty products here too.

A: Faulty products?

B: Yes. Sometimes the fault is very small; if you have a needle and thread, you can fix it yourself. So it's a good deal to buy it.

A: Oh, that's easy for me. I think it's really a good deal.

B: Yes. You can save a lot of money in this way.

A: That's great for me. Look, children's clothes! I'd like to buy some winter clothes for my son and daughter.

B: Why not buy the sweater? It only costs 30 Yuan.

A: 这地方真棒! 我很惊讶这里有这么多的东西。

B: 是啊, 但找东西需要一点时间。这里不像一般的商店那样井然有序。

A: 大卖场和一般的商店有什么区别?

B: 通常厂家会把没卖出去的存货放到大卖场来卖。价格很便宜。不过在这儿你也很有可能看到瑕疵品。

A: 瑕疵品?

B: 是的。有时候瑕疵很小, 如果你有针线, 可以买回家自己修补。所以很值得买的。

A: 哦, 这对我不是难事。我觉得的确很值得买。

B: 是的, 你可以省很多钱。

A: 对我来说实在是太棒了。看, 童装! 我想给我的儿子和女儿买点冬天的衣服。

B: 这件毛衣怎么样? 只要 30 块钱。

购物 · Shopping

A: Yes, I'll take it. Are there any jeans? Xiaohui's jeans are always dirty. I also need four pairs of slippers.

B: How many do you want to buy?

A: I ought to make the most of it while I'm here, don't you think?

B: You're right.

A: 是啊,我买了。哪儿有卖牛仔裤的?小辉的裤子老是脏。我还想买4双拖鞋。

B: 你要买多少啊?

A: 我当然要好好把握机会,你不这样想吗?

B: 说得没错。

4. 大肆购物

A: We need to buy some beer too. Where is the beer?

B: They don't have beer in this supermarket. We have to go to the liquor store.

A: Huh? They don't have beer. How can that be?

B: It's a state law. This state doesn't allow supermarkets to sell beer. Only in liquor stores.

A: That's too strict. It's silly.

B: I know. I agree with you.

B: Excuse me. Do you sell organic vegetables here?

C: Yes, we do. They're right in front of you. The organic vegetables are marked with the blue label. Here. Do you see?

B: Sure. Thank you. You should have a sign. That way people could identify which are organic and which aren't.

C: They're labeled on the packet, sir.

B: One more question.

C: Yes?

B: We need to buy some soy sauce. Which aisle is the soy sauce in?

C: That would be in aisle 7, with the condiments. It is right next to the ketchup.

B: Thank you. Do you want paper or plastic

A: 我们还需要买一些啤酒,啤酒在哪里?

B: 超市是不卖啤酒的,我们要到卖酒的店买才行。

A: 什么?这里不卖啤酒,怎么可能?

B: 这是州立的法律。这个州不允许超市卖啤酒,只有卖酒的店才有。

A: 这太苛刻了,也很愚蠢。

B: 我知道,我同意你的说法。

B: 打扰一下,请问你们卖有机蔬菜吗?

C: 有的,就在你前方。有机蔬菜都有蓝色的标签。在这里,看到了吗?

B: 嗯,谢谢。你们应该要有标示的,让顾客知道哪些是有机蔬菜,哪些不是。

C: 它们在包装上有标示的,先生。

B: 还有一个问题。

C: 什么问题?

B: 我们想买一些酱油,酱油在哪一个走道?

C: 在第7走道,和调味品一起,就在蕃茄酱的旁边。

B: 谢谢。你要纸袋还是塑胶袋?

bags?

A: Plastic bags.

B: And do you want to drive up?

A: What do you mean?

B: We can have someone put the bags in our trunk for us. We just drive up to that door over there.

A: Wow! That's convenient. But I think we can take the groceries by ourselves.

B: Yes, our car is not parked far away. I'll tell the cashier we don't want to drive up. It should be about ninety dollars all together.

A: Here is one-hundred. I will go look at the magazine rack, okay?

A: 塑胶袋。

B: 你需要搬运服务吗?

A: 什么意思?

B: 他们可以帮我们把东西搬到卡车上。我们只要把车子开到那扇门那儿。

A: 哇, 好方便! 不过我想我们可以自己提这些杂货。

B: 好的, 我们的车子没有停多远。我会告诉收银员不需要这项服务, 全部大概要 90 美元钱。

A: 这里是 100 美元。我要去杂志架那儿看看, 好吗?

5. 买水果

A: Have you got some nice apples in stock today?

B: What about these? They are very fresh and exceptionally juicy.

A: Are they sweet?

B: Very sweet.

A: How much are they?

B: These are a dollar each and those are 75 cents each.

A: All right, I'll have a dozen of the dollar ones.

B: OK. Anything else?

A: Do you have any tangerines? I'd like to have two kilograms.

B: Yes, we've just had some wonderful tangerines in from Thailand. Here they are.

A: How much is it in all?

B: Thirty dollars.

A: 今天你们店里有好苹果吗?

B: 这些怎么样? 非常新鲜, 果汁特多。

A: 甜吗?

B: 很甜。

A: 怎么个卖法?

B: 这些 1 美元一个, 那些 75 美分一个。

A: 好, 给我来一打 1 美元一个的。

B: 好的。还要点别的吗?

A: 有红橘卖吗? 我要 2 公斤。

B: 有, 我们刚从泰国运进了一批上好红橘。给你。

A: 一共多少钱?

B: 30 美元。

6. 买肉食

A: Have you any beef today?

B: Yes, we've got a very tender new shipment from the mainland. It is a weekend special.

A: How much is it a pound?

B: One pound and fifty pence a pound.

A: Good. I'll get three pounds of it.

B: Here it is. Four pounds and fifty pence in all.

A: 今天有牛肉卖吗?

B: 有, 我们刚从大陆进了一批货。这批牛肉很嫩, 是周末特供。

A: 一磅多少钱?

B: 每磅一英镑 50 便士。

A: 那好, 给我来三磅吧。

B: 给你。一共 4 英镑 50 便士。



Unit
2

在百货商店

In the Department Store

文化
链接

Culture Links

美国服装尺寸的量法和使用公制单位的国家不一样。

在国外购物也是一种享受。要尽量买当地的特色产品。例如：在缅甸买玉器，在泰国买鳄鱼制品，在澳大利亚买袋鼠玩具，在荷兰买花卉种子，在意大利买皮具，在法国买香水，在瑞士买钟表，在俄罗斯买望远镜和套娃等等，这样才有纪念意义。

在境外购物应当特别注意下面几点：力求货到付款，以免上当受骗；尽量货比三家，防备价格欺诈；记住索要发票和质保单，避免日后麻烦；不要忘记自己应享受的免税待遇，不要怕麻烦，也别充大款。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 买日常用品

A: Do you carry black ink?

B: The ink should be next to the paper clips and thumb tacks in the stationary section, sir.

A: I've looked for, but I didn't see any black ink.

B: Then I'm afraid there's none in stock.

A: Well, I'll settle for blue-black. I'll also take a dozen airmail envelopes.

B: They come in packages of ten or twenty.

A: Give me a package of twenty, then. And where do I find shoelaces?

B: On counter three.

A: Thank you. I never can find my way

A: 你们有黑墨水卖吗?

B: 墨水应该在文具部的回形针和图钉旁边, 先生。

A: 我找过了, 但没找到黑墨水。

B: 那我想是缺货了。

A: 嗯, 那要蓝黑的也可以。我还要一打航空信封。

B: 信封分成十只一扎或二十只一扎出售。

A: 那就给我二十只一扎的。还有, 我去哪儿可以找到鞋带?

B: 在三号柜台。

A: 谢谢, 我在这家商店里总是搞不清方向。

购物 · Shopping

around this store.

B: I know. It took me three weeks, and I work here.

B: 我知道。我在这儿工作,也花了三个星期才熟悉。

2. 买衣服

A: Excuse me, which one is of the highest quality here?

A: 打扰一下,请问哪件质量最好?

B: This one. It is of the best quality and excellently tailored as well. You may try it on.

B: 这件。这件质量上乘,做工精细。你可以试试。

A: That is nice. But I don't quite like the collar.

A: 不错,但是我不太喜欢这领子。

B: The collar? It is just the collar that is popular with young people in Shanghai.

B: 领子吗? 这种领子现在在上海年轻人中特别流行。

A: I don't care what others wear. How much is it?

A: 我倒不在乎别人穿什么。多少钱?

B: 250 Yuan.

B: 250 元。

A: Really? Too expensive. I don't think I can afford it.

A: 是吗? 太贵了。我觉得我买不起。

B: But it is really worthwhile.

B: 但确实值这个价。

A: OK, anyway, let me have it.

B: 好吧,就买这件吧。

B: Here you are.

B: 给你。

A: Thank you.

A: 谢谢。

3. 买衬衫(1)

A: What can I show you?

A: 请问您需要点儿什么?

B: Do you have this shirt in a small?

B: 这种衬衫有小号的吗?

A: Let me check. Yes, we have.

A: 我给你找找。是的,我们有。

B: May I try it on?

B: 我可以试穿吗?

A: Sure. Let me help you.

A: 当然,我来帮你。

4. 买衬衫(2)

A: Good afternoon. Can I help you?

A: 下午好! 想买点什么?

B: We are Just looking around.

B: 我们只是随便看看。

A: Please go right ahead.

A: 请随便。

C: What about these blouses? Do you see anything you like?

C: 那些衬衫如何? 有看到你喜欢的吗?

在百货商店 · In the Department Store

B: The styles here are too boring for me.

Why not go to another shop?

C: Oh, come on! Don't be so sour. These are beautiful blouses.

B: I'm just not in the mood.

C: Here. Look at this blouse. Try it on.

B: Do they have it in LARGE?

C: I don't know. Yes, here is one. LARGE. Try it on.

B: Where is the fitting room?

C: The fitting rooms are over there.

B: Okay, I will try it on. (To the assistant)
May I try it on?

A: Sure.

(A few minutes later)

C: It looks good on you.

B: I look like an idiot.

C: No, it looks nice.

B: Well, I don't think it's the very style for me.

C: I think we'll buy this one. And I want you to try on this one too.

B: OK, next time.

B: 样式都不怎么样。为什么不换一家店呢?

C: 哦,打起精神来!别这样酸溜溜的。这些衬衫都很漂亮。

B: 我只是没什么心情。

C: 这儿,看看这件衬衫。试试看。

B: 有大号的吗?

C: 不知道。有,这里有一件。大号的。试试看。

B: 试衣间在哪里?

C: 试衣间在那边。

B: 好吧,我去试试。(对售货员)可以试一下吗?

A: 当然可以。

(几分钟后)

C: 看起来不错哦。

B: 我看上去像个傻瓜。

C: 不会,很好看啊。

B: 嗯,我认为这种款式不适合我。

C: 我们就买这件吧。我还想让你试试这一件。

B: 下次好吧。

裙子

A: Welcome to our shop. It seems you are interested in this dress.

B: Yes. But I am afraid it is too thick to wear in summer.

A: That's no problem. It is made of linen, so you won't feel hot in it. I can assure you it is of superior quality. What is more, it is very popular with young women.

B: How much is it?

A: 88 Yuan.

A: 欢迎光临我们店。您好像对这条裙子很感兴趣。

B: 是的,但是太厚了,恐怕不适合夏天穿。

A: 这没问题。它是用亚麻做的,所以穿在身上不会觉得热。我可以向您保证,它质量上乘,而且很受年轻女士的欢迎。

B: 多少钱?

A: 88 元。

购物 · Shopping

B: OK, that is reasonable. I will take it.

B: 价格挺合理的, 好吧, 我买了。

6. 买皮包

A: Is there anything I can do for you?

B: I'm looking for a black, leather bag.

A: How's this?

B: I'm just looking.

A: If you need any help, let me know.

A: 请问您需要点儿什么?

B: 我在找一款黑色的皮包。

A: 这只怎么样?

B: 我只看看。

A: 您有什么需要帮助的尽管说。

7. 买钢笔

A: Can I help you?

B: How much is this pen?

A: Ten Yuan.

B: And how much is this pencil?

A: One Yuan.

B: Here's fifteen Yuan.

A: And here's your change. Please check if it is correct.

B: OK, that's right.

A: Welcome to come again.

B: OK.

A: 你要买点什么?

B: 这支钢笔多少钱?

A: 10 元。

B: 这支铅笔多少钱?

A: 1 元。

B: 这是 15 元。

A: 这是找你的钱。请核对是否正确。

B: 嗯, 没错。

A: 欢迎下次光临。

B: 好的。

8. 买裤子

A: Show me a smaller pair of trousers, sir.
I am not that fat, you see.

B: You've come to the right place. We've got various styles and sizes recently.
How much do you measure around your waist?

A: I have no idea. Measure me, please.

B: OK! 2 Chi round. Try this one. Maybe it's of your size.

A: (After trying) I'm afraid it's still too tight around the stomach.

B: Let me check the stock. How about this one?

A: (After trying) Mm, a perfect fit. How

A: 先生, 给我拿条瘦些的裤子好吗? 你瞧, 我没有那么胖。

B: 你算来对了地方。我们新进了一批货, 各种式样、各种尺码都齐全。请问先生多少腰围?

A: 不太清楚, 给我量量吧!

B: 好的! 2 尺腰围, 那就试试这条, 可能尺码你穿正好合适。

A: (试穿以后) 恐怕肚子这里还是太紧了点儿。

B: 我到库房看看。(过了一会儿) 这条怎样?

A: (试穿以后) 嗯, 这条正好, 多少钱?

在百货商店 · In the Department Store

much?

B: 150 Yuan.

A: A little expensive. But I'll buy it anyway.

It's hard for me to get a perfect one.

Here is 200 Yuan.

B: Here's your change, 50 Yuan. Welcome back again.

B: 150 元。

A: 贵是贵了点儿, 不过我还是决定买下来。

要知道, 我买条中意的裤子不容易啊。

给你, 200 元。

B: 找你 50 元, 欢迎下次再来。

9 买西装

A: Can I help you?

B: Yes, I'd like to have a look at the 2-piece suit.

A: What size do you wear?

B: Middle size.

A: Then please look at this suit.

B: Does this suit come in other color?

A: Yes, we have some in blue, green, black and brown.

B: How much is the brown one?

A: US \$ 138.

B: Then I'll take it.

A: 能为你效劳吗?

B: 是的, 我想看看两件式西装。

A: 你穿什么尺码的?

B: 中号的。

A: 那请你看看这套。

B: 这款套装有别的颜色吗?

A: 有蓝色、绿色、黑色和咖啡色。

B: 咖啡色的多少钱?

A: 138 美元。

B: 那我就买咖啡色的。



Unit
3

在工艺品店

At the Arts and Crafts Store

文化
链接

Culture Links

中国目前的工艺品还是以旅游产品为主,大家出去旅游了才象征性地买一点儿,如果没有旅游一般家庭不买或很少。而美国人对工艺品、收集品的喜欢使他们买来的东西家里都要堆不下了,有的要放到地下室。他们房子大,每个柜子都要放工艺品,连盘子都是工艺品,高档的、花色漂亮的盘子一个就是100多美元。客厅、电视房、卧室都放了很多工艺品。有人喜欢玻璃工艺品,有人喜欢各式盘子、碗、勺子,就收集这些。美国人多多少少都会收集一些自己喜欢的东西,并非为了保值,而是纯粹地喜欢。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 购买茶具

A: You're made a good choice. This china tea set is unusual.

B: Where was it from?

A: It was made in Jingdezhen.

B: Jingdezhen? Isn't it called "the capital of porcelain"?

A: You are right.

B: This is the very thing I've been dreaming of.

A: It is the best quality porcelain—the famous egg-shell China.

B: It must be most precious.

A: But it is really worth the price.

A: 您真是好眼力,这种瓷茶具不同寻常。

B: 哪儿产的?

A: 这种茶具产于景德镇。

B: 景德镇,它不是被称为“瓷都”吗?

A: 是的。

B: 这正是我梦寐以求的。

A: 这种瓷器质量最好,是著名的薄胎瓷器。

B: 那肯定十分昂贵。

A: 但是确实值这个价。

在工艺品店 · At the Arts and Crafts Store

2. 购买花瓶

A: Where do these flower vases come from?

B: They are made a town nearby. The flower vases are made of porcelain and covered with tiny bamboo sticks.

A: Are they breakable?

B: No. They are not only ornamental, but also useful.

A: No wonder it's so expensive.

A: 这些花瓶是哪里生产的?

B: 是附近的一个镇上制造的。花瓶是瓷器做的, 上面有细竹丝。

A: 它们容易碎吗?

B: 不会。它们不但具有装饰性, 而且还实用。

A: 怪不得这么贵。

3. 购买挂毯

A: What a lovely tapestry! Don't you think we could use one to decorate our room?

B: I think we can have a try.

A: Artistic tapestry is the highest form of expression of the rug weaving art, an exquisite handicraft of superb artistry in typical Chinese style.

B: I see. Is this the marvelous landscape in Guilin?

A: I think it is.

B: Which do you prefer, the linen one, the figured dacron or the brocade?

A: I prefer the linen one.

A: 多美的挂毯啊! 你不觉得我们可以买一条来装饰我们的房间吗?

B: 我想可以买条试试。

A: 艺术挂毯体现了地毯纺织艺术的最高水平, 是具有典型中国风格的手工艺精品。

B: 我知道了。挂毯上是不是美丽的桂林山水?

A: 我想是的。

B: 你喜欢哪种台布, 亚麻的、提花涤纶还是织锦缎的?

A: 我更喜欢亚麻的。

4. 购买古玩

A: Can I help you, sir?

B: You have so many antiques and Chinese paintings here. May I have a look first?

A: Of course.

B: Are they genuine?

A: Some are genuine. But all our reproductions are clearly marked and priced.

A: 要买点儿什么, 先生?

B: 你这儿有这么多古玩和中国画。我可以先看看吗?

A: 当然可以了。

B: 它们是真品吗?

A: 有些是真品, 但是所有复制品都有明确的标志和标价。

5. 购买装饰品

A: May I see that ivory horse?

A: 我可以看看那个乳白色的马吗?

购物 · Shopping

B: Of course.

A: It's genuine, I bet.

B: It's made of genuine ivory, besides, it's of exquisite workmanship. The price is marked 200 yuan.

A: I'll take it.

B: 当然可以了。

A: 我敢断定,它是真品。

B: 它是由真象牙做的,而且做工精细。标价 200 元。

A: 我买了。

6. 购买字画

A: I'm interested in Chinese antiques.

B: We have a great variety of Chinese antiques. Besides, we have landscape painting, figure painting and flower-and bird painting.

A: I'd like a flower - and - bird painting.

B: How about this picture of cranes with pine trees? It was painted by a famous Chinese painter in Qing Dynasty.

A: Oh, they look just like live cranes.

B: And what is more, in traditional Chinese thinking, cranes and pine trees symbolize longevity.

A: 我对中国古董很感兴趣。

B: 我们有各种各样的中国古董。此外,我们有山水画、人物画和花鸟画。

A: 我想要一幅花鸟画。

B: 您看这幅松鹤图如何? 这是中国清代的一位著名画家画的。

A: 哦,这些仙鹤看上去就像真的一样。

B: 而且,按照中国的传统观念,仙鹤与松树都是长寿的象征。



Unit
4

在书店

At the Bookshop

文化
链接

Culture Links

on campus bookstore 指校内书店。在美国,大学用书在外面一般的书店未必买得到,所以学生大都在校内书店购买。当然,在学校附近也常有专卖该大学用书的书店,叫做 off campus bookstore。校内及校外的教科书专卖店里,所有的书都会依照各科系、课程编号及任课老师来分类排列。买教科书时,只要依照课程表上的编号及任课老师就可以知道要买那一本书。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 购买畅销书

A: Mary, come here. I've found the book our teacher recommended us to buy last week.

B: Really? How much is it? Oh, it's 42 yuan! How expensive!

A: You know, it is the best seller for this year. It has had its fifth impression since its publication early this year.

B: How come? I have never seen such a popular book before.

A: Wait a minute. I found there were two printings. The paperback books must be much cheaper.

B: You are right. Let's buy the cheaper one.

A: 玛丽过来。我已经找到了老师上周推荐我们买的那本书。

B: 真的? 多少钱一本? 哇, 要 42 元呀。真贵啊!

A: 你知道, 这可是今年最畅销的书。从今年年初出版以来这本书已经重印五次了。

B: 怎么会? 我以前从未见过有这么热门的书。

A: 等等。我发现这里有两种印刷本。平装本的书肯定要便宜得多了。

B: 你说得对。我们就买便宜的这种。

购物 · Shopping

2. 购买教科书

A: Can you help me find my books?

B: Certainly, do you have your school schedule? The books are arranged by course number and instructor.

A: Oh, I see. Thank you.

A: 你能帮我找到我要的书吗?

B: 可以, 你有没有带课程表? 所有的书都是按照课程编号和任课老师排序的。

A: 哦, 我明白了, 谢谢。

3. 购买词典

A: Excuse me, can you suggest a good book for me to read?

B: Yes, they are all on the shelf.

A: Do you have an English-Chinese dictionary?

B: Yes. Here you are.

A: 对不起, 你可以介绍一本好书给我读吗?

B: 可以, 它们都在架子上。

A: 你们有英汉词典吗?

B: 有, 给你。



Unit
5

在珠宝店

At the Jeweler's Store

文化
链接

Culture Links

在美国购物的时候你应该注意,在大多数情况下,标签上的价格并不是你所需付的价钱,你还得交税。通常来说税金在标价的5% ~ 10%。

如果你想买贵重物品,建议你对照一下几家商店的价格。在美国没有“国家规定价格”。聪明的购物者可以寻找一些甩卖的机会,这时你可以买到质量相同,但价格低廉的商品。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues

1. 购买黄金饰品

A: Would you like jewellery? Today is Mother's Day and all the jewellery is on sale at Rich's.

B: Do you have gold jewels?

A: Yes, we have 14K and 18K gold necklaces, chains and earrings.

B: May I have a look?

A: Sure. Here is a nice gold necklace. Its regular price is 98 dollars, and now you can have it with a twenty percent discount.

B: It's very elegant. I'll take it.

A: All right. Is there anything else you want?

B: Will you show me that key ring?

A: Yes. Here you are.

B: It's very nice. Give me ten like this. I'm

A: 您要不要买首饰? 今天是母亲节,瑞奇店的所有首饰全部折价出售。

B: 你们有黄金饰品吗?

A: 有,我们有 14K 和 18K 的金项链、手链和耳环。

B: 我能看一下吗?

A: 当然可以。这里有一条很不错的金项链。原价是 98 美元,你现在购买可以享受八折优惠。

B: 这条项链非常精致。我买了。

A: 好的。还有别的什么想买的吗?

B: 把那个钥匙圈拿给我看看好吗?

A: 可以,给你。

B: 很漂亮,给我拿十个这样的钥匙圈。我

购物 · Shopping

sure they will be good gifts for my friends in China.

想这非常适合当礼物送给我中国的朋友们。

2. 购买手镯

A: I want to buy some jewellery.

B: What kind of jewellery do you like to have?

A: I should like to look at some bracelets.

B: Pure gold or carats?

A: Pure gold ones, please.

B: Certainly, madam.

A: What's the price for this one?

B: Five hundred and fifty yuan.

A: How about five hundred yuan?

B: I'm sorry we only sell at fixed prices.

A: 我要买些首饰。

B: 你要哪种首饰呢?

A: 我想看看手镯。

B: 纯金的还是 K 金的?

A: 请给我纯金的。

B: 女士, 给你。

A: 这只手镯多少钱?

B: 550 元。

A: 500 元怎么样?

B: 很抱歉, 我们店不还价。

3. 购买胸针(1)

A: How terrific the jewelry is! They look attractive in design, color and taste. Do you only do the wholesale business, lady?

B: Mostly. But we also do the retail.

A: Could you show me that colourful brooch?

B: You really have a good taste. Here it is.

A: How much does it cost?

B: 110 Yuan for each.

A: Jesus! It's so expensive. Can't it be any cheaper?

B: Sorry, we have no second price for the retail. It is of super quality, so the price is reasonable. It's a famous brand, you know.

A: Then I'll take it since I do prefer it. Wrap it up for me, please.

B: With pleasure.

A: 这些饰品真棒! 瞧这款式、颜色、品位多吸引人啊。小姐, 请问你们只做批发生意吗?

B: 主要搞批发, 但也做零售。

A: 那枚亮丽的胸针给我看看好吗?

B: 您真有眼光, 请看。

A: 售价多少?

B: 110 元。

A: 天哪! 真贵, 能便宜点吗?

B: 对不起, 我们这儿零售不讲价的。由于质量上乘, 因此我们定的价格是合理的, 况且你知道, 这是名牌产品。

A: 那我就买下了, 我实在太喜欢了。请给我包起来吧。

B: 很乐意为您服务。

4. 购买胸针(2)

- A: Excuse me. Would you please show me that brooch?
- B: Sure. Is this the one you want?
- A: No, the one next to it. Thanks. What kind of stone is this?
- B: It's an emerald. It is from South Africa. Do you want to try it on?
- A: Yes, please. How much is it?
- B: It costs £ 108.
- A: Wow! That's kind of expensive.
- B: Actually, it's a very good price. And this is the only brooch of its type. So you will never need to worry about someone else wearing one just like it.
- A: I like it, but it's well beyond my budget right now. Do you have something else in a similar style but at a cheaper price?
- B: Well, how about this one? It's made of coral and is a special product of Hawaii. And it's only a third of the price of the last one. Yes can have it for just £ 37 pounds and 50 pence.
- A: Are you sure it's genuine?
- B: Of course. Every item here is the real thing.
- A: I see. £ 37 pounds and 50 pence is a pretty good price, but £ 35 is all I can afford. How about it? Can you give it to me for that price?
- B: Well, you really seem to like it. So OK. £ 35 is fine, just for you.
- A: Thank you. That's very nice of you.
- A: 请问我可以看一下那支胸针吗?
- B: 可以啊。您是要看这支吗?
- A: 不是, 是旁边的那支。谢谢。请问这是哪种宝石?
- B: 这是祖母绿, 产地在南非。您要试戴吗?
- A: 好。这支多少钱?
- B: 108 英镑。
- A: 哇, 很贵啊。
- B: 事实上, 这价钱是很合算的, 而且这个款式独一无二, 您永远不必担心别人也戴类似的胸针。
- A: 我是很喜欢, 可是我没那么多钱。有类似的样式但便宜一点的吗?
- B: 那么这支如何, 这是珊瑚制的, 还是夏威夷的特产。只要刚才那支约三成的价格而已。算您 37 英镑 50 便士就好。
- A: 你确定这是真品吗?
- B: 当然, 本店的每样商品都是真货。
- A: 了解。37 英镑 50 便士是好价钱没错, 不过我只能出 35 美元了。可以以 35 美元卖给我吗?
- B: 看来您是真的很喜欢这支胸针。那好吧, 就 35 英镑了, 这价钱我只卖给您。
- A: 谢谢你, 你人真好。

5. 购买订婚戒指

A: May I help you find something, sir?

B: I'm looking for an engagement ring for my girlfriend. I have an idea of what she likes. But I want to surprise her with something special too.

A: We have all shapes, sizes, qualities, and price ranges. Do you know about the four Cs of picking a diamond?

B: I think so. Aren't the four Cs cut, clarity, carat, and color?

A: You've got it. Tell me a little bit about what you might be wanting.

B: Well, my price range is \$5,000 to \$7,000. I'm looking for a marquise cut on a wide band.

A: You have good taste. Let me show you what we have.

B: Let me take a look around some more. And if I have any other questions, I'll ask you.

A: 先生, 你需要我帮忙挑些什么吗?

B: 我在给我女朋友选订婚戒指。我知道她喜欢什么。但是我更想买比较特别的给她个惊喜。

A: 任何一种形状、大小、品质和价位的我们都有。你知道挑选钻石的 4C 原则吗?

B: 我想我知道。那 4C 是不是指切度、亮度、克拉和颜色?

A: 没错。请多少告诉我一点你可能要选什么样的。

B: 好吧, 价位在 5,000 美元到 7,000 美元之间。我在找卵形钻石镶在宽一点的戒指上。

A: 你很有品味。让我来给你介绍一些我们有的款式。

B: 让我先自己看看。如果我还有其他问题, 我会问你的。

6. 购买宝石戒指

A: What shall I show you?

B: Do you have a ring of ruby?

A: Here it is.

B: Can I try it on?

A: Please.

B: What material is the body?

A: Platinum.

A: 你要看些什么?

B: 你们有红宝石戒指吗?

A: 给您。

B: 我可以试戴吗?

A: 请吧。

B: 指环是什么材料的?

A: 白金的。

Unit
6

在鞋店

At the Shoe Shop

文化
链接

Culture Links

英国丘吉尔家庭保险公司近日说,约有44%的英国妇女承认,外出购物时鞋是她们最喜欢买的物品,86%的妇女声称,她们每月至少买一双新鞋。关于鞋的中英制对照:

中国尺码

男鞋: 36 ~ 42 号

女鞋: 36 ~ 40 号

英制尺码

约 8 ~ 10 号

约 5 ~ 8 号

实用对话

Practical Dialogues

1. 买鞋

A: Do you want to buy something here?
B: These shoes are great! What is the price of this?
A: This one is two hundred yuan.
B: That's too much!

A: 您想买些什么呢?
B: 这双鞋真漂亮! 多少钱?
A: 这款 200 元。
B: 太贵了!

2. 购买跑鞋

A: I bought a stepping machine last week.
You know, I'm too fat.
B: But you don't have running shoes.
A: That's why I asked you out.
B: Which brand do you prefer?
A: I've no idea.
B: What about Nike? It's a famous brand.
My brother bought a pair of Nike shoes
and he does jogging every morning.
A: They look nice. But a little bit heavy,

A: 上个礼拜我买了一台跑步机。你知道, 我太胖了。
B: 但你没有跑鞋。
A: 这就是我叫你出来的原因了。
B: 你喜欢什么牌子的?
A: 我不知道。
B: 耐克怎么样? 那是个著名品牌。我哥哥买了一双耐克, 他每天早上都慢跑。
A: 看上去还不错。但是好像有点重, 你觉

购物 · Shopping

don't you think so?

B: I agree with you. Let's go to Li-Ning.

A: OK. I think this pair is good.

B: Yes. Why not try them on?

A: Good idea. (To the assistant) Have you got smaller ones?

C: What size?

A: Size 41.

C: Here you are.

B: How do you feel?

A: (After trying) They are lighter. But a little large, I think.

C: They would fit you well if you wear thick cotton socks.

A: May I try on the ones in Size 40?

C: Sure, here you are.

A: (After trying) Mm, they're comfortable. I'll take them.

得呢?

B: 我也这么觉得。我们去看看李宁牌运动鞋吧。

A: 好的。我觉得这双不错。

B: 是啊。为什么不试试呢?

A: 好主意。(对店员)有没有小点码的?

C: 几码?

A: 41 码。

C: 给你。

B: 你觉得怎么样?

A: (试穿后) 比较轻, 但是有点大, 我觉得。

C: 如果你穿双厚棉袜的话就刚刚好了。

A: 我能试一下 40 码的吗?

C: 当然, 给你。

A: (试穿后) 嗯, 很舒适, 我就买它们。

3. 购买运动鞋

A: Welcome to Jinyuan Shoe Town. What can I do for you?

B: I'm looking for a pair of white sports shoes to go with my jeans.

A: White? What make do you want? And what size?

B: Adidas. Size 38.

A: Adidas? They wear well. Try this pair, Size 38, please.

B: Yes. (After trying) A bit tight actually, they pinch my toes. Have you got a larger pair, Size 39?

A: Okay. What about this one?

B: (After trying) Mm, this pair fits me well. I'll take it. How much is it?

A: 欢迎光临金源鞋城。你要买什么?

B: 我想买一双白色的运动鞋来配我的牛仔裤。

A: 白色? 你要什么牌子的? 要几码?

B: 阿迪达斯, 38 码。

A: 阿迪达斯? 噢, 它们很耐穿的, 试试这双吧, 38 码的。

B: 好的。(试穿后) 好像太紧了点儿, 有点夹脚。有没有大点的, 比如说 39 码的?

A: 有。这双怎样?

B: (试穿后) 嗯, 这双正合脚。就这双吧。多少钱?

在鞋店 · At the Shoe Shop

A: You are so lucky. They are on sale today. It costs only 250 yuan. Pay at the counter over there.

B: OK. Thank you.

A: 你真走运,今天正好在促销,只需 250 元。请到那边柜台去付款。

B: 好,谢谢。

4. 购买特价鞋

A: Let's go into this shoe store, and I need some shoes to match my new dress.

B: That's a good idea. I'm so tired from shopping that I'll be glad to sit down, but I don't need any shoes.

S: Good afternoon, ladies. May I help you?

A: I hope so. I'm interested in seeing a pair of shoes to match my new red dress.

S: Do you want high heels or low heels?

A: Low heels are more comfortable, but I think I should wear high heels with that dress.

S: Let me measure your foot. Fine. Here are several different styles in your size. Try these on. They're on sale today.

A: They fit perfectly, but they aren't exactly what I want, I don't see any that I really like. Thanks anyway.

B: Just a minute. Let me try on that pair.

A: I thought you didn't need new shoes.

B: I don't. But I never can resist a sale.

A: 我们进这家鞋店看看吧,我得买双鞋来配我的新衣服。

B: 这主意不错。逛了半天商店,我已经很累了,倒真高兴有个地方能坐下歇歇;我不需要买什么鞋。

S: 下午好,女士们。想买鞋吗?

A: 是的,我想买一双鞋来配我的红色新裙子。

S: 您想要高跟的,还是低跟的?

A: 平跟的虽然会更舒服些,不过我看我还是得穿双高跟的鞋才和我那件裙子相配。

S: 请让我看看您穿多少号的鞋。好了,这里有几双您能穿的,风格样式各不相同。请试试吧,今天特价优惠。

A: 大小倒是完全合适,不过不是我想要的那种样式的。我看没有一双是我真正喜欢的。不过,还是多谢您了。

B: 请等一下,让我试试那一双吧。

A: 你刚才不是说过不想买鞋的吗?

B: 是啊,可我却从来不接受任何特价货。

Unit

7

在化妆品店

At the Cosmetics Store

文化
链接

Culture Links

高档化妆品、服装、手表等奢侈品在国外买更便宜,这已经被许多中国消费者所认同。因此,近几年来,托人从国外代购或自己到境外大量购买高档消费品相当流行。以化妆品为例,目前在中国商场里销售的进口化妆品须缴纳增值税、进口税以及消费税,这无疑增加了进口化妆品在国内市场上的销售价格。从2006年4月1日起,国内调整消费税,高档化妆品的消费税率为30%,增值税为17%,再加上进口税,总体算下来,摆到国内商场里的化妆品比国外产品的价格至少高出60%左右。如果从香港或国外直接购买或找人代购,就可以免去部分税费。而且如果赶上国外的节日和换季大减价,还能够以平时二折或三折的价钱买到同样的商品,即便加上代购费等中间费用,也只以国内市场上同类产品60%~70%的价格就能买到。这么大的价差自然吸引了大批消费者选择直接从国外购买。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues

1. 购买化妆品

A: How can I help you?

B: Yes, I would like to look at some of your products. I think what I am using now does not fit me well.

A: We have a full range of products from cosmetics to skin cleansers.

B: What do you have in foundation?

A: Our foundation is of very super quality. We only use the finest ingredients. It will moisturize your skin and it can protect your skin from UVA and UVB.

A: 我可以为您效劳吗?

B: 是的,我想看看你们的产品。我觉得我现在用的产品不太适合我。

A: 我们有全系列的产品,从化妆品到洁肤品。

B: 你们有哪些粉底呢?

A: 我们的粉底质量一流。我们只选用最好的原料。它可以滋润你的皮肤,还可以阻隔长波紫外线和中波紫外线。

在化妆品店 · At the Cosmetics Store

B: What colors do you have in foundation?

A: Let me show you. We have six colors: ivory, buff, nude, soft cameo, natural beige, and golden.

B: The color I use now is natural beige. How much do you sell it for?

A: 250 Yuan.

B: That's expensive.

A: What you're paying for, madam, is the ingredients. It provides a soft and perfect finish coverage with a weightless feel.

B: I understand. I need a lipstick, too. Do you have lipsticks in red?

A: Of course. But I suggest you buy a lip-gloss. The shining effect is in.

B: All right. How much is it?

A: 45 Yuan. If you buy the two, you can get a small bottle of nail polish for free.

B: Well, I'll take them.

B: 粉底有哪些颜色呢?

A: 让我给你看看, 我们有象牙色、浅黄色、自然色、珍珠色、浅褐色、金色六种颜色。

B: 我现在用的是浅褐色的。这瓶要多少钱?

A: 250 元。

B: 好贵!

A: 这些原料很贵的, 太太。它可以带给您轻柔、完美的妆容, 而且质地非常轻盈。

B: 我明白。我还想买一支唇膏。你们有红色的唇膏吗?

A: 当然有。不过我推荐您买一支唇彩。那种闪闪的效果很流行。

B: 好吧, 要多少钱?

A: 45 元。如果你两样都买的话, 还可以免费获得一小瓶指甲油。

B: 好吧, 我买了。

2. 购买眼影

A: May I help you? Miss!

B: Yes. I'd like to look at lipstick and eye shadow.

A: What color set do you prefer?

B: Well, brown.

A: We have a beautiful selection of eye shadows this fall. Look at the colors. Aren't they beautiful?

B: But they're purple. I prefer a brown set.

A: If you insist, I can show you the brown sets. I'll have to warn you that they're very ordinary, though.

B: Well, I'm not so sure. Most of my make-up is brown.

A: Why don't you wear purple eye shadow

A: 我能为你效劳吗? 小姐!

B: 是的, 我想看看唇膏和眼影。

A: 你喜欢那一个色系?

B: 嗯, 棕色系。

A: 我们今秋推出一系列漂亮的眼影。你看看这些颜色。它们是不是很漂亮?

B: 但都是紫色的。我比较喜欢棕色系。

A: 如果你坚持的话, 我可以拿棕色系的出来给你看。不过我得提醒你, 棕色系非常普通。

B: 哦, 我也不确定。我大部分的化妆品都是棕色系的。

A: 你何不擦紫色眼影改变一下? 我们还有

购物 · Shopping

for a change? We also have lipstick to go with it.

B: Can I try it?

A: Sure. Are you wearing any make-up?

B: No.

A: Have a seat, please. Now, here is the mirror. How do you like it?

B: Not bad. Actually, it makes me look younger. I like it.

A: Try the lipstick as well. See, how fresh and charming you look.

B: You're right. I'll take them all.

唇膏可以搭配。

B: 我可以试妆吗?

A: 可以。你脸上有化妆吗?

B: 没有。

A: 请坐。镜子在这边, 你喜欢吗?

B: 还不错。事实上, 它让我看起来年轻多了, 我很喜欢。

A: 唇膏也擦擦看吧。瞧, 你看起来多么神采奕奕, 多么迷人!

B: 你说得对。我都买了。

3 购买睫毛膏

A: I need some mascara. Do you have good thickening mascara?

B: Of course. Here is our thickening mascara. We also have mascara designed to lengthen the eyelashes.

A: Alright. And I want to consider your eye shadow too. Do you have a color chart I can look at?

B: We have a very wide selection of colors. And our eye shadow is specially designed to moisturize the skin. So it is very gentle on your eyelids. Would you like to sample some?

A: Oh, sure. I will need to clean off my own eye shadow first.

B: I can help you with that.

A: Thank you.

A: 我想买一些睫毛膏。你们有卖浓稠式睫毛膏吗?

B: 有, 这是我们的浓稠式睫毛膏。我们也有一些助长睫毛的睫毛膏。

A: 好的, 我也想看看你们的眼影。你们有颜色表让我参考吗?

B: 我们有很多颜色。而且我们的眼影还可以滋润皮肤。擦在眼脸上是非常温和的。你想试试看看吗?

A: 好的, 我先把我的眼影去掉。

B: 我来帮你。

A: 谢谢。

4 购买粉底

A: How can I help you?

B: Yes, I would like to look at some of your products.

A: Did you have anything specific in mind?

A: 我可以为你效劳吗?

B: 是的, 我想看看你们的产品。

A: 有没有特别想要看的呢?

在化妆品店 · At the Cosmetics Store

B: Well, to be honest, I mostly use Sarah Winter products now. But I'm not happy with them. So I would like to change companies.

A: Well, you made a good choice. Coming to us, I mean. We have a full range of products from cosmetics to skin cleansers and moisturizers.

B: What do you have in foundation?

A: Our foundation is very high quality. Only the finest ingredients. It will moisturize your skin and it has a sun block rating of 8.

B: What colours do you have in foundation?

A: Let me show you. We have this rose colour. We also have different shades of beige.

B: The color I use now is rose. How much does this rose foundation cost? The 100ml bottle.

A: In this size, we sell it for 53.95.

B: Wow! That's expensive.

A: What you're paying for, Ma'am, are the ingredients. It is a very high quality product.

B: I understand.

B: 老实说,我一直都用莎拉·温特这个牌子的产品。但是我不很满意,所以我想换别家的。

A: 哦,那你选对了,我的意思是来找我们。我们有全系列的产品,从化妆品到洁肤和润肤品。

B: 你们有哪些粉底呢?

A: 我们的粉底质量非常好,只用优质的原料制成。它可以滋润你的皮肤而且其防晒指数达到 8。

B: 粉底有哪些颜色呢?

A: 你看看。我们有这种玫瑰色,还有各种浓淡的灰褐色。

B: 我现在用的是玫瑰色。这款玫瑰色粉底是多少钱? 100ml 装的。

A: 这瓶是 53 美元 95 美分。

B: 哇,好贵哦!

A: 这些原料很珍贵的,太太。这是一款高品质的产品。

B: 我明白。

Unit
8

在跳蚤市场

In the Flea Market

文化
链接

Culture Links

国外的跳蚤市场与国内的集贸市场相似,出售的物品种类繁多,有新有旧,用心挑选就可以买到物美价廉的东西。庭院市场的物品就更便宜了。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 美国跳蚤市场

A: I have found it quite different here from China since I came to the United States.

B: What's the difference?

A: Some friends of mine took me to the mall to go shopping. It was so big. I think I could get lost if I went there alone.

B: You must have bought many things in the mall?

A: Not really many. I was told that on weekends there were always the flea markets, so I decided to come to the flea market to buy a bargain.

B: It's wise to do it. The Americans have the habit of selling their junk when they are moving to another place, so they usually display all the things they want to sell in their gardens at the weekend. And many things they are selling still look quite new and they are also very useful.

A: 我到美国后已经发现这里和中国太不一样。

B: 什么不一样?

A: 我的朋友带我到购物中心去买东西。那里太大了,我想如果我一个人去的话可能会迷路。

B: 那你肯定在购物中心买了不少东西吧?

A: 并没有多少。我得知周末总有跳蚤市场,所以我就想到跳蚤市场上淘点便宜货。

B: 这样做很聪明。美国人有搬家卖旧货的习惯,他们经常会在周末把要卖的东西摆在他们家的院子里。而且很多东西都很新,很实用。

在跳蚤市场 · In the Flea Market

A: I have heard about it while in China. It is called a "yard sale". I didn't have any idea of that until today when I came here to the big "yard sale".

B: You must have got many useful things for your new apartment.

A: 我在中国时就听说过这个叫做“庭院旧货出售”的词。直到今天我到过这个大型的“庭院旧货出售”，对它才有所了解。

B: 你肯定为你那新公寓房添置了不少有用的东西吧。

2. 购买电视

A: Does this TV work well?

B: Yes, it is almost new here.

A: Is it a color TV or a black and white TV?

B: It is a color TV. You know, the rich people like the digital one now. So they have no room for them.

A: 这台电视看起来效果好吗?

B: 当然,这几乎还是新的呢。

A: 是彩色的还是黑白的?

B: 彩色的,你知道,现在有钱人喜欢看数字电视了。所以家里没有地方放。

3. 跳蚤市场讨价还价

A: Hello! Are you shopping here today? Haven't I seen you in some flea markets and thrift shops a couple of times?

B: I'm just comparing prices.

A: You should! This thrift shop is really cheap, though you have to pay cash here.

B: But they don't let you have goods on approval.

A: 嗨! 你今天来这里买东西吗? 我已经好多次看到你在跳蚤市场或旧货店买东西了吧?

B: 我只是在比价而已。

A: 你应该这样做! 尽管需要付现金,但这家旧货店真便宜。

B: 但是他们不让你包退包换的。

4. 买到便宜货

A: How did you get it?

B: I found it a garage sale once.

A: What a find! So, how much does it cost?

B: Well, because I like you... ninety bucks.

A: Ninety dollars is pretty steep. I'll take it for sixty bucks.

A: 你怎么得到的?

B: 有一次我在一个车库拍卖中找到的。

A: 真是挖到宝了! 那你要卖多少?

B: 嗯,因为我跟你投缘……90 美元好了。

A: 90 美元太贵了。我出 60 美元。

Unit
9

买电脑

Buying a Computer

文
化
链
接

Culture Links

各种事实已经表明：未来的时代是网络信息的时代，“网上生活方式”是人类今后的重要生活方式。网上政府(办公)、网上贸易、网上购物、网上新闻、网上教育、网上科研、网上娱乐、网上旅游、网上医疗、网上运动保健等一系列将成为我们今后生活的重要领域。上网可以帮助我们解决更多的难题，而且上网还可以聊天、打游戏等，实在是其乐无穷。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



购买学生机

A: Can I help you?

B: Yes, I need to buy a computer for this semester. I was told it is cheaper to buy computers here.

A: Well, you heard right. You can get an excellent deal on a new computer here. We have great discounts for students.

B: I don't know much about computers. But I know I want a desktop computer with a lot of memory. And I need a printer.

A: Well, first let's consider your computer. Here, for example, is a system I highly recommend—the Power Macintosh G3. It comes with 64 megabytes of total memory.

B: Is that a lot? Sixty-four?

A: 我可以帮你吗?

B: 是的,这学期我需要买一台电脑,人家告诉我这里的电脑比较便宜。

A: 的确,你听说的没错。在这儿买新电脑你可以拿到很不错的价格,我们给学生很大的折扣。

B: 我对电脑了解不多,但是我知道我想要一台有很大内存的台式电脑,而且我還要一台打印机。

A: 好的,我们先考虑你要的电脑。我极力推荐这儿的一套系统——麦金塔 G3。它的总内存为六十四兆。

B: 那很大吗? 六十四?

买电脑 · Buying a Computer

A: Yes, it is. It should be enough for any student needs you might have. What department are you in?

B: History.

A: Well, so you will mostly be using word processing, for writing papers. I recommend the Corel Word Perfect program for word processing. We can talk about software later. Let's talk about your hardware first. We have a special deal on right now. I should tell you about it, as it only goes until next Tuesday. If you buy one of these fifteen-inch color monitors with a Power Macintosh G3, you can actually get 30 percent off the usual sale price.

B: Thirty percent?

A: Yes.

B: Wow. That's really good. And you think this is really a good system for a graduate student?

A: Yes. It's an excellent system.

B: Hmm. Hey, wait. This has an Apple on it. Is this an Apple computer?

A: Yes, it's a Macintosh. It's Apple. Macintosh and Apple are the same thing.

B: I don't want Macintosh. I want PC.

A: I'm sorry, but our university computer center only sells Macintosh equipment.

B: What? Are you serious?

A: Yes.

B: But nobody uses Macintosh!

A: That's not true. Most of the students and professors in the university here use Macintosh. They find it is better for writing and word-processing, and that is

A: 是的, 对任何学生的需求应该是足够了。你是什么系的?

B: 历史系。

A: 嗯, 所以你会常用文字处理系统来写论文。我推荐用 Corel Word Perfect 程式来做文字处理。我们待会再来谈软件, 先谈硬件吧。我们现在有特价, 我应该告诉你, 因为只持续到星期二为止。如果你购买这套麦金塔 G3 系统的 15 寸彩显的主机, 事实上可以拿到平常售价的七折。

B: 七折?

A: 是的。

B: 哇, 太好了。你觉得对一个研究生而言, 这真是一个很好的系统吗?

A: 是的, 它是很棒的系统。

B: 嗯。嘿, 等等, 这上面有个苹果标志, 这是苹果电脑吗?

A: 是的, 是麦金塔, 就是苹果机。麦金塔和苹果机是一回事。

B: 我不想要麦金塔, 我要个人电脑。

A: 很抱歉, 但是我们大学电脑中心只卖麦金塔设备。

B: 什么? 说真的吗?

A: 是的。

B: 可是没有人用麦金塔。

A: 不会啊, 这所大学大部分的学生和教授都用麦金塔。他们发现这套系统对写作和文字处理比较好, 而且大多数学生都在使用它。我可以问你从哪来的吗?

购物 · Shopping

what students mostly do. May I ask where you're from?

B: Yes, I'm from Taiwan.

A: Well, I know that in most Asian countries Apple is not very popular. But here in America, especially in universities and publishing companies, Apple is very commonly used.

B: But I need a computer that can handle writing in Chinese.

A: There are several Chinese writing programs you can use with Macintosh. Chinese is no problem for Apple.

B: Hmm. I think I should ask some of my friends for advice before I make a decision. I'm sorry.

A: No, don't be sorry. It's reasonable to ask your friends. But believe me, most of the students here in the university—Asian students included—most of them use Apple.

B: Well, thanks for your advice. I will probably come back later.

A: You're very welcome. Here is my card, if you need any help.

B: 我是台湾来的。

A: 哦,我知道苹果电脑在亚洲大多数的国家并不是很流行。但在美国这里,尤其是大学和出版社里,使用苹果电脑是非常普遍的。

B: 但是我需要一台可以处理中文写作的电脑。

A: 有一些中文的写作程式可以在麦金塔上使用,对苹果电脑而言,中文不是问题。

B: 嗯。我想在做决定前应该请我一些朋友给点建议。很抱歉。

A: 不会,不需要抱歉。问你朋友是合理的,但是相信我,这所大学大多数的学生—包括亚洲的学生,大部分都使用苹果电脑。

B: 好的,谢谢你的建议,我可能之后会再回来。

A: 非常欢迎。这是我的名片,如果你需要任何帮忙的话。



Unit
10

购买家居用品

Buying Commodities

文化
链接

Culture Links

许多人喜欢逛国内外的织品店,但当你游走在不论是充满古色古香还是颇具现代感的地毯、桌布等专卖店时,除了关注商品本身的花色、质地、产地、还有价格之外,更必须认识到这有一点像买“古董”,对内行的人来说,织品价格的高低可能不在它的大小,而是在它的质地用料。一般来说,年代越久远的价格越高昂,因为以前的产品都是手工制造的,绝对独一无二,除了赏心悦目之外,更有其长久、独特的艺术价值。但是,这类东西却也往往不容易鉴定年份,所以价格总是随人哄抬,在选购时必须特别注意。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 购买床上用品

A: I would like to place an order.

B: Alright, Ma'am. What items would you like to order today?

A: I have your catalog here. Do you want me to tell you the item numbers, or the names?

B: You may tell me both, Ma'am.

A: Alright. I want to order the satin sheets on page 28.

B: The Merriman satin sheets?

A: Yes, that's right.

B: And what size would you like?

A: I need one full set of sheets in King-size.

B: Alright, Ma'am. And what color did you

A: 我想要订购东西。

B: 好的,太太。你今天想要订购什么呢?

A: 我有你们的目录。要说编号还是品名呢?

B: 你可以都告诉我,太太。

A: 好的,我想订 28 页的绸缎床单。

B: 欢乐牌绸缎床单?

A: 对的。

B: 你要什么尺寸呢?

A: 我要特大号的一整套。

B: 好的,太太。你要什么颜色呢?

购物 · Shopping

want?

A: Ivory, please.

B: So that is product number MS2119, Size: King, Color: Ivory. Is that correct?

A: Yes, I think so. Can I ask you something?

B: Certainly.

A: I'm a foreigner here. My English isn't perfect. Can you tell me what satin is?

B: Satin is like silk, Ma'am. It feels like silk. But it's a different material.

A: I see. That's what I thought.

B: Anything else today?

A: No, I just need the sheets.

B: Alright. With shipping charges, your total will be 68 dollars. Will you be paying with credit?

A: Yes.

B: Visa, Master Card, or American Express.

A: Visa.

B: Card number?

A: 8825 1127 4235 9869.

B: Expiration date?

A: July, 2006.

B: All right, Ma'am. I will run that charge for you. And then I will get your address in a moment.

A: Thank you.

A: 象牙色, 谢谢。

B: 商品编号是 MS2119, 尺寸是特大号, 颜色是象牙色, 对吗?

A: 对的。我可以请教一件事吗?

B: 当然可以。

A: 我是外国人, 我的英文不是很好, 你可以告诉我什么是绸缎吗?

B: 绸缎就像丝一样, 太太。摸起来也像丝一样, 但是材质不同。

A: 我明白, 我也是这么想。

B: 今天还要其他的吗?

A: 不, 我只要床单就好。

B: 好的, 含运费一共是 68 美元。你要用信用卡付账吗?

A: 是的。

B: 威事卡、万事达卡或是美国运通卡。

A: 威事卡。

B: 卡号是?

A: 8825 1127 4235 9869.

B: 期限是?

A: 2006 年 7 月。

B: 好的, 太太。我会为你处理的。待会儿再要你的地址。

A: 谢谢。

购买床

A: Great. The bed is exactly what I have been looking for!

B: You have good taste. It's made of red wood.

A: Oh, I like red wood. How much do you charge for it?

A: 太棒了。这张床正是我想要的!

B: 您的品位不错。这是红木床。

A: 哦, 我喜欢红木。你卖多少钱?

购买家居用品 · Buying Commodities

B: 300 dollars.
 A: That's sheer robbery!
 B: Believe me, it's worth the price.
 A: It's more than I can afford. Can I make an offer?
 B: How much are you willing to pay?
 A: Shall we make it 250 dollars?
 B: No. That price would hardly cover the cost.
 A: What about 260 dollars?
 B: 275 dollars is the lowest price I can offer.
 A: It's a deal.

B: 三百美元。
 A: 简直就是抢钱啊!
 B: 相信我, 它物有所值。
 A: 我付不起这个价格。可以讲价吗?
 B: 您愿意出多少钱?
 A: 两百五十美元怎么样?
 B: 不行。这价格连本钱都不够。
 A: 两百六十美元怎么样?
 B: 最低两百七十五美元。
 A: 成交!

3. 购买沙发

A: Hi, can I help you?
 B: Yes, please. I'm looking for a sofa.
 A: What about this one?
 B: May it be used as a sofa in the day and a bed during the night?
 A: Oh, you want a convertible sofa. This way, please. Over there is the one you want.

A: 您好, 想买什么东西吗?
 B: 是的, 我准备买沙发。
 A: 这款怎么样?
 B: 它能白天当沙发晚上当床用吗?
 A: 哦, 您想要两用沙发。这边请。那里有一款您想要的式样。

4. 购买家具

A: Good morning, can I help you?
 B: We'd like to buy some furniture for our new house.
 A: Here are several sets of furniture, including sofa, dressing table, wardrobe, and sideboard. How about this one?
 B: We like a larger wardrobe.

A: 早上好, 请问想买什么?
 B: 我们想为新房子添些家具。
 A: 这里有几件套, 包括沙发、梳妆台、大衣柜、餐具柜等家具。这一套怎么样?
 B: 我们想要一个更大的衣柜。

5. 沙发订单

A: Hello, my name's David Wong. I've ordered a sofa from you last Wednesday. I wonder when it will be delivered today.
 B: Let me check... what's your voucher

A: 喂。我叫王大卫, 我上星期三从你那里订了一张沙发, 我想知道今天何时送到。
 B: 让我查看一下……你的订单号码多少?

购物 · Shopping

number?

A: It's 45132.

B: Wait a minute, please... Mr. Wong, I'm terribly sorry. Our delivery truck had an accident today. I'm afraid your sofa won't be delivered until tomorrow.

A: 是 45132。

B: 请等一等……王先生,真对不起,今天我们的货车发生了意外,恐怕你的沙发要明天才能送到。

购买桌子

A: Do you have any tables?

B: Yes. We've got plenty of tables in stock. Will you have a look at this one?

A: It's a nice color, and the style is not bad, but a bit too small. I'd like to get a slightly larger one.

B: How about this one?

A: Mmm, I like it. How much is it?

B: Seventy US dollars.

A: Here is the money. Could you deliver this to my house?

B: Of course. We are always at your service.

A: Here is my name card. Thanks.

B: You are welcome.

A: 你们有桌子卖吗?

B: 我们这里桌子有的是。想看看这张吗?

A: 这张颜色不错,式样也不错,只是太小了一点。我想要一张稍大一点的。

B: 这张怎么样?

A: 噢,我挺喜欢。多少钱?

B: 70 美元。

A: 给你钱。你们能帮我把这张桌子送到家吗?

B: 没问题。我们随时为你服务。

A: 这是我的名片。谢谢。

B: 不客气。

购买炊具

A: I'd have a look at some pots and pans.

B: We've got several kinds. All are made of different materials.

A: What kind is most durable, please?

B: Well, here is one made of duralumin. That's cheap and durable. Over there we've also got some made of stainless steel, and those over there are enamel ones.

A: I'll have the stainless ones. They look very solid.

B: Yes, sir. Stainless steel products are always popular.

A: 我想看看有什么炊具。

B: 我们有好多种产品,材料各不相同。

A: 请问哪一种最耐用?

B: 这个嘛,这款硬铝制品,价廉耐用。那边还有不锈钢的,那边是搪瓷的。

A: 我就要不锈钢的吧。这种看来挺结实。

B: 是的,先生。不锈钢产品一向很受欢迎。

Unit
11

网上购物

Shopping on Line

文化
链接

Culture Links

the web company 网络公司, 口语中还可以用 dot com company 来表达; the physical stores 实际意义上的商店, 与其相对应的网上商店为看不见的商店 viewless stores, 亦称为电子商务 (business) 中的网上商店。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 购物网站

A: How do you usually sell your products now?

B: I'm doing business through Internet now.

A: Oh, really? Is it a good way?

B: Yes, very good.

A: What advantages does it have?

B: It is very convenient. You know you can browse the website and send e-mails to your customers at any time.

A: Yes, if we do business through other ways, it will cost a lot of time.

B: Also it has low cost, and you know you only need to pay the fee of Internet, which is very cheap.

A: Yes, going abroad to join the exhibition will cost much. But does it have any disadvantages?

B: To be frank, sometimes it is not so safe

A: 你现在通常怎样销售你的产品?

B: 我现在通过互联网做生意。

A: 是吗? 这个方式好吗?

B: 是的, 挺好的。

A: 它主要有什么优点啊?

B: 非常便捷, 你看你可以随时浏览网页, 给你的客户发邮件。

A: 那倒是, 通过其他方式做生意需要花费不少时间。

B: 还有, 它的成本比较低, 只需要付上网费就够了, 上网费很便宜。

A: 是的, 去国外参加展会开销很大。不过, 它有什么缺点吗?

B: 坦率地讲, 有时候它不如传统途径那样

购物 · Shopping

as doing business through traditional ways.

A: You mean there may be credit problems?

B: Yes, but if you choose some good B2B websites, such problems can be avoided.

A: Will you give some suggestion?

B: Of course, such as the Alibaba, which is a famous website.

A: Thanks. Maybe I will do business through Internet in the future.

安全。

A: 你的意思是说信用问题?

B: 是的, 不过如果你选择好的 B2B 网站, 这个问题可以避免。

A: 有什么好的网站推荐吗?

B: 比如说阿里巴巴, 这是个知名网站。

A: 谢谢。也许我以后也会通过网络做生意。

网上买卖

A: Hi. Have you got a personal computer?

B: Certainly. What's the matter?

A: I wonder if you often trade with others on the internet.

B: Sure. I often buy things or do business through it without going out to the physical stores.

A: Great! It's just like viewless stores. But how can you shop or order on line or trade on line?

B: That's simple. Just click the hyperlink, www.taobao.com or www.ebay.com, and you can see the specimen of the goods shown on the screen, and then you can place an order online with the sales company. And the goods will be delivered to your place.

A: Is the service charged?

B: No. It's free.

A: Really. I'll get a computer at once.

A: 嗨! 你有个人电脑吗?

B: 有啊, 干吗?

A: 我想知道你是否常在网上与别人做生意。

B: 当然啦。我经常上网做买卖, 这样就不用逛实体商店了。

A: 太棒了, 这好比是无形商店。那你是怎么样在网上购物或下单的呢?

B: 很简单, 只要轻轻点击一下链接, 如 www.taobao.com 或 www.ebay.com, 就可以看到在屏幕上显示出的样品, 然后你就可以向销售公司订货了, 而且货会送达你所在的地方。

A: 要收服务费吗?

B: 不收, 是免费的。

A: 真是太好了, 我这就去买一台电脑。

网上购物介绍

A: Today more and more families have per-

A: 如今越来越多的家庭拥有个人电脑, 人

网上购物 · Shopping on Line

sonal computers. People have wider range of choice to communicate with the outside world.

B: Right. With the establishment of Internet and a lot of web companies, people are getting more and more dependent on the web.

A: One of the common uses of PC is that people can buy goods through it without going out to the physical stores.

B: Can you tell me how it is done?

A: If a customer is interested in some certain goods, he can ask the web company to have the specimen of the goods shown on the color screen, and then the customer can place an order online to the sales company. And then the goods you want will be delivered to your home. The service is perfect and the delivery is free of charge.

B: I see. So great.

们与外部世界的沟通有了更广泛的选择。

B: 是的。随着互联网和其他许多网络公司的建立,人们越来越依赖网络了。

A: 个人电脑一个最普遍的用途是人们不用到商店去就能通过它来购物。

B: 你能否跟我说说怎么在网上操作?

A: 如果顾客在网上看中了某件物品,他可以要求网络公司在彩显上展示这个物品,然后顾客可以在网上向销售公司订货。然后所订的货物会被送到顾客家里。他们的服务很完善而且免费送货。

B: 我明白了。真是太棒了。



Unit
12

讨价还价

Bargaining

文化
链接

Culture Links

Can't you make it a little cheaper? (便宜一点儿行吗?) 这是在购物时讨价还价的说法, 也可以说 Could you reduce the price a little? (能便宜一点儿吗?) 其他说法有 Can I have any discount? (有折扣吗?) Can you give me a discount on this? (能不能打点折?) Do you have any discount for this? (有折扣吗?) 另外, 所谓“捡到便宜货”, 英文的说法则是 It's a good buy. 或者是 It's a real bargain.

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 零售砍价

A: Could you tell me how much it is?
B: About \$ 200.
A: So expensive. I've seen this cheaper in other places. How about \$ 150?
B: We can make a discount by model.
A: We have to ask for another price reduction.
B: You can forget about another cut.
A: I like everything about it except the price.

A: 能告诉我这个的价格是多少吗?
B: 200 美元左右。
A: 价格太贵了。我在别家看过更便宜的。卖 150 美元如何?
B: 我们可以根据型号给予优惠。
A: 再给我们优惠点儿吧。
B: 不能再降价了。
A: 这东西除了价钱之外我都喜欢。

2. 批货优惠 (1)

A: How much are you asking for this?
B: I'm offering them to you at 150 yuan a piece. Is that all right?
A: Is tax already included in their price?
B: Yes. Our price can't be matched.
A: Would you consider a volume discount?

A: 这个多少钱?
B: 每件 100 元, 您看怎么样?
A: 这个价位含税吗?
B: 是的。我们的价格无人可比。
A: 批量购进可以再优惠吗?

讨价还价 · Bargaining

B: If you buy 1,000 or more, you'll get a 10% discount.

A: I'll accept your offer.

B: 如果您能购进 1,000 件以上我们就可以优惠 10%。

A: 好的, 我接受。

3. 批货优惠 (2)

A: Excuse me, I want to know what's your price per dozen for exercise books?

B: 15 dollars per dozen

A: Oh, it's rather too high. We have another offer for a similar one at a much lower price.

B: However, the quality of our exercise books is better than others. I can assure you that our price is the most favorable. A trial will convince you of my words.

A: If you can go a little lower, I'd be able to give you an order on the spot.

B: This price of yours is out of the question. You must know that the cost of production has risen a great deal in recent years.

A: I hope you'll give a second thought to it.

B: We have to discuss the problem later.

A: What about if we order a large amount of exercise books?

B: Could you give me an idea of how large an amount you want?

A: About 300 dozens.

B: Then, let me check. For the large quantity you ask, considering the cost of raw materials, I think 13 dollar is our bottom line. And I can assure you this is the lowest price in the market in nowadays.

A: OK. That's a deal.

A: 打扰一下, 我想问一下每打练习册的售价是多少?

B: 每打 15 美元。

A: 哦, 太贵了。同样的产品, 我们另外得到的报价比这低得多。

B: 但是我们的质量比别家的好。我可以向你保证, 我们的价格是最优惠的, 试一试你就相信我说的了。

A: 如果你能把价格降低些, 我现在就订货。

B: 这是不可能的。你知道, 近几年生产成本与日俱增。

A: 希望你再考虑考虑。

B: 我们只好下次再讨论这个问题了。

A: 如果我们订购大量的练习册呢?

B: 你能告诉我你们想要多少吗?

A: 大约 300 打。

B: 这样的话, 让我看看。要是这么大量, 又考虑到原材料成本问题的话, 我觉得 13 美元是我们的底线了。我可以保证这是现在市场上的最低价格了。

A: 好的, 成交。

A: Well, to come straight to the point,

A: 那好, 开门见山地说吧, 能讲讲你们的最

购物 · Shopping

could you tell us something about your new price?

B: Most willingly. It's 600 dollars per ton.

A: That's a high price.

B: But you know, the price of this article has soared up since last year.

A: I know. But I must say it's still unacceptable. Couldn't you make a discount for me? You see, we have such a long-term cooperation. And our business could be mutually beneficial.

B: OK. I can make a special offer for you. This price is based on careful calculations. And it is the lowest price we can offer to you.

新报价吗?

B: 很乐意。每吨售价 600 美元。

A: 好贵啊!

B: 但你知道, 自去年开始这种商品的价格猛涨。

A: 我知道。但我还是不能接受这个价格。你难道不能给我打个折吗? 你看啊, 我们已经合作这么长时间了, 而且我们的合作都是互利的。

B: 好吧。我可以给您一个特殊优惠。这个价格是在精打细算的基础上得出来的。这是我们可以给您的最低价格了。

汇率差价

A: DM210 is equivalent to 400 RMB.

B: Don't you wish to employ RMB of ours? US Dollars might be adopted.

A: Are you afraid of losing money due to exchange rate fluctuations?

B: I will give you a definite answer on the price terms two days later.

A: 210 德国马克折合人民币 400 元。

B: 如果你们不同意用我们的人民币结算, 美元也可以。

A: 您是不是怕由于汇率浮动而吃亏?

B: 两天以后我会就价格条款答复你方。

讨价还价失败

A: Peter, I hope you will accept my quotation for the air freshener.

B: I wish I could place a monthly order for a minimum of 50 cases, introducing your goods to my customers, but your price, \$ 100 for a case, is too high in this highly competitive market.

A: I have cut the price the minimum. You know our freshener is a patent product, different from other kinds of fresheners. We could not have quoted it at such a

A: 彼得, 希望你能接受我们对空气清新剂的报价。

B: 我希望每月最低订购 50 箱, 并把你的货品介绍给我的客户。但现在商品竞争非常激烈, 你要的价格——每箱 100 美元实在太贵了。

A: 我已经把价格降到最低限度了。你知道我们的清新剂是专利产品, 和其他产品不同。如果不是因为你过去大量订货, 我们也不会给出那么低的价。事实上,

讨价还价 · Bargaining

low price if it were not for your past large orders. This price, actually, leaves us with a very small profit.

B: People here desire medium-priced air freshener only. Please carefully consider my proposal, which will lead to a larger business between us.

A: The low price I'm offering you is as low as I can go.

B: Then, I am sorry to say I must regretfully decline your offer and seek quotations for the other suppliers.

A: I'm sorry, Peter. I hope you'll continue to approach us on other occasions if you cannot accept our offer now.

B: Yes. I'll welcome other opportunities to do business with you.

这种价格,对我们来说,利润已经非常小了。

B: 当地消费者只需要中等价格的清新剂。请仔细考虑我的建议,它可带动我们之间更大的交易。

A: 这是我所能给你的最低价了。

B: 那么,我很抱歉,我只能向别的供应商寻求报价。

A: 彼得,我很抱歉。虽然你这次不能接受我们的价格,但仍希望以后有机会与你合作。

B: 好,希望我们下次有机会合作。



Unit
13

退货及索赔

Refunding and Claims

文化
链接

Culture Links

假如你想要退货,应当保留单据,证明你买的东西是在该商店买的。还有一件要记住的事,就是买收音机或照相机之类的东西,是有保修单的。

在美国买东西,特别是连锁店或大的商店,退货基本上不存在任何问题,即使你用过一两次,只要有合理的说明,都会 100% 退款,或者给你换货,当然,照相机之类的精细电器产品的退货,只要你开包装了,有的商店是以 15% 的折扣收回,而软件类产品,只要拆封了,几乎不给退货。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 退毛衣

A: I'd like a refund on this sweater.

B: May I have a look at your receipt?

A: Oh, here you are.

B: All right. Wait a minute.

A: 这件毛衣我想退款。

B: 我可以看一下收据吗?

A: 哦, 给你。

B: 好的。请稍等。

2. 拒绝退货

A: If this coat doesn't fit, may I bring it back later?

B: Sorry, We don't take returns on sale items.

A: 如果这件衣服不合身,之后我可以拿回来退货吗?

B: 对不起,我们不接受减价品的退货。

3. 退鞋

A: I would like to return this pair of shoes.

B: Do you have a sales slip?

A: Here it is.

B: Sorry, things on sale are not allowed to

A: 我想退了这双鞋。

B: 你有收据吗?

A: 给你。

B: 对不起,减价商品不退不换。

退货及索赔 · Refunding and Claims

be refunded or exchanged.

A: Oh, but this pair of shoes are a bit too tight. Could I change them for something bigger?

B: All right. Wait a minute.

A: 哦, 但是这双鞋有点小, 我能不能换一双大一点的?

B: 好的。请稍等。

4. 运输损坏交涉(1)

A: I'm sorry, but I don't think this damage is our fault.

B: What do you mean?

A: It looks like the shipping company did this.

B: We'd better take it up with them, in that case.

A: 抱歉, 不过我不认为这次的损坏是我们的错。

B: 你这话是什么意思?

A: 应该是货运公司造成的吧。

B: 如果是那样, 我们最好向他们提出来。

5. 运输损坏交涉(2)

A: Just whose fault is this damage?

B: The order was in good shape when it left out factory.

A: It certainly didn't arrive here that way.

B: We'll make it right with you, of course.

A: How about taking the damaged portion at a lower price?

B: What kind of price did you want?

A: I was thinking of 30% off.

B: That will probably be Ok.

A: 这次的损坏究竟是谁的责任呢?

B: 货出厂时都是完好无缺的啊。

A: 送到这儿时可不是那样!

B: 真相如何, 我们一定会让你知道。

A: 损坏的那一部分就算便宜一点, 如何?

B: 你想要多少呢?

A: 打个7折吧。

B: 应该可以吧。

6. 物品损坏

A: We're sorry, but we cannot allow your claim.

B: Why not?

A: The material was not damaged by us.

B: We'll have to talk this over some more.

A: 对不起, 我们无法接受你的赔偿要求。

B: 为什么?

A: 东西不是我们损坏的。

B: 这件事我们得再好好地谈一谈。

7. 赔偿事宜

A: What about our claim?

B: Our shipping manager is looking into it.

A: When will we hear something from him?

A: 我们的赔偿怎么样啦?

B: 我们的货运经理正在调查这件事。

A: 什么时候会有消息呢?

购物 · Shopping

B: Oh, in just a day or two, I think.

C: Here is the final settlement for your claim.

A: Thanks, we appreciate the fast work.

C: We only hope we won't have this kind of problem again.

A: That goes for us too.

B: 哦,我想就这一两天吧。

C: 你的赔偿问题终于解决了。

A: 谢谢你们这么快就办好了。

C: 我们只希望不会再有这样的事情发生。

A: 我们也是这么希望。

8. 退裤子

A: May I help you?

B: Yes, I would like to return these slacks.

A: Alright. Do you have your receipt?

B: Yes. Here it is. I bought them last week.

A: And why are you returning them?

B: I bought them to go with a blouse of mine. But they don't really match.

A: I see. Oh, wait. Ma'am, I'm sorry. These slacks were on sale.

B: Yes, they were thirty percent off.

A: I'm sorry, but we don't allow returns on sale items.

B: I know many stores have that policy. But I have returned sale items here before.

A: I'm sorry, but we usually don't do it. It is our policy.

B: I just bought these slacks a week ago. And I am a regular customer here. Can you make an exception this time?

A: Well. Let me talk to the manager for a moment. Madam, the manager says I can do it this time.

B: Good. I'm a regular customer here. I am glad you can make an exception for me.

A: Please show me your receipt again.

B: Here it is.

A: I will have to give you store credit, Mad-

A: 我能为你效劳吗?

B: 是的,我想退回这些长裤。

A: 好的,你有收据吗?

B: 有的,在这儿。上星期才买的。

A: 为什么要退呢?

B: 我本想买来配我一件衬衫的,但是它们配起来不好看。

A: 我明白了。等一等,太太,对不起,这些是折扣品。

B: 没错,它们是七折品。

A: 对不起,折扣品是不能退货的。

B: 我知道很多店都有这样的规定,但是我曾经在你们的店退过折扣品。

A: 对不起,我们通常不接受的,这是规定。

B: 我上个星期才买的,而且我是你们的常客。这次可以例外吗?

A: 嗯,那让我和经理说说看。太太,经理说这次可以。

B: 太好了,我是你们的常客,我很高兴你们可以为我破这个例。

A: 再让我看一看你的收据。

B: 这里。

A: 我会给你一些店铺信用券,太太。你可

退货及索赔 · Refunding and Claims

以用这些信用券来挑你喜欢的东西。

am. If you find something else you like in the store, you can use the credit.

B: Store credit is okay with me. I'm sure I will find something I like. I shop here a lot.

A: We appreciate your business, Madam.

B: 给我信用券也可以。我相信会找到我喜欢的东西,我常常来这里购物。

A: 谢谢惠顾,太太。

9. 取发票退货

A: Have you brought the receipt with you?

B: No, I don't. I left it home.

A: Sorry, but we can't do anything without the receipt. Come back with it.

B: I didn't know. I'll go to get it. How late will you be open?

A: Till 5:30.

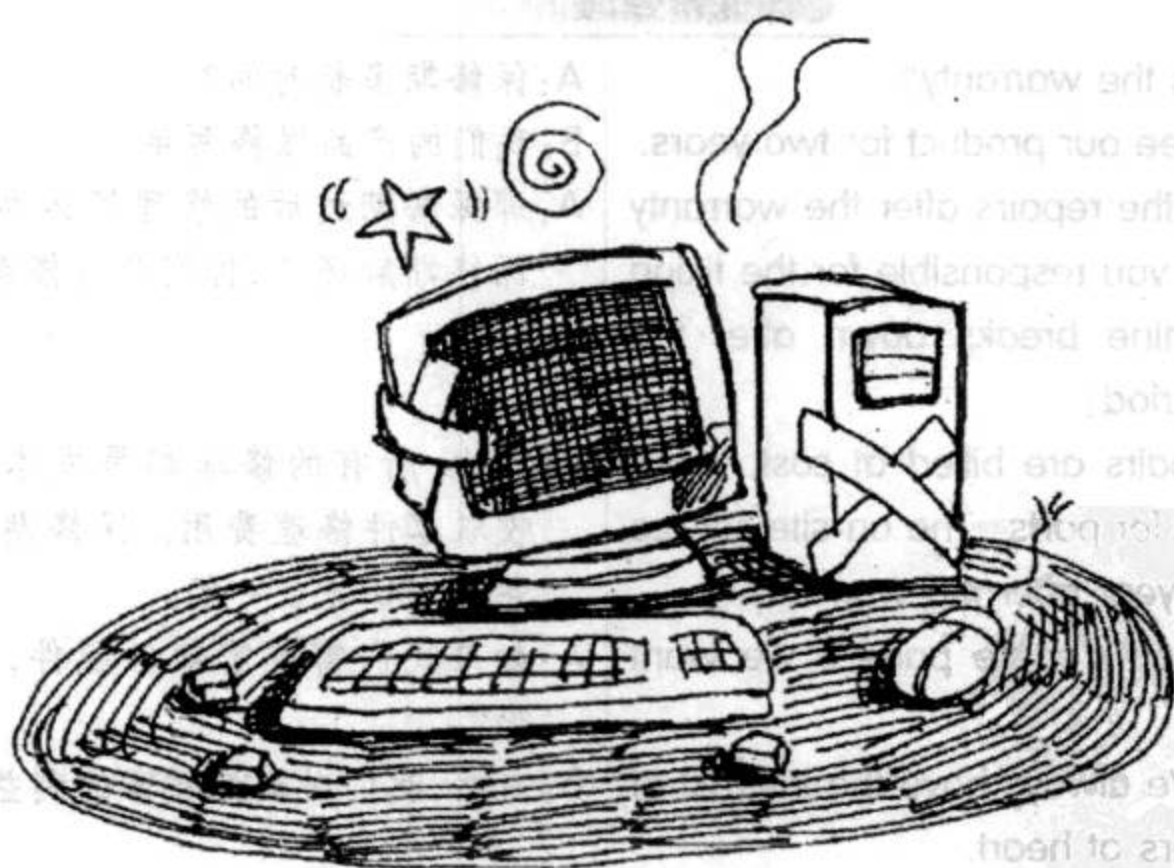
A: 你带发票了吗?

B: 没有,我放在家里了。

A: 对不起,没有收据我们就不能办理,请去取了发票再来吧。

B: 我事先不知道,我现在去拿,你们开门到几点?

A: 到 5:30。



Unit
14

售后服务及保修

After-sale Services and Guarantee

文化
链接

Culture Links

保修单就是书面契约,列明在一段特定时间内修理或保养产品的费用由公司支付。由于许多产品都有厂商的保证,因此你应当按照规定办理。通常是你必须把一张保修单寄给产品公司,注明物品是在什么时候买的。不这样做,保修单就不生效或者不产生约束力。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 保修咨询

A: How long is the warranty?

B: We guarantee our product for two years.

A: How about the repairs after the warranty expire? Are you responsible for the fixing if the machine breaks down after the warranty period?

B: Yes. All repairs are billed at cost. We'll only bill you for parts. The on-site service is \$ 300 a year after the warranty.

A: Will you supply spare parts if we want them?

B: Certainly. We always have the interest of the customers at heart.

A: 保修期多长时间?

B: 我们的产品保修两年。

A: 那保修期过后的修理怎么办呢? 机器在保修期后坏了,你们负责修理吗?

B: 是的,所有的修理都是成本价。我们只收取零件修理费用。保修期外的现场服务是 300 美金一年。

A: 如果我们需要零部件配件,你们能提供吗?

B: 当然,我们时刻把顾客的利益放在心上。

2. 物品维修

A: Excuse me.

B: Yes?

A: I bought this circulator here yesterday but

A: 打扰一下。

B: 有什么事吗?

A: 我昨天在这儿买了个计算器,可这是个

售后服务及保修 · After-sale Services and Guarantee

it doesn't work.

B: Oh, let's see what's wrong.

坏的。

B: 哦! 我来看看是哪儿坏了。

3. 换货

A: Did you check before you left the shop?

B: Yes, I did. But when I got home, my son put it on and we found the hole.

A: Really? Let me have a look at it. Mm.

OK. Let me change it for another one.

B: Thank you very much.

A: 离开本店前您检查过吗?

B: 查过的。可是我回家后, 我儿子试穿时发现了这个洞。

A: 真的? 让我看一下。恩, 好吧, 给您换一条。

B: 十分感谢。



Chapter 6

庆祝节日和特殊日子

Celebrating Festivals & Special Events



Unit
1

西方节日

Western Festivals

文化
链接

Culture Links

大多数国家的主要节日有:

新年 New Year Day 1 月 1 日

情人节 Valentine's Day 2 月 14 日

妇女节 Women's Day 3 月 8 日

愚人节 Fool's Day 4 月 1 日

劳动节 Labor Day 5 月 1 日

母亲节 Mother's Day 5 月的第 2 个星期日

儿童节 Children's Day 6 月 1 日

父亲节 Father's Day 6 月的第 3 个星期日

复活节 Easter 每年过了春分月圆后的第一个星期日

万圣节 Halloween 10 月 31 日

圣诞节 Christmas 12 月 25 日

此外,中国的春节 Spring Festival,穆斯林的开斋节 Lesser Barium,加拿大和美国的感恩节 Thanksgiving Day 等,都是拥有相当多人共同欢度的,非常隆重的节日。

关于英、美等西方国家的传统和法定节假日:

1. New Year's Day 元旦。在美国最有名的新年庆祝活动是“新年玫瑰花会”(New Year's Rose Parade),会后举行全美橄榄球决赛。

2. Easter 复活节。基督教教徒纪念耶稣基督复活之日。人们用复活节彩蛋(Easter egg)作为礼物。

3. Independence Day 美国独立日(每年 7 月 4 日)

4. Halloween 万圣节。每年 10 月 31 日晚上,家家门前都以南瓜灯 jack-o-lantern 为装饰,小孩子们则头戴鬼怪面具,在附近的邻居家门口沿街讨要糖果,并喊道:Trick or treat!(不给糖果就捣蛋),而他们捣蛋的方式是把鸡蛋液涂在不给他们糖果的人家的门把上。

5. Thanksgiving Day 感恩节。每年 11 月的第 4 个星期日,是丰收时感谢上帝之日。人们在那一天主要吃火鸡和南瓜饼(pumpkin pie)。

庆祝节日和特殊日子 · Celebrating Festivals & Special Events

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 圣诞问候

A: Merry Christmas!

B: The same to you!

A: Are you doing anything special?

B: We're having some friends over. What are you doing?

A: Oh, I'm just going to take it easy.

A: 圣诞快乐!

B: 也祝你快乐。

A: 你在做什么特别的事情吗?

B: 我正在宴请朋友。你在做什么?

A: 哦,我打算随便过一下就行了。

2. 圣诞祝福

A: Tom, Christmas Day is coming. Merry Christmas to you.

B: Thank you. And a merry Christmas to you!

A: 汤姆,圣诞节就要到了,祝你圣诞快乐!

B: 谢谢你。祝你圣诞快乐!

3. 新年问候

A: Happy New Year!

B: Thank you! The same to you.

A: Have you got any plans?

B: I've been invited over to a friend's. And you?

A: My roommate's having a party.

A: 新年快乐!

B: 谢谢,也祝你新年快乐!

A: 你有什么计划吗?

B: 一个朋友邀请我去他家做客。你呢?

A: 我去室友举办的派对。

4. 感恩节问候

A: Have a nice Thanksgiving!

B: The same to you!

A: Are you going anywhere?

B: I thought about going to my sister's. How about you?

A: Oh, I'll probably just stay at home.

A: 感恩节快乐!

B: 也祝你节日快乐。

A: 要去什么地方吗?

B: 我在考虑去我姐姐家。你呢?

A: 哦,我就打算呆在家里了。

5. 感恩节祝福(1)

A: Happy Thanksgiving!

B: You, too.

A: Let's have pumpkin pie.

A: 感恩节快乐!

B: 也祝你快乐!

A: 我们吃南瓜派吧。

B: It's my favorite.

B: 这是我最喜欢吃。

6. 情人节问候

A: Happy Valentine's Day!

A: 情人节快乐。

B: That's nice of you.

B: 你太好了。

A: Could I treat you to dinner tonight?

A: 我今晚可以请你吃饭吗?

B: Wonderful.

B: 真棒。

7. 愚人节轶事

A: Yesterday was April the first.

A: 昨天是4月1号。

B: Was it quite special?

B: 有什么特别之处吗?

A: Not for the others, but for me. I was in the library going over my lessons when suddenly one of my roommates came in. He told me that I was wanted on the phone in my dormitory, and that person would call me again several minutes later.

A: 对别人没有, 而对我就有。我正在图书馆复习功课, 突然我的一位室友进来告诉我说有人打电话到宿舍找我, 还说那人过几分钟会再打电话来。

B: Did you hurry back to the bedroom?

B: 你是不是赶紧回了宿舍?

A: Yes. I went back to the dorm only to find my roommates laughing and shouting "April Fool, April Fool".

A: 是啊。我一走进宿舍楼就发现我的室友们在笑, 还大声叫道“四月傻瓜, 四月傻瓜!”

B: Oh, your classmates took you in.

B: 哦, 你的同学把你给捉弄了吧。

A: Only then did I realize it was April Fools' Day.

A: 我这才明白原来是愚人节。



Unit
2

中国节日

Chinese Festivals

文化
链接

Culture Links

春节是中国的传统,也被认为是最重要的节日。哪里有华人,哪里肯定就有春节!这是中国人颇为自豪的一句话。事实上,近年来春节正走出世界各地华人的家门,具有了越来越多的公共属性,并开始向当地生活渗透。现在越来越多的外国人热衷于过春节,显现出中国传统文化深厚的底蕴和魅力。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 端午节习俗

A: We have another traditional holiday—the Dragon Boat Festival.

B: When is it?

A: It falls on the fifth day of the fifth lunar month.

B: Could you tell me the origin of the two festivals?

A: OK. The Dragon Boat Festival is a way to commemorate a great ancient poet named Qu Yuan. On that day, people will hold a boat race as a symbol of the attempt to save him who threw himself into the river.

B: Why do people eat rice cakes on that day?

A: In order to prevent the fish from eating the poet's body.

A: 我们还有一个传统的节日:端午节。

B: 它是在什么时候?

A: 是在农历五月初。

B: 你能告诉我它的来历吗?

A: 好。端午节是为了纪念一位古代的伟大诗人屈原。人们在那天要举行划龙舟比赛,象征他们在奋力救投江自尽的屈原。

B: 那为什么人们要在那天吃粽子?

A: 为了不让鱼吃掉诗人的身体。

B: It sounds so moving.

B: 听起来很感人。

2. 中秋节传说

A: Could you tell me something about the Mid-Autumn Festival? I find it also very interesting.

A: 你能给我讲讲关于中秋节的事吗? 我觉得它也很有趣。

B: OK. It falls on the 15th day of the eighth lunar month. It is said that there is a beautiful goddess Chang' E on the moon who had eaten some sort of elixir and had to depart her husband. She is always expecting to see her husband again. So, later we have the traditional idea that when there is the full moon, it is time for the family members to come together.

B: 好的。中秋节是农历的八月十五。据说有一位美丽的仙女名叫嫦娥, 因为偷吃了长生不老药而不得不与她的丈夫分离, 到了月球。她一直都在盼望能与丈夫重聚。所以后来我们就有了传统的概念: 当出现满月时, 就该是家人团聚的时候了。

A: So, I understand why people eat moon cakes on that day.

A: 那我知道了, 这就是人们在那天要吃月饼的原因。

B: You are right. In China, "round" is an auspicious word. The moon cakes are in round shape.

B: 你说得对。在中国, “圆”是个很吉利的字, 所以月饼都是圆形的。

A: Is it official?

A: 这个节日是不是法定假日?

B: It was not in the past. But from 2008, we can enjoy a three-day holiday for this festival.

B: 原来不是。但是从 2008 年起, 中秋节时人们可以享受三天的假期。

3. 春节习俗

A: The Spring Festival is drawing close. By then we will have five days off. I am expecting it.

A: 春节就要到了。到时我们会放五天假。我盼着这一天的到来。

B: Can you tell me something about the Spring Festival?

B: 你能给我讲讲春节好吗?

A: Just like you celebrate Christmas, we celebrate our lunar New Year's Day, the Spring Festival. It is a time for the family members and relatives to have a get-together.

A: 就像你们过圣诞节一样, 我们庆祝我们的农历新年——春节。这是家人和亲友团聚的时刻。

庆祝节日和特殊日子 · Celebrating Festivals & Special Events

B: Christmas is also a special time for us to have the family reunion and to express our best wishes to those we love and those who love us in the coming new year.

A: Christmas has more religious nature, while our Spring Festival is a more traditional holiday. On the New Year's Eve, we have a big dinner called "Family Reunion Dinner". One of the traditional food to eat at the dinner is dumplings. After that, the adults usually sit chatting, watching TV, or playing cards.

B: What are the children doing?

A: They usually go outside to play firecrackers and fireworks.

B: I heard one of the purposes to do it is to frighten the devils so they will not come to do any harm to people in the next year.

A: Perhaps it is like what people told you. At 24 hours midnight, the time when the New Year really comes, we exchange "Happy New Year" to each other, and parents and grandparents will take out small packages wrapped with red paper, in them are some what we call "Lucky Money".

B: Who will get the money?

A: Of course the children.

B: 圣诞节也是家人和亲友团聚、并向我们爱的人和爱的人表达我们对他们来年美好祝愿的一个节日。

A: 圣诞节更具宗教色彩, 而我们的春节则是个更为传统的节日, 除夕之夜, 我们会吃一顿大餐, 叫做“年夜饭”, 有一样传统食物就是“饺子”, 吃过饭后, 大人们通常会坐下来聊天, 看电视或打牌。

B: 那孩子们做些什么呢?

A: 他们一般会出去放烟花和爆竹。

B: 我听说放爆竹的目的是为了吓走恶魔, 这样它们就不会在来年危害大家。

A: 或许正如人们所告诉你的那样吧。到了午夜零点时, 新年就算真正到来了。我们互道“新年好”, 父母和祖父母们要拿出红纸包来, 里面包的是钱, 我们把它叫做“压岁钱”。

B: 谁能拿到这个钱呢?

A: 当然是孩子们。

4. 新年习俗

A: How do you like this dress?

B: It's nice. But what kind of dress are you looking for?

A: Something attractive and dressy. Maybe

A: 你看这衣服怎么样?

B: 挺好。可是你想买什么样的裙子?

A: 一件显眼时髦, 或许稍带点性感的裙子。

中国节日 · Chinese Festivals

a little sexy too. New Year's Eve is a special occasion and it only happens once a year, right?

B: Of course. It's common too that we wear something special for our Chinese New Year.

A: People here always wear the best clothes they have. Many people go out and buy clothes especially for New Year's Eve.

B: Any other common customs of your New Year?

A: Before the New Year, we always send greeting cards to our relatives and friends to wish them a happy year. On the street and in stores people usually greet others with a "Happy New Year". It's also common for people to make a New Year's resolution.

B: What's that?

A: It's when people quit a bad habit or do something they find hard to do. Many people resolve to quit smoking, lose weight, or stop nagging their wife, etc. However, it usually lasts only for a few days!

B: By the way, where are you going on New Year's Eve?

A: We're going to a night club for dinner and dancing, then we'll go down to the city square for the big celebration. There's always a fireworks display put on by the local government. We all want you to come too.

B: Thanks a lot.

除夕是个不寻常的日子,一年只有一次,是不是?

B: 当然啦。我们过新年时也都穿平日里不穿的好衣服。

A: 人们总是穿着最好的衣服。许多人专门为除夕夜而上街选购衣物。

B: 你们新年还有别的习俗吗?

A: 节前我们给亲戚朋友寄送贺卡祝他们新年愉快。人们在街上或商店里相遇时互道“新年快乐”。人们还常定下新年的决心。

B: 那又是什么意思呢?

A: 就是从新年开始戒掉恶习,或做件他们认为很难完成的事情。许多人决心戒烟、减肥或不再同妻子吵嘴等等,不过这些一般只能坚持几天。

B: 顺便问一下,你们除夕夜都到哪儿去?

A: 我们去夜总会吃饭、跳舞,然后到市中心广场参加大型庆祝会。地方政府每年都组织放焰火礼花。我们想让你也参加。

B: 谢谢。

Unit
3

作客

Being a Guest

文化
链接

Culture Links

宴请方式可分为：正式宴会、家庭便宴和招待会三种。

1) 正式宴会：一定要如约成行，如有特殊原因不能赴约，必须提前相告。正规着装，适时到达（切勿迟到，也不必太早到）。

2) 家庭便宴：稍许早到一点，带上一瓶酒是很得体的。宴毕，一定要对主人的厨艺多加夸奖，对其家饰最好也给予称赞。

3) 招待会：为只备一些普通食品、饮料而不备正餐、不排座次的一种宴请方式。如自助餐、茶会、鸡尾酒会、工作餐等。这种方式比较轻松自由，坚持“客随主便”的原则即可。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 到同事家作客

A: Good evening, Martin.

B: Hello, How good to see you. Did you have any trouble finding our place?

A: Not at all. Your instructions were very clear. Where is Mrs. Martin?

B: She is in the kitchen. Kate! Mrs. Gao is here!

C: Mrs. Gao! I am so glad you could come. My husband has told me so much about you.

A: These are for you.

C: Oh, what lovely flowers! You are very kind. Thank you so much. I will go and put them in some water right away.

A: 马丁，晚上好。

B: 你好。见到你真高兴。我们这地方难找吧？

A: 一点也不。你把地址说得很清楚。您夫人在哪里？

B: 她在厨房里。凯特，高女士来了。

C: 高女士，你光临寒舍，我感到很高兴。我丈夫已经对我说了很多关于你的情况。

A: 这是送给你的。

C: 哦，这么漂亮的花呀！你太客气了，非常感谢。我马上就去把它们插在水里。

作客 · Being a Guest

A: And here is a bottle of Chinese Mao-tai.

B: That is thoughtful of you. I have heard that it packs quite punch.

C: Mrs. Gao, would you like to start now?

A: 这瓶中国茅台酒是送给你的。

B: 你想得太周到了。听说这是一种度数很高的烈酒。

C: 高女士, 你现在开始吃吧?

2. 到朋友家做客

A: Good afternoon, Kate. Come in.

B: Good afternoon, Mary.

A: Welcome to my home. Mom, this is my good friend, Kate. Kate, this is my mom.

C: I'm pleased to meet you, Kate.

B: Glad to meet you.

C: Sit down, please. Would you like to have a cup of tea or coffee?

B: Coffee, please.

C: Here is coffee, cakes and some fruit. Help yourself, please.

B: Thank you very much.

A: This is a picture of my family, Kate. This is my mother, my father and that is my grandpa and grandma.

B: What a nice family!

A: 下午好, 凯特。快请进。

B: 下午好, 玛丽。

A: 欢迎来我家做客, 妈妈, 这是我的好朋友凯特。凯特, 这是我妈妈。

C: 很高兴见到你, 凯特。

B: 很高兴见到你。

C: 请坐。喝茶还是咖啡?

B: 咖啡, 谢谢。

C: 这是咖啡、点心还有水果。请慢用。

B: 非常谢谢您。

A: 凯特, 这是我们的全家福。这是我母亲, 我父亲, 那是我爷爷奶奶。

B: 多好的一个家庭呀!

3. 拜访朋友

A: Good afternoon, Mrs. Brown. I've come to see Mr. Brown.

B: Good afternoon, Mr. Green.

A: Is he in?

B: I'm sorry, but he's not in, he's gone out on business.

A: Oh! I just drop in on him for a chat.

B: Please come in for a cup of coffee.

A: No, thank you. Please tell him to phone me when he comes back.

A: 下午好, 布朗太太。我来看看布朗先生。

B: 下午好, 格林先生。

A: 他在家吗?

B: 很抱歉, 他不在家, 他出差了。

A: 哦, 我只是路过来找他聊聊天。

B: 请进来喝杯咖啡吧。

A: 不了, 谢谢。他回来请让他给我打个电话。

道别

Parting

文化链接

Culture Links

大家都知道 good morning (good day, good afternoon) 常用于打招呼,但 good night 只有用在晚上大家要道别之时。美国人一般把晚上6点到10点称 evening 而不叫 night,这一点与中国人的习惯不同。如果晚上见到人,说 good evening 是打招呼的话,如果说 good night 那就是“再见”的意思了。

正式社交活动结束,临走时(或道别),可用“See you! Glad to have met you!”或“Nice talking to you!”。道别时也可用“Take it Easy!”或“Take your time!”意思是“慢走,慢走!”、“不要急!慢慢地走!”。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



面对道别

A: I think it's about time that we had to go.
B: What? Won't you have more drinks?
A: I'd love to, but I have to get up early tomorrow and get to the office on time.
B: Oh! I'm sorry, but I wish you could stay.
A: Thank you for a very enjoyable evening and your hospitality.
B: Don't mention it. You can come whenever you are free.

A: 我想到时间了,我们得走了。
B: 什么? 你不能再多喝点?
A: 我很想,但是明天还得早起,按时到办公室。
B: 哦,对不起,但是我希望你能留在这儿。
A: 非常感谢你的热情招待,让我度过了一个愉快的晚上,
B: 不客气。什么时候有空再来。

告别道别

A: I'd better be going now.
B: So soon? Why don't you stay a little longer?
A: I wish I could, but it's already late.

A: 我最好现在走了。
B: 这么快? 怎么不多待一会儿?
A: 我也希望能多待会儿,但是已经很晚了。

B: Oh, it's a shame that you have to leave.

A: Thank you for a wonderful meal. I really had a good time.

B: I'm glad you enjoyed it. Welcome to come again.

B: 哦,真遗憾你得走了。

A: 非常感谢这顿丰盛的晚饭。我过得很开心。

B: 很高兴你喜欢。欢迎再来。

3. 聚会道别 (1)

A: I'm glad to have met you.

B: Thank you. It was nice to have seen you.

A: I hope we can get together again.

B: Yes. I'll be looking forward to it.

A: 很高兴见到了你。

B: 谢谢。见到你也很高兴。

A: 希望我们能再相聚。

B: 我也非常希望。

4. 聚会道别 (2)

A: I guess I'd better go now.

B: I've got to be going now too.

A: In that case, I'll be seeing you.

B: See you later.

A: 我想我最好现在走。

B: 我也该走了。

A: 那么,再见啦。

B: 再见。

5. 聚会道别 (3)

A: It's getting late, and I have to go now.

B: We're sorry you have to leave.

A: Please excuse me, won't you?

B: Certainly. Come back soon.

A: 太晚了,我得走了。

B: 真遗憾你得走了。

A: 你能原谅我,是吗?

B: 当然。早点回来。



赠送礼物

Presenting a Present

文化
链接

Culture Links

按西方习惯,收礼时应当面打开包装,不管礼品的价格如何,都应赞赏礼品并致谢,如:It's lovely. (真漂亮。) I like it. (我喜欢它。) Thank you for your present. (谢谢你的礼物。)按我国的习惯,则不应该当客人面打开包装。一或因礼轻使主人尴尬,二或表现出主人的喜厌。喜庆日子的赠礼,一般都应展开,供众人观赏,增加喜庆气氛。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



赠送围巾

A: Mr. Wilson, here's a present for you.

B: Oh, you are so nice. What a lovely scarf.

A: I hope you will like it.

B: Of course, I like it very much. Thank you.

A: 威尔逊先生,这是我送您的礼物。

B: 哦,真是太感谢了。多漂亮的一条围巾啊。

A: 希望您会喜欢它。

B: 我当然很喜欢,谢谢。

赠送书籍

A: Merry Christmas, Mr. Wang. I would like to give you the book I specially chose as my appreciation for your sincere help to me in the past few days.

B: Thanks, Mr. White. That's very kind of you.

A: I hope it will be of some use to you.

B: I am sure it will. It'll be of great help in carrying on the work I have done so far.

A: That will be great.

A: 王先生,圣诞快乐。我想要把这本我精心挑选的书送给您,以感谢在过去的岁月中您对我真挚的帮助。

B: 谢谢您,怀特先生。您真是太好了。

A: 但愿这本书对您有些用。

B: 肯定会有用,它对继续我目前为止所进行的工作会有很大帮助。

A: 那真是太好了。

3. 赠送瓷瓶

A: Happy birthday, Ms. Lin. Here is a present for you.

B: Oh, thank you! It's very kind of you. Ah, it is a porcelain vase.

A: I hope you like it.

B: Yes, it is lovely. I have been expecting something like this for a long time. Thanks ever so much.

A: I am glad you like it.

A: 生日快乐, 林小姐。这是我送给您的礼物。

B: 哦, 谢谢! 您太好了。啊, 这是一个瓷瓶。

A: 我希望您喜欢。

B: 是的, 它很漂亮, 我一直希望拥有像这样的东西。太感谢您了。

A: 我很高兴您喜欢它。

4. 惊喜礼物

A: Hey! I have a surprise for you.

B: What is it?

A: Open this card and read.

B: A trip to China for summer vacation. Wow! What a wonderful surprise! Thank you. This is the best surprise I've ever had.

A: 嗨, 我有一个惊喜给你!

B: 什么?

A: 打开这个卡片看看。

B: 夏天去中国度假。哇, 好大的惊喜! 谢谢。这是我得到过的最大的惊喜。



Unit
6

参加生日派对

Attending a Birthday Party

文化
链接

Culture Links

在西方,如同在中国一样,生日是一个喜庆日子,也是用送礼来表示友好的好时机。按照西方礼节,如果一个人过了20岁,当你向他祝贺生日时,就不要问他的岁数,因为那是不礼貌的。如果你应邀参加生日宴会,带或不带礼物都是可以的。见到本人时,一定要热诚地向他祝贺,临别时再祝贺一次。祝贺时可以说:“祝您长寿!”也可以说:“恭喜,恭喜!”

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 生日赠礼(1)

A: Happy birthday, Alice, here is a little something for you.

B: Thank you very much, David. It's an excellent birthday gift.

A: 爱丽丝,生日快乐,这是给你的一点小礼物。

B: 非常谢谢你,大卫。这件生日礼物真棒!

2. 生日赠礼(2)

A: I'm here to express my congratulations to you on your birthday. And I wish you many happy returns of the day. Here is a birthday present for you.

B: Many thanks for your presence.

A: 我特地来祝贺你的生日,祝你年年有今日,岁岁有今朝。这是给你的生日礼物。

B: 非常感谢你的来贺。

3. 生日祝福

A: Thanks for inviting me. And happy birthday, Julia.

B: Many thanks for your present. I'm so glad you are able to come.

A: 朱莉亚,谢谢你邀请我,生日快乐。

B: 非常谢谢你的礼物。我很高兴你能来。

4. 举行生日派对

A: Oh, Mary, come in, please. I'm so happy to see you.

B: Happy birthday, George. Many happy returns of the day. Here's a present for you.

A: Oh, thank you, Mary. You're so nice.

B: I hope you like it. Oh, have the other guys arrived?

A: They're all waiting for you. Let's join them. I'm going to cut the cake soon.

B: Let's go.

A: 哦, 玛丽, 请进。很高兴见到你。

B: 生日快乐, 乔治, 祝你长命百岁! 这是给你的礼物。

A: 哦, 谢谢你, 玛丽, 你真好!

B: 希望你喜欢。哦, 其他人都来了吗?

A: 他们都在等你呢。我们一起去吧, 我就要切蛋糕了。

B: 咱们走吧。



Unit

7

参加婚礼宴会

Attending a Wedding Party

文化链接

Culture Links

举行婚礼时应该穿最好的衣服。在隆重的婚礼上新娘通常穿白色的服装,披白纱,手拿一束白色的花。但女人第二次结婚时,绝不穿白色礼服,因为白色是童贞女子的标志。新郎通常穿黑色礼服。

在参加婚礼时应该注意,向新婚夫妇祝贺时,同样是表达“恭喜新婚”的意思,对男的要说 congratulations, 对女的则要说 best wishes。这是英美人长期沿用的习惯。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



询问婚礼时间

A: When will the ceremony begin?

B: The ceremony will begin at 9 o'clock. After the ceremony, there's a reception. By the way, do you know why they have chosen September 9th for their wedding ceremony?

A: No idea.

B: As in English, Chinese also has some lucky numbers. The number 9 stands for perpetuity in Chinese.

A: 仪式几点开始?

B: 9 点开始, 仪式过后将有一个宴会。对了, 知道他们为什么选 9 月 9 日这天结婚吗?

A: 不知道。

B: 和英语一样, 汉语也有一些幸运数字。在汉语里, 9 代表永恒长久。

参加婚礼

A: It's very thoughtful of you to invite me to your wedding.

B: How can I forget my old friend?

A: My best wishes to you and the bride!

B: Thank you very much.

A: 承蒙邀请参加你的婚礼。

B: 我怎么会把老朋友忘掉呢?

A: 祝福你和新娘幸福!

B: 十分感谢。

3. 婚礼习俗

A: Are the ceremony and reception held in the same place?

B: No, not usually. Most people are married in a church, and then the wedding party and guests go to another place for the reception. Sometimes, however, they hold the reception in a big room in the church.

A: Where do they go?

B: Either they go to a public place such as a hotel, a restaurant, or a club, or to the home of the bride.

A: They go to the home of the bride?

B: Why do you ask?

A: The Chinese custom is to go to the groom's home—just the opposite.

B: Oh! In our country the bride's family is responsible for the entire wedding—arrangement, costs, etc. So the reception is held at her home.

A: That's very expensive for the family of the bride.

B: Many American fathers joke that they would rather hold the ladder for their daughter to climb down and elope than pay for a wedding.

A: Tell me something about the bridal bouquet. Isn't it the custom to throw it?

B: Yes. When the bride and groom are ready to leave on their honeymoon all the single girls gather in one place. The bride stands with her back to them and throws her bouquet over her shoulder and they each try to catch it. The one who does will be the next one married.

A: Maybe I'll be the one.

A: 婚礼和婚宴在同一地点举行吗?

B: 不一定,通常不在同一个地方。大多数人都都在教堂举行仪式,然后再到别处举办婚宴,但有时也在教堂的大房间里举办婚宴。

A: 他们都去哪儿呢?

B: 他们选一个公共场所,像饭店、餐厅或俱乐部,要么就去新娘家。

A: 他们去新娘家?

B: 为什么这样问呢?

A: 中国人的习惯刚好相反,是在新郎家宴客。

B: 哦! 在美国婚礼的安排、费用等全部由新娘的家负责。所以,请客也在新娘家。

A: 这对女方家是一项很大的负担嘛。

B: 在美国,许多做父亲的常开玩笑说,他们宁愿替女儿扶住梯子,让她从楼上爬下来和情郎私奔,以免为她举办婚礼。

A: 听说有个风俗——新娘要把花束抛给别人。是不是这样?

B: 是的。当新婚夫妇准备出去度蜜月时,所有的单身女孩子站在一起,新娘背对着她们,从肩上向后面抛花束。每个女孩子都想得到花束,因为得到花束的人将下一个结婚。

A: 也许我是那一个呢。

Unit

8

同事聚会

Work-related Party

文化
链接

Culture Links

除了由公司主办的晚会之外,公司职员们也会自发组织一些晚会,但是这种晚会一般是在办公室里举行的。大多数情况下是由各个部门集中交钱,准备食物,开一个简洁高雅的圣诞兼新年晚会(A Christmas “slash” New Year’s Eve Party)。只有这一天公司的职员们才会脱去死板的正装,穿上随意的晚会服装。在晚会上还会有神秘的圣诞老人登场,他将出其不意地送给某位同事礼物。因为圣诞节当天需要与家人一起度过,所以一般是在圣诞节之前一周的周五举行这个晚会。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 招待外宾

A: Will you sit down, Mr. White?

B: Thank you. It's very kind of you to invite me to such a beautiful place.

A: I propose a toast to your pleasant tour in China.

B: Thank you very much.

A: This food is a Wuxi specialty. Please help yourself.

B: Thank you. Oh, it tastes nice.

A: 请坐下吧,怀特先生。

B: 谢谢。您在这么美的地方招待我真是太好了。

A: 我提议为您在中国愉快的旅行干一杯。

B: 非常感谢。

A: 这种食品是无锡特产,请随便用。

B: 谢谢您。哦,味道真不错。

2. 邀请同事共饮

A: Do you have anything to do after this?

B: No, I don't.

A: Shall we drop in somewhere for a couple of drinks?

B: That sounds like a good idea.

A: I know a very interesting place.

A: 在这之后,你还有什么要做的吗?

B: 不,没有了。

A: 我们要不要顺便找个地方喝几杯?

B: 这主意听起来不错。

A: 我知道一个很有趣的地方。

B: Oh, do you? Good.

B: 哦, 是吗? 太好了!

3. 参加公司聚会

A: Hi, Seivy, you look superb this evening. Are you enjoying yourself?

A: 嗨, 塞维, 你今晚看起来不错, 玩得开心吗?

B: Oh, it's you, Sandy. I'm looking for you. Yes, I'm having a marvelous time. Are the firm's parties always as much fun as this?

B: 哦, 山迪, 是你啊, 我正找你呢。我今晚太开心了。公司的聚会都这么有意思吗?

A: Too much so, sometimes. It's a good chance when we all get together and make ourselves relax.

A: 有时候更好玩。这是大家聚在一起放松一下的好机会。

B: Really.

B: 真的。

A: Ah, Seivy, I'd like you to meet John from accounts. John, this is Seivy. She's just joined the firm, and she is working in the same office with me.

A: 啊, 塞维, 给你介绍一下吧, 这是财务部的约翰。约翰, 这是塞维, 她刚到我们公司, 跟我一个办公室。

C: Hi, Seivy, nice to meet you.

C: 很高兴认识你, 赛维。

B: Nice to meet you, too.

B: 我也很高兴认识你。

聚会祝酒

A: Now everybody, please be seated. First of all, I'd ask you to raise your glass and join me in a toast to the health of all our friends here as well as our everlasting friendship. Cheers!

A: 现在, 大家请坐。首先, 我想请你们和我一起举杯祝酒, 祝朋友们健康, 祝我们的友谊长存, 干杯!

B: Mr. Tom, let me top up your glass.

B: 汤姆先生, 我来给你满酒。

A: Thank you. Gentleman, dig in. Don't stand on ceremony. Help yourself to anything you like. The food is very good. Please eat more.

A: 谢谢你。先生们, 开始吃吧, 不要拘泥于礼节, 喜欢什么就吃什么, 饭菜味道不错, 多吃点。

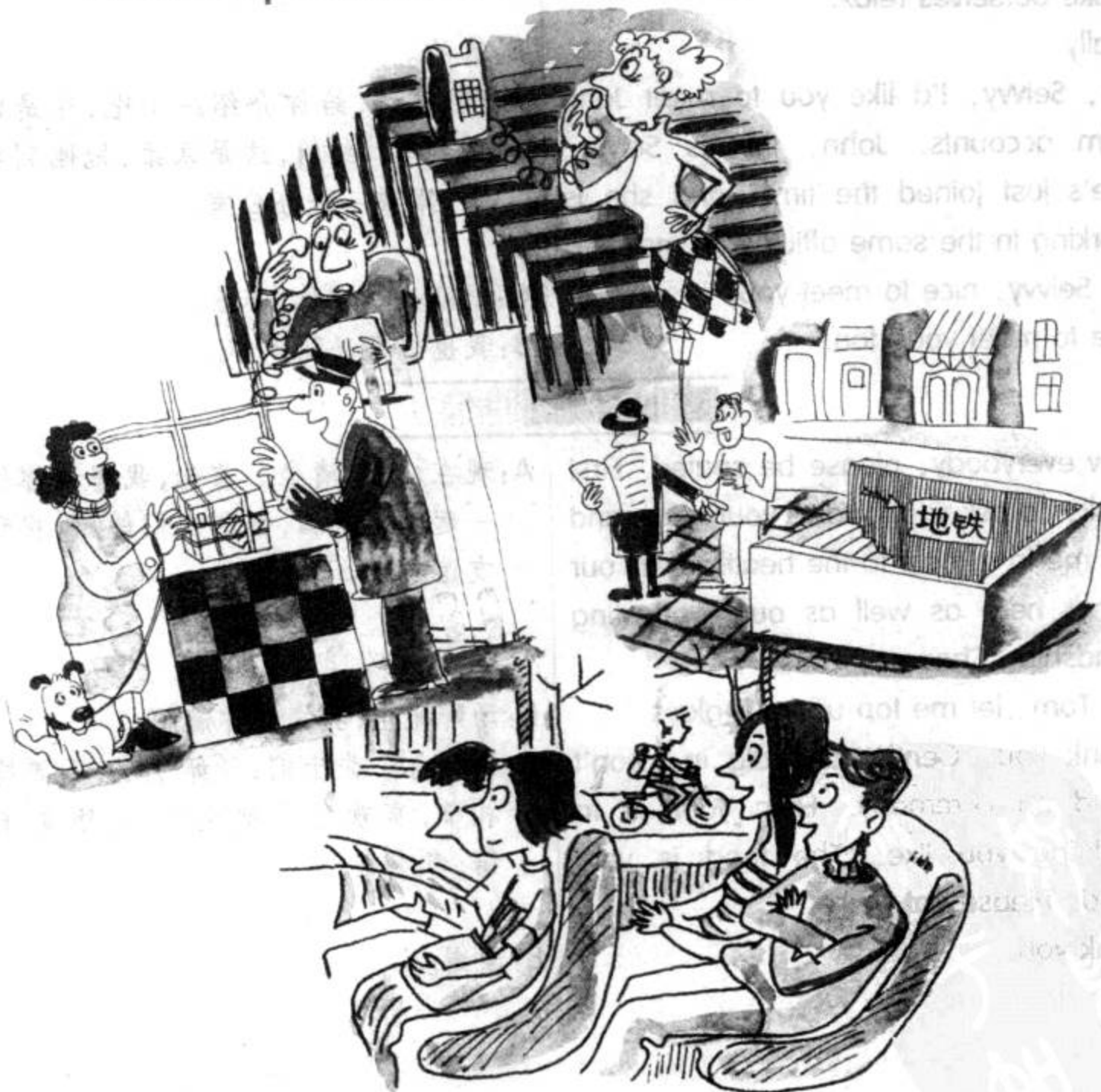
B: Thank you.

B: 谢谢。

Chapter 7

通讯及交通

Correspondence & Transportation



Unit
1

写信

Writing to Somebody

文化
链接

Culture Links

写信的称呼要有分寸,对不太熟悉的男人称为 Dear sir 或者 My dear sir, 后者更为正式;有时候也称 Sir 或者 Gentleman. 对于已婚或者未婚的女人,用 Madam 或者 My dear Madam. 现在流行用 Ms 称呼所有女性。

对于相识的男女,用 Dear Mr. (姓), Dear Miss (姓), Dear Mrs. (丈夫的姓), Dear Dr. 等等。

对于很熟悉的亲友,则可以用 Dear friend, Dear (名) 来称呼。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 度假寄信

A: I am going away for one-week vacation.

B: I envy you.

A: No phones, no alarm clocks, no work.

B: Sounds like paradise. What are you going to do there?

A: Sleep, eat, sleep, just rest.

B: Well, drop me a line when you get there before you start sleeping.

A: 我要离开休一个星期的假。

B: 我真羡慕你。

A: 没电话声,没闹钟声,不必工作。

B: 像到了天堂似的。你到那里做些什么呢?

A: 睡觉,吃东西,再睡觉,反正休息就是了。

B: 那么,当你到了那里,睡觉之前,给我写封信吧。

2. 寄明信片

A: Drop me a line when you get to London.

B: What do you mean?

A: You know. Send me a postcard.

B: Oh, you mean writing to you.

A: Yes.

A: 你到了伦敦,给我写信啊。

B: 你是说?

A: 如你所知,就是寄张明信片给我。

B: 哦,你的意思是给你写信。

A: 是啊。

通讯及交通 · Correspondence & Transportation

3. 忘记写信

A: Why are you so upset?

B: Well, really! You'd think writing was difficult!

A: What are you talking about?

B: My son. He's been gone for two weeks and I haven't heard a word from him.

A: He's probably busy having a good time.

B: He could at least drop me a line to let me know he is fine.

A: 你怎么这么不高兴?

B: 哎, 真是的! 写一封信好像很困难似的。

A: 你在说什么呀?

B: 我儿子, 已经走两个星期了, 到现在还没他的消息。

A: 他可能玩得正痛快呢。

B: 至少他应写封短信, 让我知道他平安吧!

4. 异地写信(1)

A: I hear you are moving to Dalian.

B: Yes, I found a very good job down here.

A: Well, we'll certainly miss you here.

B: I am going to miss you, too.

A: Let's keep in touch.

B: OK. I will write to you as soon as I get there.

A: 我听说你搬到大连去了。

B: 对。我在那儿找到了一份很好的工作。

A: 嗯, 我们一定会想念你的。

B: 我也会想念你们的。

A: 那咱们保持联系啊。

B: 好的。我一到那里就给你们写信。

5. 异地写信(2)

A: I just got a letter from an old high school buddy.

B: Really? That's nice.

A: He usually keeps me posted.

B: I've been completely out of touch with my old friends.

A: It's hard to keep up contact when people move around so much.

B: Yes, people just seem to drift apart.

A: 我刚收到高中老朋友的一封信。

B: 真的? 那太好了。

A: 他常给我写信。

B: 我和我的老朋友已经完全失去联系了。

A: 大家经常搬家, 保持联系很难。

B: 是的, 大家似乎疏远了。

6. 与家人通信

A: How long have you been living in New York?

B: Oh, about two years now.

A: Where do your parents live?

B: They still live in Shanghai where I was

A: 你在纽约住多久了?

B: 哦, 到现在差不多两年了。

A: 你父母住在哪儿?

B: 他们仍住在上海, 我出生的地方。

born.

A: Do you write or call them very much?

B: Yes, I try to keep in touch with them.

A: 你常给他们写信或打电话吗?

B: 是的, 我尽量和他们保持联系。

At the Post Office



Unit
2

在邮局

At the Post Office

文
化
链
接

Culture Links

美国的每一个邮寄地址都有一个邮政编码,如果要寄东西,一定要提供这个编码。邮局的营业时间通常为周一到周五上午八点半到下午五点半,周六营业到中午。

在美国,邮局只是一个小邮局,在排队的地方就有一溜长条的木板,是给寄包裹的人放包裹用的,这样就不用一直捧着包裹等,说白了,这是美国邮局怕您累了,人性化的体现。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 邮寄包裹至加拿大

A: Can you help me, please?

B: Sure, if I can.

A: I want to send this small parcel to Canada.

B: By airmail or seamail?

A: How different are these rates?

B: Your parcel weights 420 grams. So it is 21.3 dollars by air, or 6.9 dollars by sea.

A: How long it will take by sea?

B: About a month.

A: Then, by sea, please.

B: Please fill out this form, and then take your parcel to the counter on my left-hand side.

A: All right. Thank you very much.

A: 可以帮我个忙么?

B: 当然。

A: 我想把这个小包裹寄到加拿大。

B: 空邮还是海邮?

A: 邮资有多大差别?

B: 你的包裹重 420 克。若是空邮要 21.3 美元,若是海邮,要 6.9 美元。

A: 海邮多久到?

B: 大概一个月吧。

A: 那就寄海邮吧。

B: 请填好这张单子,然后把包裹拿到我左边的柜台上。

A: 好的,非常感谢。

B: Not at all.

B: 不客气。

2. 邮寄航空信

A: How much is an airmail letter to Japan?

A: 请问寄到日本的航空信多少钱?

B: I'll have to check. Can I help you with anything else?

B: 我得查一下。还有其他什么我可以帮忙的么?

A: I'd like a 20-cent stamp, please.

A: 我想买张 20 分的邮票。

B: Here you are.

B: 好的, 给您。

3. 邮寄包裹至英国

A: How much would it cost to send this special delivery to England?

A: 请问把这个特殊包裹寄到英国需要多少钱?

B: Just a second. I'll have to check that. Anything else I can do for you?

B: 稍等, 我得查一下。请问还有什么我可以帮忙的么?

A: Yes. I'd like to send a \$20 money order.

A: 有, 我还需要寄一张 20 美元的汇款单。

B: There you go.

B: 好的, 请来这边办理。

4. 邮寄明信片 and 包裹

A: I need stamps to send eight post cards. How much are they?

A: 我想寄八张明信片, 要买多少钱的邮票?

B: Eight cents each. Anything else?

B: 每张 8 美分。还有什么我可以帮您的吗?

A: I also need ten fifteen-cent stamps. ... I want to send this package. Which window should I go to?

A: 我还想买十张 15 美分的邮票。我想寄这个包裹, 该去哪个窗口寄呢?

B: Go to the window marked "Parcel Post."

B: 去标着“包裹邮寄”的窗口。

A: Thanks. ... (At parcel post window) I want to send this package parcel post, registered.

A: 谢谢。(在“包裹邮寄”窗口前) 我想寄这个包裹, 用挂号的。

B: What does it contain?

B: 请问里面装的是什么?

A: There are books and manuscripts.

A: 书和稿子。

B: Do you want it insured?

B: 需要办理保价业务么?

A: Yes, please, for thirty dollars.

A: 需要, 保价 30 美元。

B: That will be forty cents. Here are your stamps.

B: 那么保价费是 40 美分。这是您的邮票。

通讯及交通 · Correspondence & Transportation

A: Thanks. (Lisa sticks the stamps on the package and gives it to the clerk.) I also need to buy some aerograms. Which window is that?

B: Go to window 7. (Lisa walks away.)
Wait a second, miss!

A: Yes?

B: You forgot to put the return address on the package.

A: Oh, sorry. I'll put it on right now.

B: Now, here is your receipt.

A: Thanks. Is everything done?

B: Yes, miss. You may go to window 7 now.

A: 谢谢。(丽莎把邮票贴在包裹上, 然后把它交给职员。) 我想买一些航空邮票。请问在哪一个窗口?

B: 到七号窗口。(丽莎走了过去。) 等等, 小姐。

A: 什么事?

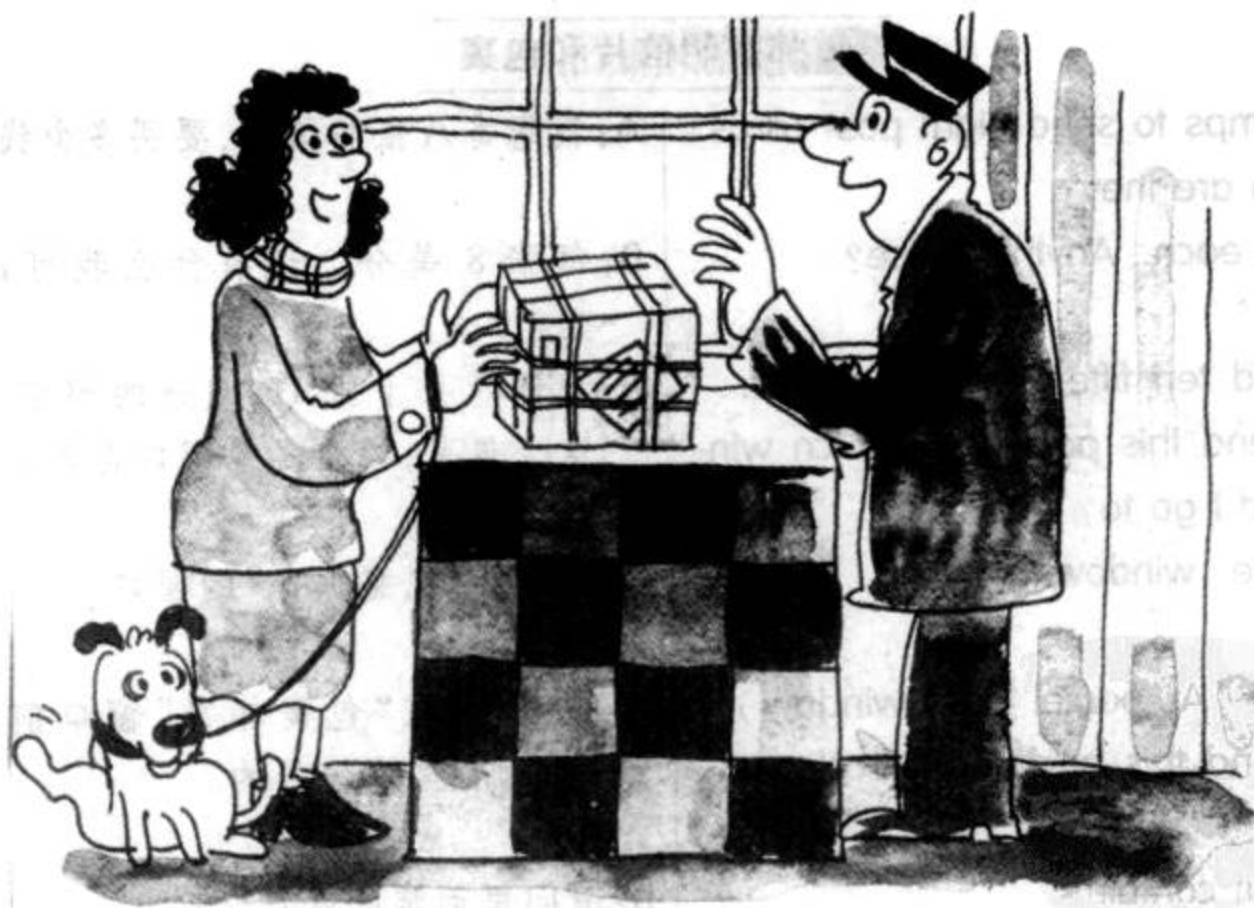
B: 您忘了写寄件人地址。

A: 哦, 对不起。我马上写。

B: 好了。这是您的收据。

A: 谢谢。都好了吧?

B: 是的, 小姐。您现在可以到七号窗口去了。



Unit
3

接打电话

Making and Receiving a Phone Call

文化
链接

Culture Links

每个电话都应该以礼貌的问候开始,例如:Hi, how've you been? 或者 Nice to hear from you. 就算你出于某种意图打电话给工作上认识的人,如果不以礼貌的寒暄开始谈话而直接进入工作主题,也是相当不礼貌的。

接着应该表明电话来意,使用短语 I'm just calling to ... 作为过渡。例如, I'm just calling to see if you'd like to set up a meeting. 如果相反的情况,那你就等机会找出别人为什么打电话给你,你可以这么引导对话: So what can I do for you?

如果你在通话中制订计划的话,记得要在电话结束时确认细节。可以用以下的短语开始 Please let me confirm... 和 So, let me make sure I've got things straight... 并加上你所理解的各种信息。

结束电话时,你可以祝福别人,例如在合适的情况下说 good luck on that interview 或 hope you feel better soon。此外,你可能想要确认一下你们制订的任何计划,如: I'll see you on Friday, then. 有时最简单的方式就表达你和某人通话非常愉快。而且,记得在你准备结束对话之前加上 well, 如: Well John, it's been a pleasure talking to you.

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 打错电话

A: Hello, is Jennifer in?

B: I am sorry, you have the wrong number.

A: Oh, I am really sorry.

A: 喂,请问詹妮弗在么?

B: 对不起,你打错电话了。

A: 噢,实在很抱歉。

2. 找人未在 (1)

A: Hello, this is Michael. I'd like to speak to Mr. Wood.

B: Sorry, Mr. Wood is not here right now.

A: 你好,我是米歇尔。我能找伍德先生接电话么?

B: 对不起,伍德先生现在不在。有什么消

通讯及交通 · Correspondence & Transportation

Do you have any message for him?

A: I will call again in twenty minutes. Thanks.

B: Not at all.

息我可以帮您转告吗?

A: 不用啦, 我 20 分钟后再打过来。谢谢你。

B: 不客气。

找人未在 (2)

A: Good morning.

B: Good morning. This is Mary Brown. I am calling from New York.

A: How can I help you?

B: I am trying to get hold of Mr. Chen. Is he available?

A: I will just find out for you, Madam. Hello, are you still there? Unfortunately, Mr. Chen is not available at the moment. Would you like me to put you through to Mr. Li?

B: Yes, please. It's very kind of you.

A: You are welcome.

A: 早上好。

B: 早上好。我是玛丽·布朗。我是从纽约打过来的。

A: 有什么我可以帮您的吗?

B: 请帮我找陈先生接电话。他在吗?

A: 女士请稍等, 我帮您转接。您好, 请问您还在吗? 非常抱歉, 陈先生现在不在。您需要我帮您转接到李先生那里么?

B: 好的, 非常感谢, 您真是太好了。

A: 不客气。

捎信口信

A: Hello?

B: Hello, is this 44820987? I'd like to speak to Mr. Doff.

A: I am sorry. Mr. Doff is out right now.

B: May I know when will he be back?

A: I don't know. But he will certainly be back for lunch. This is his wife speaking. Can I take a message for you?

B: Thanks, Mrs. Doff. Please tell him to be at the airport at three p. m.

A: Very Good. I will let him know as soon as he comes back. But, may I have your name, please?

B: This is Lucy White. Thank you. Bye.

A: Bye.

A: 你好?

B: 你好, 这是 44820987 么? 我想找道夫先生。

A: 对不起, 他这会儿出去了。

B: 我可以知道他什么时候回来么?

A: 我不太清楚。但是他肯定会回来吃午饭的。我是他太太, 请问有消息需要我帮您转达吗?

B: 道夫太太, 谢谢您。请转告道夫先生, 明天下午 3 点到机场。

A: 好的。他一回来我就告诉他。请问您是哪位呀?

B: 我是露西·怀特。那么谢谢了。再见。

A: 再见。

接打电话 · Making and Receiving a Phone Call

5. 转接电话

A: Hello!

B: Hello! Good morning, who is that speaking?

A: It's Jane. I am sorry to make such an early call.

B: It's nothing. Who do you wish to talk to?

A: Is Sue James in?

B: Sue! Jane wants you on the phone!

A: Hello! Is Sue there?

C: Yes, speaking.

A: Oh, sorry. I am afraid I won't attend the meeting this morning. Last night I had a sore throat and I started getting a cold.

C: Do you have a temperature?

A: No, haven't yet.

C: Don't worry about the meeting. You'd better go to see a doctor. I wish you will soon be well.

A: Thanks, Sue. Bye-bye.

C: Bye.

A: 喂?

B: 喂, 早上好。您哪位?

A: 我是珍。非常抱歉这么早打电话来。

B: 没关系。你找谁接电话?

A: 请问苏·詹姆斯在么?

B: 苏! 珍的电话!

A: 你好, 请问是苏么?

C: 对, 你说。

A: 真是对不起, 苏, 我恐怕不能参加上午的会议了。昨晚我嗓子疼, 接着就感冒了。

C: 你发烧了么?

A: 还没。

C: 别想着会议啦。你最好去看看医生。真希望你早点好起来。

A: 谢谢你, 苏。那么我挂了。

C: 好的, 再见。



Unit

4

打错电话

Dialing a Wrong Number

文化
链接

Culture Links

打电话时,拨错一个号码都是不允许的。如已经拨错时,应尽量委婉地向对方解释:I'm terribly sorry I've got the wrong number. (实在对不起,我肯定拨错号码了。)以避免对方生气。或者请求对方帮忙核实一下电话号码:Could you test the number for me, please? (可否帮我核实一下这个号码?)以便弄清楚自己要打的电话号码。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 弄错电话号码 (1)

A: Hello. Can I talk to Miss Li, please?

B: I beg your pardon? Miss who?

A: Miss Li. Li Lin.

B: I'm sorry, but I don't know that name.
You must have the wrong number.

A: Come on. I know Li Lin is there. Let me talk to her.

B: Sorry. There's no one named Li Lin here.
Are you sure you have the right name?

A: Sure.

B: What number are you trying to dial?

A: It's 423-6681. Isn't it right?

B: No. It isn't. It's 423-6631.

A: I'm sorry to have bothered you.

B: No problem.

A: 你好,可以找李小姐接电话吗?

B: 对不起,再说一下好吗? 哪位小姐?

A: 李小姐,李琳。

B: 对不起,我不知道这个人。你一定是打错了。

A: 别闹了,我知道李琳就在这儿,让我和她谈谈。

B: 对不起。这儿没有叫李琳的人。你确定是这个名字吗?

A: 我确定。

B: 你拨的是多少号?

A: 423-6681, 不对吗?

B: 不对,这儿的电话号是 423-6631。

A: 对不起打扰你了。

B: 没关系。

打错电话 · Dialing a Wrong Number

2. 辨别电话号码(2)

A: Hello. This is Mrs. Wilson. I'd like to buy a new car. Could you offer me a new type of the car, please?

B: Oh, Madam, buy what?

A: A new car. And I've got a small family, two children, and I haven't got a lot of money and...

B: Oh, oh, Madam, Madam, I'm afraid you have the wrong number.

A: Isn't this the car store?

B: No. It's Mike's Sporting Goods.

A: Oh, sorry. Do you know the number for a car store, then?

B: No. I don't. I suggest you look in the phone book.

A: I'm sorry to have bothered you.

B: No problem.

A: 你好,我是威尔逊太太,我想买一辆新车。请问能给我建议一款新型汽车吗?

B: 哦,太太,您要买什么?

A: 一辆新车。我现在建立了一个小家庭,有两个孩子,我钱不是很多……

B: 哦,太太,太太。恐怕您打错电话了。

A: 这里不是汽车销售处吗?

B: 不是。是迈克体育用品商店。

A: 哦,对不起。那么你有汽车销售处的电话?

B: 没有。我建议您查一下电话号码簿。

A: 对不起打扰你了。

B: 没关系。

3. 辨别电话号码(1)

A: Operator. Can I help you?

B: I'd like to make a person-to-person call to Beijing, China. The number is 2135-3678, and I want to speak to Mr. Zhang.

A: To Mr. Zhang in at 2135-3678?

B: Yes, that's right.

A: May I have your name and telephone number?

B: My name is Luo Gang, and the phone number is 513-3284.

A: Mr. Luo, will you hold the line, please—
Mr. Luo, there is no Zhang at that number.
Will you check the number again, please?

B: What the number I gave you, operator?

A: It's 2135-3678.

B: Oh, I'm sorry. It should have been 2135-

A: 我是接线员,您有什么需要?

B: 我想往中国北京挂个私人电话,号码是2135-3678。我想找张先生。

A: 找张先生,电话2135-3678?

B: 是的。

A: 请问您的名字和电话号码?

B: 我叫罗刚,电话是513-3284。

A: 罗先生,请不要挂线。——罗先生,打这个电话号码找不到张先生。请再检查一下电话号码好吗?

B: 接线员,我刚才说的号码是什么?

A: 2135-3678。

B: 哦,对不起,应该是2135-3668,不是

通讯及交通 · Correspondence & Transportation

3668, not 3678. I've given you a wrong number.

A: Are you sure this time?

B: Yes.

A: OK. Let me try again.

B: Thank you.

3678. 我报错电话号码了。

A: 这次您确定是对的吗?

B: 我确定。

A: 好的。我再试试。

B: 谢谢。

4. 报错电话号码(2)

A: May I help you?

B: I'd like to place a person-to-person call to Mrs. tengvall in Sweden.

A: Could I have the number, please?

B: It's 444 - 2888.

A: Do you know the area code?

B: Yes, it's 201.

A: Thank you. Hold the line, please. OK.

B: Is that Mrs. tengvall?

C: No, you are wrong.

B: Sorry.

A: 可以为您效劳吗?

B: 我想打一个私人电话给瑞典的唐瓦夫人。

A: 请问电话号码是多少?

B: 是 444 - 2888。

A: 你知道区号吗?

B: 知道, 是 201。

A: 谢谢。请稍等。好了。

B: 你是唐瓦夫人吗?

C: 不是, 你打错了。

B: 对不起。



Unit
5

长途电话

Long-Distance Call

文化
链接

Culture Links

1. In China the telephone number for Directory Enquiries is 114. (for the fire department is 119). 中国电话查询台的电话号码是 114(火警是 119)。

2. IDD is the short form for International Direct Dial. IDD 是国际直拨长途的英文缩写。

3. DDD is the short form for Domestic Direct Dial. DDD 是国内直拨长途的英文缩写。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 打越洋电话至北京

A: Operator, I want to make a collect overseas phone call to Beijing.

B: Whom would you like to talk to?

A: Richard Zhang.

B: What is the phone number?

A: The code is 880, the area code is 010 and the local number is 88245784.

B: Your name, please.

A: Monica Tang.

B: Hold on, please.

A: OK, thank you.

B: The line is through now, please go ahead.

A: 接线生, 我要打一通对方付款的越洋电话到北京。

B: 您要找哪位?

A: 理查德·张。

B: 电话号码多少?

A: 代码是 880, 区码是 010, 电话号码是 88245784。

B: 您的大名?

A: 莫尼卡·唐。

B: 请稍等一会儿。

A: 好的, 谢谢。

B: 接通了, 请讲。

通讯及交通 · Correspondence & Transportation

2. 打国际电话至日本

A: Hello. Overseas operator. May I help you?

B: Yes. I'd like to make a collect call to Japan.

A: Your name, please?

B: It's Helen Kent.

A: Who would you like to talk to?

B: I'd like to talk to Mr. Edna Kent.

A: Is that Mr. Edna Kent?

B: That's right.

A: What number are you calling from, please?

B: From code 513, 432-6748.

A: And the number in Japan, please?

B: Country code 81, area code 138, and the number is 846-8972.

A: Hold the line, please. I'll put your call through.

A: 您好,我是国际长途接线员。有什么能帮您的吗?

B: 我想打电话到日本,对方付费。

A: 请问您的名字?

B: 我叫海伦·肯特。

A: 您想要找谁接电话?

B: 我想找阿达尼·肯特先生。

A: 是阿达尼·肯特先生吗?

B: 是的。

A: 请问您的电话号码?

B: 我的电话是 513-4326748。

A: 日本的电话是多少?

B: 国家代码是 81, 区号是 138, 电话号码是 8468972。

A: 请稍等,不要挂线。我给您接通。

3. 打国际电话至澳大利亚

A: Operator.

B: Hello. I'd like to make a call to Australia.

A: You can call direct if you like.

B: Oh, can I?

A: Yes, please.

B: Could you please tell me the international prefix and the country code for Australia?

A: Yes, the code for Australia is 61 and then dial the city code and the number. Start with the international code which is 00.

B: What time do the special rates apply?

A: Between six in the evening and eight in the morning, sir.

B: I wonder if I can charge this call to my

A: 接线员。

B: 你好,我想打电话到澳大利亚。

A: 如果愿意的话,您可以直接拨打。

B: 哦,可以吗?

A: 可以。

B: 那么请告诉我澳大利亚的国际电话接入码和国家代码好吗?

A: 可以,澳大利亚的国家代码是 61,然后直接拨打城市区号和电话号码就可以了。前面加拨国际电话接入码 00 就可以了。

B: 什么时段收费优惠?

A: 先生,是在晚上 6 点到早上 8 点之间。

B: 请问可以把电话费算在我的房费里吗?

hotel room.

A: Certainly. Tell me the room number and your name, please?

B: This is Mr. Ma in room 215.

A: OK, Mr. Ma. I'll tell the front desk clerk the charge after-wards.

B: Thanks very much for your help.

A: You're welcome. Bye.

B: Bye.

A: 当然可以。请告诉我你的房间号和名字。

B: 我是马先生, 房间号 215。

A: 好的, 马先生, 稍后我会把费用告诉前台工作人员的。

B: 非常感谢您的帮助。

A: 不用谢。再见。

B: 再见。

4. 打长途电话至伦敦

A: Long Distance. May I help you?

B: Yes. I'd like to place an overseas call to London. Can I dial direct?

A: No, sir. I'm afraid not.

B: Oh, I see. How about the charges?

A: The charges vary according to the types of call you make. The cheapest is a station-to-station call, then a person-to-person call. The mini charge will apply for the first three minutes, then each additional minute will be charged.

B: Oh, let me think of it... Could you put through a collect call for me?

A: Certainly. Who are you calling?

B: It's a Mrs. Peters. Marilgyn Peters.

A: And what's the number you are calling?

B: It's London, 9981-6432.

A: And your name and number?

B: My name's Ron Smith and the phone number is 356-2210.

A: Hang up and I'll call you back in a few minutes.

A: 长途电话总机, 需要帮忙吗?

B: 是的, 我想打个国际长途到伦敦, 我可以直接拨电话吗?

A: 恐怕不行, 先生。

B: 哦, 我知道了。那么怎么收费?

A: 根据您拨打电话的种类收费不同。最便宜的是机对机电话, 比它贵一点的是人对人电话, 先收前三分钟的费用, 接下来按每分钟收费。

B: 哦, 让我想想……能为我拨通对方付费电话吗?

A: 当然可以了。请问您要找哪位?

B: 我找彼得太太, 凯瑟琳·威尔逊。

A: 您要拨打的电话号码多少?

B: 伦敦, 99816432。

A: 您的名字和号码?

B: 我是让·史密斯, 电话是 356-2210。

A: 请挂机, 我几分钟后会给您再回过来。

Unit

6

打公用电话

Public Phone

文化
链接

Culture Links

在国外,使用公用电话既可打当地电话又可打长途电话。因为用公用电话打长途需要相当多的硬币(5 美分 nickel, 10 美分 dime 和 25 美分 quarter)。如果你要接电话的人付电话费,而且对方也同意,那就告诉接线员你要打“对方付费”电话,其他操作与打长途电话一样。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



打公用电话(1)

A: Excuse me. I get confused that the two phones on the booth are different. Can you tell me how to use them?

B: Let me have a look. Oh, yes. This one is the IC phone and the other is the coin phone. If you have an IC card, you can insert it into this slot, wait for the dialing signal appearing on the small screen, and then dial the number of the person you are going to call.

A: Well, I see. How to use the other one?

B: First, you pick up the receiver, wait for the dialing signal, dial the number, and then put the coin into the slot, press the “speak” button. Then everything is done.

A: It seems quite easy. I will try both of them.

A: 打扰了。我弄不明白这个电话亭里怎么会有两种不同的电话。你能告诉我如何使用这两种电话吗?

B: 让我看看。哦,是不一样。这种是 IC 卡电话,那种是投币电话。如果你有 IC 卡,你可以把它插进槽孔里,等到小屏幕上显示的文字提醒你拨号时,你就可以拨对方的号码了。

A: 哦,我明白了。怎么用另一个?

B: 你先拿起听筒,等有了拨号信号,就拨你要打的电话号码,然后把硬币放进小孔里,按一下“通话”键,一切就搞定了。

A: 看起来还是挺容易的。我两种都试试。

2. 了解公用电话(2)

A: Excuse me, would you please tell me where I can find a telephone?

B: Over there in the booth.

A: How do you use a public phone?

B: For a local call, just insert 35 cents in the slot and use it in the same way as your home phone. Inquiries are free from a public phone.

A: 对不起,请问哪儿有电话?

B: 在那边的电话亭里。

A: 怎样使用公共电话?

B: 打当地电话时将 35 分硬币投入孔内,其他就和在家里打一样了。用公用电话咨询不收费。

3. 公用电话打长途

A: Can I make a long-distance call from a public telephone?

B: Sure, but you'll need a lot of change to put in the slot if it's not a collect call.

A: How can I know how much it takes?

B: After you dial, the operator will tell you the amount.

A: 请问哪儿有公用电话?

B: 可以,但如果不是对方付费,那你得投入很多硬币才行。

A: 怎么才知道需要多少钱?

B: 你拨完以后接线员会告诉你金额的。

4. 公用电话打市内

A: Can I put in two nickels instead of a dime?

B: Yes. Is this a local call or long distance call?

A: A local call.

A: 我可以投入两个 5 分的硬币代替一个 10 分的硬币吗?

B: 可以。打市内还是长途?

A: 市内。



Unit
7

发电子邮件

Sending an E-mail

文化
链接

Culture Links

美国人通常对名字的使用比较随便。他们常使用一些略称或昵称,比如把 Edward 称为 Ed,把 Suzanne 称为 Sue。不过,在你还没有和某人完全熟识之前,最好还是称呼他/她为 Mr. 或 Mrs. /Ms. /Miss,别一开始就直呼别人的小名。

有些数字和符号外国人是看不懂的,比如在使用 RMB 时,请指明它是 Renminbi——中国大陆流通货币的缩写。

不同的人对于性别歧视有不同的看法,在美国可以用已婚女子丈夫的姓来称呼她,但在俄罗斯和一些亚洲国家,妇女不从夫姓,硬把夫姓加上会被认为是对妇女的歧视。

你的信件可能随时被他人传递,就连 blind copy 也会被人公开传阅。所以写 e-mail 送 e-mail 都必须三思而后行。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues

1. 推荐书籍

To: Zhang Jian
From: Lily Wong
Date: April 26, 2002
Subject: Crafting Beautiful English Sentences
Zhang Jian, Hi.

If you recall, we “met” in cyberspace the other day chatting about the challenges of writing essays in English. A recent search on DangDang.com showed that a certain Mr. Gu Yue has put out a book called “Crafting Beautiful English Sentences.” The book, pub-

收件人:张剑
发件人:莉莉·王
日期:2002年4月26日
主题:构思精美的英语句子
嘿,张剑:

如果你还记得,我们前些日子曾在电脑空间里“见面”,聊起英文写作何等之不易。最近我在当当网站上检索,发现一本谷约先生写的书,名为《构思精美的英语句子》。这本由世界知识出版社出版的书,是以学习英语的中国人为目标读者群,探讨

发电子邮件 · Sending an E-mail

lished by Shi Jie Zhi Shi, is said to have Chinese learners of English as target readers and it addresses a range of topics from choice of words to sentence structures to editing to stylistic considerations. What strikes me the most is that the book deals in great length with the issue of how to break away from the influence of Chinese language structures and thinking patterns, which, as you and I agreed, seem to stand in the way of crafting good English sentences. The book is worth checking out. I just thought you might be interested.

了一系列问题,包括遣词造句、句子结构、编辑修改和写作风格。而其中最让人寻味的是这本书花了很长的篇幅讲解如何克服和消除中文语言结构和思维方式对构思优美的英文句子所构成的种种障碍。你我都觉得中文语言结构和思维方式确实对构思优美的英文句子会构成障碍。这本书值得查阅。我想你也许会感兴趣。

询问购书处

To: Lily Wong

From: Zhang Jian

Date: April 27, 2002

Subject: Crafting Beautiful English Sentences

Dear Lily,

I do remember you. Thank you so much for sharing the information with me. I will definitely check it out. Do you happen to know which bookstore might carry books like that? I am not comfortable ordering things online yet. Thanks again for writing. I know I can depend on you for good advice. Let's stay in touch.

收件人: 莉莉·王

发件人: 张剑

日期: 2002 年 4 月 27 日

主题: 构思精美的英语句子

亲爱的莉莉:

我当然还记得你。谢谢你告诉我这些信息。我会查阅此书的。你知道哪家书店卖这样的书吗? 我还不放心在网上订购东西。再次对你的来信表示感谢。我知道你会不时给我灵丹妙计的。保持联系。

征求建议

To: friends

From: Mark Chen

Date: November 23, 2001

Subject: I've things for sale

Hi, All.

As you know, I will be going to the States

收件人: 朋友们

发件人: 马克·陈

日期: 2001 年 11 月 23 日

主题: 出售物品

嗨, 朋友们:

正如你们所知, 我将从 12 月起, 去美国

通讯及交通 · Correspondence & Transportation

for an assignment as of December. Consequently, I need to sell my motorcycle and mountain bike. Do you have any good suggestions as to how I can spread the word?

工作一段时间。因此,我需要卖掉我的摩托车和越野自行车。我怎么才能广而告之呢,你们有何好的建议?

4. 提供建议

To: Mark Chen
From: Diane K
Date: November 24, 2001
Subject: For sale
Hi Mark,

I thought it might not be a bad idea to post an ad at the local universities. Students are always looking for used items. Of course if your motorcycle and mountain bike are fairly new, that might not be such a great idea.

收件人:马克·陈
发件人:戴安·K
日期:2001年11月24日
主题:出售物品
嗨,马克:

我想在本地大学贴广告不是个坏主意。学生们常常寻找二手货。当然,如果你的摩托车和越野自行车还很新,在大学贴一广告也许不是个好主意。

5. 节日问候(1)

To: Guo Zhiqiang and Shelly Dong
From: Rong Xingmin
Date: January 28, 2001
Subject: Holiday Greeting

I am so glad it's almost Spring Festival because I know I'll be seeing both of you at the School Reunion. Until then, I just wanted to say that I wish both of you and the children a very prosperous and happy New Year.

收件人:郭志强和雪莉·董
发件人:荣星民
日期:2001年1月28日
主题:节日问候

真高兴,春节就要到了,因为我可以在校友联欢会上见到你们俩了。在我们春节相聚之前我想说,祝你们俩和孩子们万事顺利,新年快乐。

6. 节日问候(2)

To: Rong Xingmin
From: Shelly Dong
Date: January 29, 2001
Subject: Holiday Greeting
Xingmin, Hi.

Long time no see. Happy New Year to

收件人:荣星民
发件人:雪莉·董
日期:2001年1月29日
主题:节日问候
嗨,星民:

很长时间没见到你了。祝你新年快

发电子邮件 · Sending an E-mail

you!

I was planning on joining the School Reunion until something came up at work that would require my traveling to Gansu during that time. What a pity. However, my husband is still available for the event and I know he just can't wait. Sorry I can't make it this year. Say hi to everybody for me.

乐!

我原本打算去参加校友联欢会的,可是没料到工作上出现一些问题,需要我在那段时间里去甘肃处理。真的很可惜。但是,我丈夫还是可以去的,我知道他是急着要去参加校友联欢。对不起,我今年真的不能参加了。代我向所有人问好。



Unit
8

骑自行车

Riding a Bicycle

文化
链接

Culture Links

八十年代开始,环保意识抬头,自行车开始在欧美风靡。许多国家纷纷效仿过去荷兰政府的做法,在各大城市马路上规定自行车专用车道。在欧洲很多城市,可以在街头很方便地租到电动自行车。在美国很多地方,拥有一台电动自行车是有政府补贴的。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues

1. 租自行车(1)

A: What are your plans for this weekend?
B: I'd like to hire a bike. I think it would be a good idea to do some cycling on Sunday.
A: If the weather's fine.
B: I am sure it will be. It's been good so far this weekend.
A: I know a good place to hire bikes if you want.
B: Thanks. That would be really helpful.
A: But remember, be careful when you ride a bike. The traffic in Beijing can be dangerous.

A: 你这个周末的计划是什么?
B: 我想租一辆自行车。我觉得周日骑自行车会是一个不错的主意。
A: 如果天气好的话。
B: 我肯定天气一定会好的。这周天气一直不错。
A: 如果你想租车的话,我知道一个租车的好地方。
B: 谢谢,你真是太好了。
A: 但是要记住,骑自行车的时候要小心。北京的交通有时候很危险。

2. 租自行车(2)

A: There's a bike rental store here.
B: Yeah, wanna rent one?
A: How much is it to rent one?
B: It's 10 yuan per day for a standard bike,

A: 这里有租自行车的。
B: 是啊,租一辆吗?
A: 租一辆多少钱?
B: 普通的十块一天,山地车二十,双人骑的

骑自行车 · Riding a Bicycle

20 yuan for a mountain bike and 50 yuan for a tandem.

A: Is there any deposit?

B: Yes, 200 Yuan for a standard bike, 300 Yuan for a mountain, and 800 Yuan for a tandem.

A: I'd like to rent three standard bikes.

B: Okay, that will be 600 yuan. please.

自行车五十。

A: 有押金吗?

B: 有, 普通车两百, 山地车三百, 双人骑自行车八百。

A: 我要租三辆普通车。

B: 好, 那就交六百吧。

13. 提醒注意安全

A: I have learnt how to ride a bicycle. I plan to go to the Water Park by bike this weekend.

B: Well, you know, the traffic in Beijing is sometimes dangerous. Therefore, I have to remind you of something. First, you should obey the traffic rules, don't break in the red light. Second, don't play a joke with your friends when riding on the bike. Third, do not hurry up when riding, or would make an accident. Finally, remember come on the left and go on the right!

A: Oh, my dear sister, I am no longer a baby!

A: 我刚学会骑自行车。我打算这周末骑车去水上公园。

B: 哦, 你知道的, 北京的交通有时候很危险。所以, 我得提醒你一些事。首先, 要遵守交通规则, 不要闯红灯; 其次, 不要在骑车时和你的朋友打闹; 再次, 不要骑得太快, 否则会出事故; 最后, 要记得来左去右。

A: 哦, 亲爱的姐姐, 我又不是小孩子!

Unit
9

驾车

Driving a Car

文化
链接

Culture Links

美国的高速公路非常发达,总高速公路里程长达8万多公里,州际和城市公路65万多公里,公路网遍及全国各地,出行切记在车上备一份行车地图并事先标好到达目的地的线路。

美国的交通和中国一样都是右侧行驶,不同的是,在没有红绿灯的路口和住宅区内附近会有一个 STOP 的停车标志,汽车都要先停车确定无人时再开车。行驶在5车道公路或高速路上一般限速70英里/小时,相当于112公里/每小时。

美国的加油站(Gas Station)随处可见,尤其是在高速公路两旁。一般的加油站除了柴油以外供应有铅(Leaded)、无铅(Unleaded)和超级无铅(Super Unleaded)三种汽油。而加油站则分为两类:服务型加油站(Full Service)和自助型加油站(Self Service)。前者和中国国内的加油站服务差不多,而后者您可以自持油枪自助加油,体验一下加油站工作的乐趣。中国公民在美国短期开车,只要拥有合法的中国驾照,再到我国政府公证机关开具驾照的官方英文翻译文件就可以了。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues

1. 长途驾车

A: What about driving to Shanghai?

B: Driving? No way, it's too far.

A: I just thought it would be an interesting way to see lots of places. How long will it take?

B: Too long, and you do not have much time.

A: What a pity.

A: 开车去上海怎么样?

B: 开车去? 绝对不行。

A: 我想,这一定是有趣的旅行。我可以看到很多地方。开车去需要多少时间?

B: 太长了,而且你没有那么多时间。

A: 太可惜了。

2. 酒后驾车

A: Have you heard that Mel Gibson was arrested by the police last week?

B: No, not yet. Why?

A: For suspicion of driving under influence.

B: Oh. I am not his fan.

A: 你听说了么? 梅尔·吉布森上周被捕了。

B: 没, 怎么啦?

A: 听说是酒后驾车。

B: 哦, 我不是他的粉丝。

3. 驾车加油

A: Excuse me. Where is the nearest gas station?

B: Turn right, and you will find one about a mile ahead.

A: Thanks.

(At the gas station)

A: Fill it up, please.

C: Shall I check the oil?

A: Sure.

A: 劳驾, 请问最近的加油站在哪?

B: 右转, 然后你会在前面大约一英里处发现加油站。

A: 多谢。

(加油站)

A: 请加满。

C: 要不要检查油?

A: 好的。

4. 车辆故障

A: There seems something wrong with the engine. Could you check it, please?

B: Sure. What's the problem?

A: 引擎好像有些问题。能不能麻烦你检查一下?

B: 好的。什么问题?

5. 车辆抛锚

A: My car has broken down. Could someone come right away and check it?

B: Where are you now?

A: I am on Route 80, a few miles east of the University of Utah.

B: What does your car look like?

A: It is a red Audi.

A: 我的车抛锚了, 可以请人立刻前来检修么?

B: 您现在在哪里?

A: 我在八十道, 犹他大学东边几英里外。

B: 您的车看上去什么样子的?

A: 红色的奥迪。

Unit
10

乘公共汽车

Taking a Bus

文化
链接

Culture Links

在美国公交车上看不到人挤人的现象。公交车的前面都摆放着汽车线路图和时刻表,免费供乘客取阅。车上都装有一串连接每位乘客的绳子,需要下车的乘客只要拉一下座位旁边的绳子,摇响铃铛,车前就会出现要求下车的显示,司机就马上知道有人下车,非常简单、方便。如果乘客遇到了什么麻烦,司机也会很乐意地帮助他们。公交车对残疾人的照顾非常周到,车的前门有一个升降机,残疾人的轮椅可通过升降机提升而方便地上下车,同时前排还设有残疾人的专用座位,可以固定住轮椅。纽约市拥有3700辆公交车,行驶在五个区的200条线路上。纽约市的公交车是由纽约市捷运局经营管理的。纽约市政府在市中心地区专门辟有“公交专用道”,在早上8点至晚上7点这一时间段里,这条专用道只供公交线使用,任何别的车辆一发现在这条道上面行驶,就会遭到罚款。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



如何搭乘公共车辆(1)

A: Excuse me. Does this bus go by Tiananmen Square?

B: Yes, it does.

A: At which stop should I get off?

B: There is a stop at Tiananmen Square. The stops will be announced on the bus both in English and Chinese. When the stop is coming, you just push the red button near the rear door if you want to get off.

A: Okay, thanks very much.

A: 劳驾,请问这车去天安门么?

B: 去。

A: 我该在哪站下车呢?

B: 天安门广场有一站。车上会用中英文报站。快到站的时候,如果你要下车,按后门旁边的红色按钮就可以了。

A: 好,非常感谢。

2. 询问搭乘公交车辆(2)

A: Excuse me. Is this the bus I should take to get to the Central Park?

B: Yes. But you have to transfer to Bus No. 28.

A: Where should I change for the Park?

B: At Tianhe Depot.

A: But I don't know which stop is Tianhe Depot.

B: I will remind you to get off.

A: Thank you.

B: My pleasure.

A: 劳驾, 请问这是去中心公园的车么?

B: 是的。但是您得倒 28 路。

A: 在哪儿倒车啊?

B: 在天河客运站。

A: 但是我不知道天河客运站在哪里啊。

B: 没关系, 我会提醒您的。

A: 您真是太好了, 谢谢。

B: 不客气。

3. 搭错车

A: Excuse me! Does this bus go to the railway station?

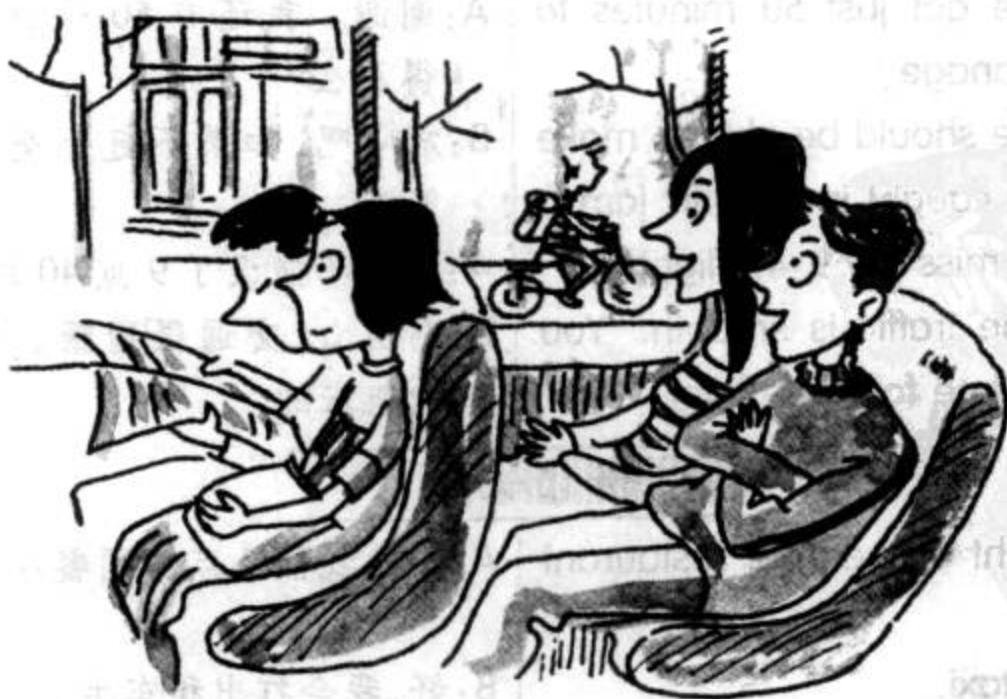
B: No, You're got on the wrong bus. You can take a No. 22 bus at the University station and then transfer to a No. 83 bus at the railway station.

A: OK! Thank you very much!

A: 对不起! 我乘这辆车能到火车站吗?

B: 不到, 您乘错车了。您可以乘坐 22 路公共汽车在大学站换乘 83 路公共汽车到火车站。

A: 好的。谢谢您!



Unit
11

乘出租车

Taking a Taxi

文化
链接

Culture Links

在赶时间或者不晓得地理位置的时候,计程车是最方便的。不过,在搭车之前,最好向宾馆服务台确认一下到达目的地大概需要多少钱。搭车时也要和司机确认一下金额,并且问清楚需不需要小费。有“off duty”标志的车是空车。美国的计程车是同一使用奥斯丁名牌的黑色方型车,英国的就不一定了。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1 乘出租车去机场

A: Taxi!

B: Where to?

A: Beijing International Airport. Would you please help me with my baggage?

B: Certainly. Let's put the suitcase in the boot.

A: Thank you. I've got just 50 minutes to go. Can we manage?

B: Take it easy. We should be able to make it unless we get caught in a traffic jam.

A: I can't afford to miss my 9:40 flight.

B: Don't worry. The traffic is smooth. You will be there in time for your flight.

A: 出租车!

B: 先生,您去哪里?

A: 首都国际机场。您能帮我拿一下行李么?

B: 当然,把手提箱放在车后备箱里吧。

A: 谢谢。我还有 50 分钟时间。我们能来得及么?

B: 放心吧,如果不赶上交通堵塞我们应该能到。

A: 我可不能误了 9 点 40 的航班。

B: 别担心,交通很通畅。您会及时赶上您的航班的。

2 叫出租车

A: Let's meet tonight at the Thai restaurant at about 5.

B: Fine, I'll take a taxi.

A: Why don't you walk? It's only about 20

A: 今晚我们 7 点泰国餐厅见。

B: 好,我会打出租车去。

A: 你为什么步行呢? 步行只要大约 20

乘出租车 · Taking a Taxi

minutes walking and it's a nice evening.
 B: Never thought about it, I sure you are right. It's quite a short walk.
 A: Ha-ha, see you then.

分钟,何况夜晚如此怡人。
 B:从没想到过步行。我想你是对的,步行也不远。
 A:哈哈,那么到时候见啦。

3. 打车去大学

A: Where to, sir?
 B: Beijing University. Do you know where it is located?
 A: Yes, of course. I live near the university. Hop in please.
 B: Would you please help me with my luggage?
 A: Okay, we'll put it in the trunk. Ah, it is so heavy.
 B: Yes, I packed my books in it. Thank you.
 A: You're welcome.

A: 您要去哪里?
 B: 北京大学。您知道在哪儿么?
 A: 当然,我就住在那附近。请上车吧。
 B: 您帮我安置下行李好么?
 A: 好的,我们把它放在车尾行李箱里吧。啊,这么重。
 B: 是的,我把书装里面了。谢谢。
 A: 不客气。

4. 打车去图书馆

A: Hey, taxi.
 B: Where to, sir?
 A: Beijing Library.
 B: Hop in, please.
 A: Is it a long ride to Beijing Library?
 B: It will take about thirty minutes because it is the rush hour.
 A: Thirty minutes—that will be all right. There are still fifty minutes to go before the library is open. Look, what are they doing on the square?
 B: It is an exhibition of Chinese jades. It is held each year. A nice collection of jades are on display and sold.
 A: Sounds great! Can you stop somewhere here for a minute? I will get some souvenirs for my friends.
 B: No problem.

A: 嗨,出租车!
 B: 先生,您去哪?
 A: 北京图书馆。
 B: 请上车吧!
 A: 去北京图书馆要很久么?
 B: 因为是交通高峰期,所以大概要 30 分钟。
 A: 30 分钟,还可以。离图书馆开门还有 50 分钟,看,他们在广场上做什么呢?
 B: 这是一个中国玉器展。每年举行一次,展销一些精美的玉器。
 A: 听起来棒极了,您能在附近停下车么?我去给我的朋友们买些纪念品。
 B: 没问题。

Unit
12

乘火车

Taking a Train

文化
链接

Culture Links

美国铁路营运里程 20 万公里。铁路分布不平均,北部密,南部稀。美国的铁路客运不景气,外出的人乘坐火车的并不多。火车除了速度较慢外,票价也不便宜。

Amtrak 是美国国会为发展并改进城市之间的铁路客运服务而设立的全国铁路客运公司,于 1971 年成立,属半政府半民间的企业。Amtrak 美国境内的营业里程达 30 万公里,如洛杉矶至迈阿密之间的“日落特快车”、西雅图至芝加哥的“先锋”等列车都为美国人所熟悉。因此,在美国的铁路之旅也就是 Amtrak 之旅。

USA RAILPASS 是 Amtrak 对外国旅客发售的铁路环游券,这种环游券必须在美国以外的地方预先购买,在发行之日起 90 天内使用,乘车期有 30 天和 15 天两种,持券人可以在乘车期内不限次使用,但如果想坐卧铺或豪华车则要补钱。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 预订软卧

- A: Good afternoon, can I help you?
 B: Yes. Do you have any train available to Shenyang today?
 A: Yes. It is Train No. K92. It is an express train. It leaves at 11:30 tonight from Guangzhou and reaches Shenyang at 9 a. m. the day after tomorrow.
 B: Sounds wonderful. Okay, that's it.
 A: Want a seat or sleeper?
 B: A soft-class sleeper, please. And I prefer an upper berth.

- A: 下午好,请问我有什么可以帮忙的么?
 B: 是的。请问今天有到沈阳的票么?
 A: 有的, K92 次列车,是特快。今天晚上 11 点半从广州出发,准点到达沈阳的时间是后天早上 9 点。
 B: 听起来不错啊。好的,就要这趟。
 A: 卧铺还是坐票?
 B: 一张软卧,我想要上铺。

乘火车 · Taking a Train

A: Okay, 900 Yuan, please.

B: Here you are.

A: 好的, 请付九百元。

B: 给你。

2. 去购票大厅

A: Excuse me. Is there any train available to Tianjin today?

B: Yes, it is Train No. 237 which is scheduled to depart at 10:15. You can go to the main hall to get the information.

A: Where is the main hall?

B: Get out of this room, turn right and go 200 meters, then enter the main hall. You can see a timetable on the wall. Information can be obtained.

A: Thanks, it is very nice of you.

B: You are welcome.

A: 您好, 请问今天有车去天津吗?

B: 有的, 237 次, 预定在 10 点 15 出发。您可以在主大厅获得详细的信息。

A: 主大厅在哪?

B: 走出这个房间, 右转, 走 200 米, 然后走进主大厅。您会看到墙上有一个时刻表, 您可以在那获得信息。

A: 实在太感谢了, 你真好。

B: 不客气。

3. 退票

A: Excuse me. Can I get a refund of my ticket? I have to cancel my trip because I have something emergent to deal with.

B: Which train is the ticket for?

A: It is Train No. 249. It will depart in four hours.

B: It is not too late. Pass your ticket to me, please.

A: How much is the cancellation fee?

B: Five Yuan.

A: Thanks.

A: 劳驾, 我可以退票么? 因为我有紧急的事情要处理, 所以我必须得取消这次出行。

B: 哪趟车的票啊?

A: 是 294 次, 这趟车将在 4 小时后出发。

B: 还不算晚。请把您的票给我。

A: 退票费多少呢?

B: 5 元。

A: 好的, 谢谢您。

Unit
13

乘船

Taking a Ship

文化
链接

Culture Links

美国优越的内陆水运网一直是美国成长与进步的重要因素。早期美国移民们经过阿帕契山到达俄亥俄河然后再由俄亥俄河顺流而下,在俄亥俄河沿岸建造了家园。美国大部分的国外贸易都必须依赖航运。其商船吨位占世界的七分之一。纽约是美国最繁忙的海港。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 乘船去香港

A: I'd like to go to Hong Kong. When does the next ferry leave?

B: The ferry runs every hour on the hour. The next one is scheduled to leave at 11 sharp.

A: What's the fare?

B: The one way ticket is 35 HKD, and round-trip is 60 HKD.

A: How long will it take to Hong Kong?

B: About 2 hours.

A: Okay, I'd like to have a one way ticket.

A: 我想去香港,下班渡船什么时候开?

B: 渡船每小时正点开一班,下一班在 11 点整开。

A: 票价多少?

B: 单程票价是 35 港币,往返是 60 港币。

A: 全程多少时间?

B: 到香港是 2 个小时。

A: 好的。我买一张单程票。

2. 乘船旅游

A: How did your vacation go?

B: I traveled the Three Gorges.

A: What about the trip? Do you enjoy yourself?

B: Yes, we had a good time. The trip was

A: 假期过得怎么样啊?

B: 我们去了三峡旅游。

A: 旅程怎么样? 玩得开心么?

B: 是的,我们玩得很开心。旅程棒极了。

乘船 · Taking a Ship

terrific. We toured the Three Gorges by boat. It's really exciting!

A: Did your boat float down the river?

B: Yes. There are many places where the gorge is very narrow, with steep cliffs on both sides.

A: Sounds dangerous.

B: Yes, but we have life jackets. And we got a real kick out of that.

A: What a thrilling trip!

我们乘船漂游了三峡,真是刺激。

A: 你们的船是从水上漂流而下的吗?

B: 是的。山谷有些地方非常狭窄,而且两边都是悬崖峭壁。

A: 听起来很危险啊。

B: 是的,的确,但是我们有救生衣阿,而且,我们从中获得了很大的乐趣。

A: 真是一次惊心动魄的旅行啊!

3. 轮船现状

A: Nowadays, ships and boats are no longer so important in transportation as they used to be.

B: True. With the extension of railways and highways, and the improvement of safety and capacity of airplanes, ships and boats have been giving place to trains, planes and automobiles.

A: I read in the newspapers that the passenger liners from Shanghai to Ningbo and Dalian have been out of business; and the liners up and down the Yangtze River have been reduced by 70%.

B: The pace of life of people is now getting faster and faster, so the speed of ships and boats seems to be so slow. I think it may be the reason why people don't like to travel by boat.

A: But the most of the transoceanic cargo transportation is still carried by boat.

A: 如今,轮船在交通中的重要性大不如从前了。

B: 的确如此。随着铁路与高速公路的延伸、飞机安全性和运力的提高,轮船已经让位给火车、飞机和汽车了。

A: 我从报纸上看到,从上海开往宁波、大连的客轮已经歇业了,而长江沿线的客轮量也已经减少了70%。

B: 人们的生活节奏如今变得越来越快,所以轮船的速度就显得太慢了。我想这大概就是人们不爱乘船旅行的原因。

A: 但是如今大部分的跨洋货运还是靠轮船。

Unit
14

乘飞机

Taking a Plane

文化
链接

Culture Links

在预订机票时,首先弄清楚日期、时间、目的地,其次是你自己名字的拼写。拿到登机牌后,要查看一下登机口。

在机场,你应该核实每一件行李是否都有一个行李签,核实你托运的每一件行李是否都有一张单据。你的每个提包的内外都应各有一张写着你名字、目的地和家庭住址的标签。至于超重的行李,你需要支付行李超重费。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



预订机票(1)

A: Good morning, can I help you?

B: I'd like to book a ticket to Singapore, please.

A: When?

B: June 3rd.

A: The flight number is CZ353. It departs at 17:10 and arrives at 20:45.

B: Okay. I will book this flight.

A: Your passport, please.

B: Here you are.

A: 早上好,请问有什么我可以帮到你的吗?

B: 是的,我想订一张去新加坡的机票。

A: 什么时候的?

B: 六月三号。

A: 航班号是 CZ353,起飞时间是 17 点 10 分,准点到达时间是 20 点 45 分。

B: 好吧,我就订这次航班。

A: 请出示您的护照。

B: 好的,给您。

预订机票(2)

A: Hello, China Southern Airlines. Can I help you?

B: Yes, could I make a reservation to New York on July 21st, next Friday?

A: Sorry, there is no flight available on July

A: 您好!中国南方航空公司。有什么能帮忙的?

B: 您好,我想订一张 7 月 21 号,即下周五去纽约的飞机票。

A: 对不起,7 月 21 号没有飞纽约的航班。

乘飞机 · Taking a Plane

21st.

B: That's too bad. What's the earliest flight available?

A: I can give you a reservation on Flight No. CZ 387 on July 22nd.

B: What about the flight schedule?

A: It departs at 12:10 and arrives at 15:10 next day.

B: Is it a non-stop flight?

A: Yes.

B: Sounds good. I'd like to take this flight.

A: Would you prefer first class or economy class?

B: Economy class.

A: And your name, please?

B: Edward Smith.

A: Mr. Smith, you can get things fixed through our agencies in Guangzhou. Do remember to bring your passport with you.

B: Yes, many thanks. Goodbye.

A: Bye.

B: 真糟糕, 那最早的航班是哪次?

A: 我可以为您预订 7 月 22 号 CZ387 次航班。

B: 该次航班的时间安排怎样?

A: 12 点 10 分起飞, 次日下午 15 点 10 分准点到达。

B: 是直飞么?

A: 是的。

B: 听起来不错。我决定就订这次航班的机票。

A: 您要订头等舱还是经济舱?

B: 经济舱。

A: 您的姓名是?

B: 爱德华·史密斯。

A: 那么史密斯先生, 您可以在我们广州的任何一个办事处办理手续。请您务必带上您的护照。

B: 好的, 非常感谢。再见。

A: 再见。

禁止使用手机

A: Good morning, welcome aboard.

B: Good morning. Can I use my cellular phone during this time?

A: Yes, you can use your cell phone during the boarding process until the aircraft door is closed.

B: Thank you. What should I do if I want to phone my family during the flight?

A: The aircraft is equipped with onboard phones. They do not interfere with the communication and navigation of the air-

A: 早上好, 欢迎乘坐本次航班。

B: 早上好, 这我能用我的手机么?

A: 可以, 您可以在机门关闭以前的登机过程中使用手机。

B: 谢谢。如果飞行过程中我想给家里人打电话该怎么办?

A: 本次航班装有机上电话。该电话不会扰乱交通联系和飞机的航行。

通讯及交通 · Correspondence & Transportation

B: So I can use the onboard phone during the flight?

A: Of course. They will be used at anytime before or during flight.

B: Thank you. It is very kind of you.

B: 这么说我可以在飞行中使用机上电话啦?

A: 当然啦, 飞行前和飞行中的任何时间都可以使用。

B: 真是太谢谢你了, 你人真好。

4. 办理登机

A: Is this the right counter to check in for this flight?

B: Yes, it is. Please put your luggage on the scale.

A: Your luggage is overweight. The free allowance for luggage is 20 kilos.

B: Oh, can I keep this little suitcase as hand-luggage?

A: OK, in this way it's just below the limit.

A: Here's your ticket and your boarding card.

B: All right. I will begin boarding soon.

A: 这次班机是在这个柜台办理登记手续吗?

B: 是的。请将您的行李放在秤上。

A: 您的行李超重了。免费行李限额是 20 公斤。

B: 哦, 那我可以把这个小手提箱随身携带吗?

A: 可以, 这样您的行李刚好低于限额。

A: 这是您的机票和登机牌。

B: 好的, 我马上要登机了。



Unit
15

乘地铁

Taking the Subway

文
化
链
接

Culture Links

大部分较大的城市都有地铁,如纽约、伦敦、哥本哈根、布宜诺斯艾利斯、悉尼和东京等。买票时,根据你要行走的路程来选择票价,把钱投入有狭缝的机器里,然后票就会从机器中弹出。在出入地铁站台时都要用到票,所以不要把票扔掉。没有人收票,只有机器。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 询问去地铁站 (1)

A: Which subway do I take to the Customs Hall, please?

B: Take the uptown A train and get off at the next station.

A: And where do I get to the subway?

B: Just go down those steps.

A: 请问我应该乘哪趟地铁去海关大厅?

B: 坐开往住宅区的 A 线车,在下一个站下车。

A: 我怎样才能找到地铁?

B: 从这些台阶走下去就可以了。

2. 询问去地铁站 (2)

A: Which line do I take for Greenwich Department store?

B: You can take the D, the F or the A. Just make sure you're going downtown.

A: How do I get down to the trains?

B: Take the escalator and then go to the right.

A: 我应该乘坐哪条线的地铁去格林威治百货商店?

B: 可以坐 D、F 或 A 线车。只要是确保往市区方向走就可以了。

A: 我怎么找到这几线地铁?

B: 坐电梯,然后走到右侧就可以了。

3. 询问去地铁站 (3)

A: Can you tell me the best way to get to Wall Street?

A: 能告诉我如何去华尔街最方便吗?

通讯及交通 · Correspondence & Transportation

B: You want the 7th Avenue Express, the Number 2.

A: Which way should I go?

B: Go straight down those stairs and follow the signs.

B: 你需要乘坐第七大街的 2 号线城际快车。

A: 我应该走哪边?

B: 沿着这些台阶往下走,沿途看路标就可以了。

4. 搭乘地铁

A: How do I get to Rockefeller Center?

B: Take the D train and go two stops.

A: Which platform is it on?

B: Go down the stairs over there.

A: 我怎样到达洛克菲勒中心?

B: 坐 D 线地铁,坐两站就到了。

A: 站台在哪里?

B: 那边有楼梯,走下去就可以了。

5. 询问车票折扣与优惠票

A: Excuse me. I want to go to Chinatown. Can you tell me which tube line I should take and where I should get off?

B: Let me show you this tube map. Here we are now, at Victoria Station. From here, take the Victoria Line to Green Park, and then change to the Piccadilly Line. Get off at Leicester Square. Chinatown is a short walk away.

A: Thank you. What's the fare?

B: A single ticket to Leicester Square is 1 pound and 80 pence. A return ticket is 3 pounds and 50 pence.

A: That sounds kind of expensive. I am a student. Can I get a discount?

B: Do you have an International Student Card? If you do, you can get 25% off. Or you can buy a Monthly Pass. That's quite a bit cheaper.

A: Well, I'm not staying here that long. I'm only going to be here about a week.

B: Then you can try a Weekly Pass. It's only £ 20 for Zone 1 & Zone 2. You can use it as many times as you like.

A: 请问,我要去中国城,应该坐哪条地铁线,要在哪站下车?

B: 让我为您解说一下这张地铁路线图。我们现在在这里,维多利亚站。从这里搭维多利亚线到格林公园站,接着换皮卡地里大道线。在莱斯特广场站下车,走一小段路就可以到中国城了。

A: 谢谢。请问车票多少钱?

B: 到莱斯特广场站的单程票是 1 英镑 80 便士,来回是 3 英镑 50 便士。

A: 好像有点贵。我是学生,有优惠吗?

B: 请问您有国际学生证吗,有的话可以打 75 折,或者您也可以买月票,那样会便宜不少。

A: 嗯,可是我不会在这里待很久,大概只会待一周。

B: 那么您可以买周票。在第一区与第二区乘地铁只要 20 英镑,而且不限搭乘次数。

乘地铁 · Taking the Subway

A: That sounds great. I'll take one.

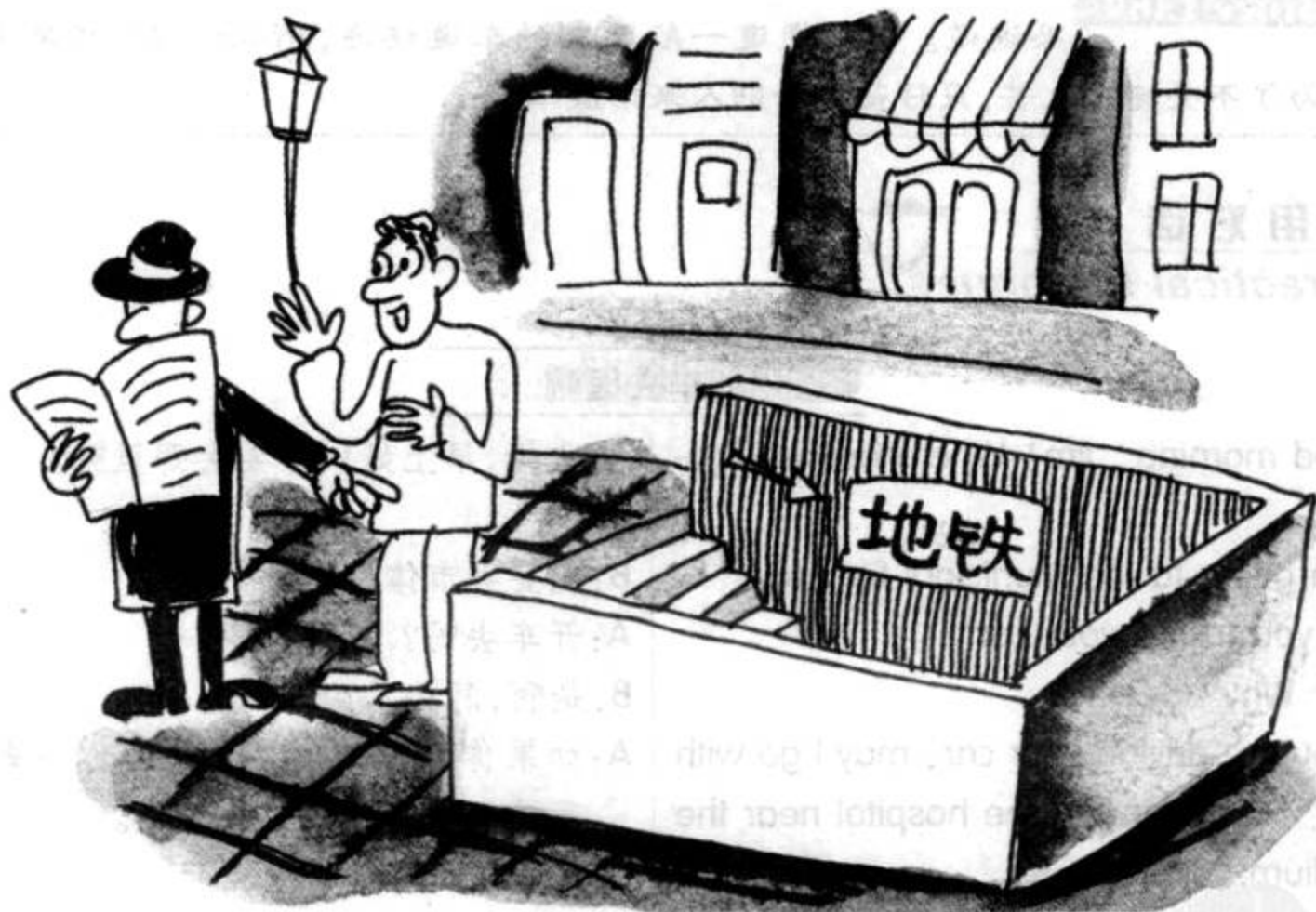
B: You have to go to the ticket counter and get your ticket there.

A: I see. You've been very helpful. Cheers.

A: 那很棒, 我就买一张。

B: 周票要到售票处购买。

A: 我知道了。你帮了很大的忙, 谢谢。



Unit
16

搭便车

Lifting

文化
链接

Culture Links

美国为了减少私人“开单车”(即一人开一辆车)的情况,有关部门出台了一个“HOV”(即多乘客通道)政策,鼓励一车多人,多人合坐一车。“HOV”通道规定车里乘客达到一定数量,就可上这条通道。这条通道一般比别的车道畅通,所以一些“开单车”的人,为了不受堵车之苦,只好花钱请别人来搭便车。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 搭便车去医院

A: Good morning, Jim! Where are you going?

B: I am going to the Municipal Stadium.

A: Are you taking your car?

B: Yes. Why?

A: If you are driving your car, may I go with you? I am going to the hospital near the Stadium.

B: Sure, why not? Let's go!

A: 吉姆,早上好!你要去哪里呢?

B: 我要去市体育场。

A: 开车去吗?

B: 是啊,怎么了?

A: 如果你开车去,我可以和你一起去吗?我要去体育场旁边的医院。

B: 当然好,为什么不呢?走吧!

2. 搭便车上班

A: Hi, Nancy. Which road do you usually take to the office?

B: A30, and then, I turn on to Peace Road.

A: Would you mind picking me up on your way to the office tomorrow?

B: Of course not. Where are you living? And where should I stop to pick you up?

A: 嗨,兰希,你上班通常都走哪条路?

B: 通常啊,A30公路,然后转到和平路上。

A: 明天上班路上搭你的便车方便么?

B: 当然。你现在住在哪里?我到哪儿去接你?

搭便车 · Lifting

A: I am living near Central Hospital. So if it is convenient for you. . .

B: It's all right. Why don't you wait for in front of the hospital at 8:30?

A: It is very kind of you.

A: 我住在中心医院附近, 如果你方便的话.....

B: 当然方便。何不八点半在中心医院正门等我呢?

A: 你真是太好了。

3. 搭便车(1)

A: Sally, what are you doing here?

B: I want to go downtown, but my car doesn't work. I don't know what I can do.

A: Don't worry. I can give you a lift downtown.

B: Thanks a lot.

A: 萨莉, 你在这儿干啥?

B: 我想进城, 但我的车坏了, 我不知道该怎么办。

A: 别着急, 搭我的便车吧!

B: 太谢谢了。

4. 搭便车(2)

A: Hey, what are you doing here?

B: I'm about to walk to David's house. My car has broken down.

A: Do you want a ride?

B: Oh, that's very nice of you. That'd be a great help.

A: 嘿, 你在这儿干什么?

B: 我要步行去大卫家, 我的车子坏了。

A: 你想搭车吗?

B: 哦, 你真好。你帮了我一个大忙。

5. 搭便车去邮局

A: Would you mind picking me up?

B: Where do you want to go?

A: The post office.

B: Sorry, it's out of my way.

A: 可以搭你的便车吗?

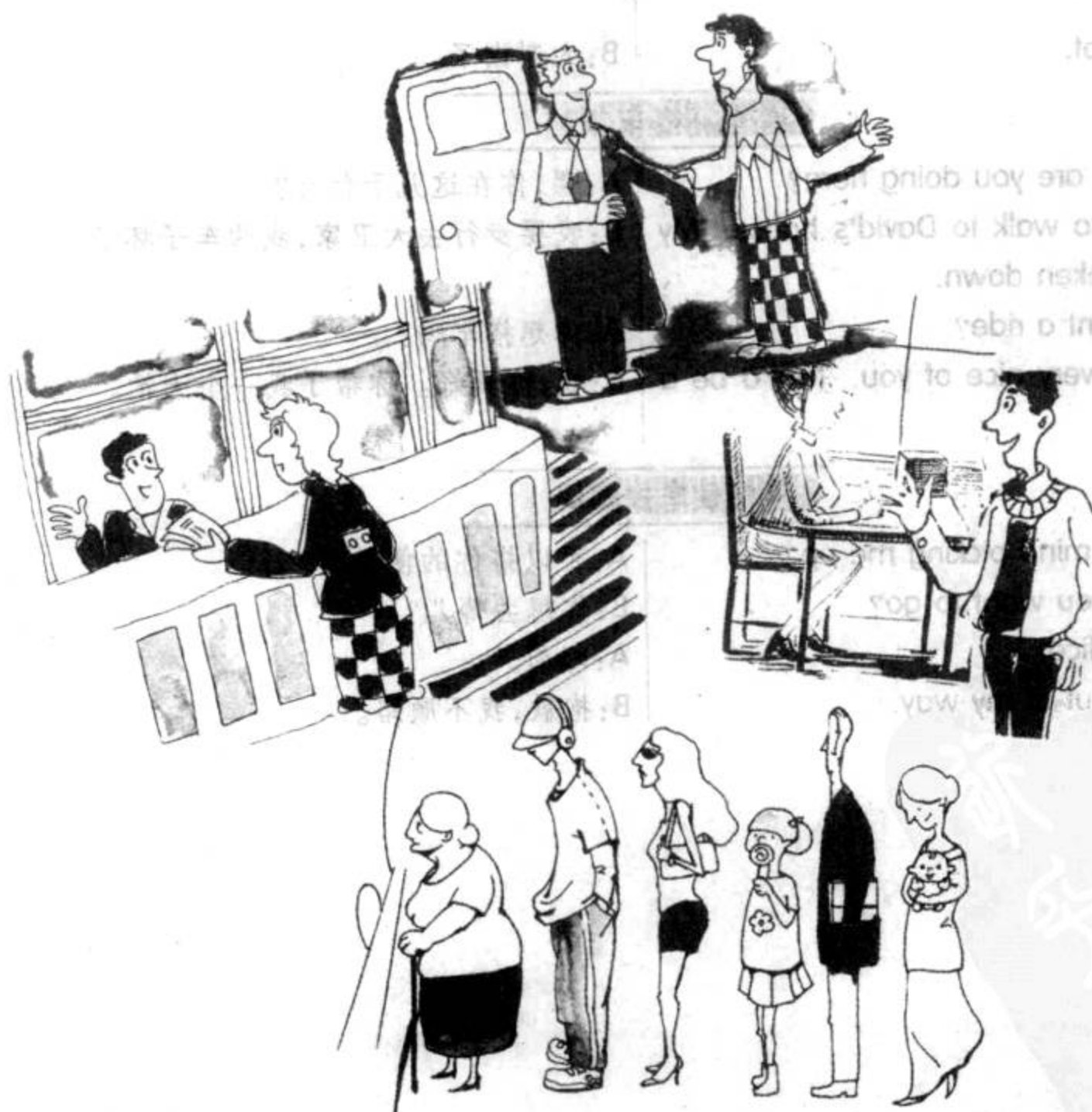
B: 你想去哪儿?

A: 邮局。

B: 抱歉, 我不顺路。



银行



Unit
1

开立账户

Open an Account

文化
链接

Culture Links

到银行办理业务时,要自觉排队。先拿服务号,等到叫号后便可到指定的窗口办理。没有轮到自己办理时,切不可逾越1米线(黄线),西方人特别忌讳自己办理业务时别人在旁边。

银行还办理保险箱租用业务,租用者可以在其内存放各种贵重物品,如文物、首饰、字画、文件等。保险箱的钥匙由租用者保管(电子保险箱则由个人设置密码)。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 开立带支票的活期存款账户(1)

A: I would like to open an account.

B: A deposit account or a current account?

A: Er, I am not sure. You see, I have monthly remittances sent to me from China and I would like to have the money paid into an account.

B: Then you'd better open a current account. The bank will give you a cheque book and you can take money out when you like.

A: Fine. What do I have to do?

B: Just fill in this form. Do you have any means of identification on you?

A: Will my passport do?

B: Sure.

A: 我要开立一个账户。

B: 没有支票的存款帐户还是有支票的活期存款帐户?

A: 嗯,我也拿不定主意。你知道,中国每个月有汇款寄给我,我要把它存入帐户。

B: 那么你最好还是开立一个有支票的活期存款账户为好。银行将给你一本支票簿,你随时可以取出存款。

A: 好的,我该办些什么手续呢?

B: 只要填一下这张表格。你是否带有身份证明文件?

A: 我的护照可以吗?

B: 当然可以。

银行 · At the Bank

2. 开立带支票的活期存款账户(2)

A: Excuse me, sir.

B: Yes, May I help you?

A: I'd like to cash a check. Would you please tell me which window should I go to?

B: You can cash checks over there at window 2.

A: Thanks a lot.

B: Anytime.

A: I'd like you to cash this check for sixty dollars, please.

B: Do you have an account with us?

A: No. Actually I'd like to open an account right now, and deposit these other checks.

B: What kind of account would you like to open?

A: A checking account.

B: Please go to window 5 first. Tell the clerk at window 5 that you want to open a checking account. He'll give you some forms. Fill them out, give him the checks you want to deposit, and after you finish everything, come back here. I'll tell you what to do next.

A: Thank you.

A: 打扰一下, 先生。

B: 您好, 我能效劳吗?

A: 我想兑现支票。请问我应该到几号窗口办理?

B: 在那边的二号窗口。

A: 谢谢。

B: 不客气。

A: 请你帮我兑现这张六十美元的支票。

B: 你在本银行有账户吗?

A: 没有。事实上我正想开个案, 把其他的支票存进去。

B: 你想开那种账户?

A: 活期存款账户。

B: 请你先到五号窗口。告诉五号窗口的职员您要开一个活期存款的账户。他会给您一些表格。您把表格填好, 把要存的支票交给他, 等一切完成以后, 您再过来这里。我会告诉您下一步怎么做。

A: 谢谢你。

3. 开立带支票的活期存款账户(3)

A: I want to open current account. What's the proper procedure?

B: First you fill out the application form and then we'll issue you a passbook.

A: What's the annual interest rate?

B: It varies from time to time. At present it's 2.6%.

A: 我要开个活期储蓄户头, 怎样办理相关手续?

B: 你先填好这张申请表, 然后我们就签发给你一本存折。

A: 年利率是多少?

B: 利率经常变动, 现在是 2.6%。

开立账户 · Open an Account

A: Can I open a checking account?

B: Sure, but you have to deposit enough money before you can write out your checks.

A: What will happen if I overdraw?

B: There will be a penalty of \$ 5.00 for each check over drawn.

A: May I deposit these cheques?

B: Certainly, but you'd have to sign your name on them, Sir.

A: Where should I sign?

B: Endorse on each of the cheques, please.

A: 我能开一个有支票的活期储蓄账户吗?

B: 当然可以, 但你必须有足够的存款才能开支票。

A: 透支了怎么办?

B: 每张透支的支票要罚款 5 美元。

A: 我可以存这些支票吗?

B: 当然可以, 但你得签名, 先生。

A: 我该在哪里签名?

B: 请在每张支票的背面签名。

4. 开立支票账户(1)

A: Good morning, sir. Can I help you?

B: Good morning. I want to open a checking account. Do I have to be a regular customer of your bank?

A: No sir, not at all. What you should do is to fill out this form and make your initial deposit.

A: 早上好, 先生。能为您做些什么?

B: 早上好。我想开一个支票账户。我必须 是贵行的常年用户么?

A: 不需要, 先生。您需要做的就是填好这 张表然后存入起存额。

5. 开立支票账户(2)

A: What's the minimum deposit for opening a checking account?

B: 100 dollars.

A: I want to deposit 500 dollars.

B: Very well, sir.

A: Let me have a look at the form. What does it mean by secret number?

B: We ask that for identification purpose in case you lose your passbook, sir. We use it to positively identify you.

A: 开立支票帐户的最低存款额是多少?

B: 100 美元。

A: 我存 500 美元。

B: 好的, 先生。

A: 让我看看表格。密码是什么意思?

B: 是为了确认所用, 如果您遗失了存折, 我们用它确认您的身份。

6. 开立定期账户

A: Yes, sir?

B: May I have an account opened here?

A: 先生, 有事吗?

B: 这里可以开户头吗?

银行 • At the Bank

A: Certainly. A deposit account or current account, please?

B: A current account.

A: What's the sum?

B: It's 2,000 dollars. Here you are.

A: Here is the form for you to fill.

B: All right. Here you are.

A: Here is the receipt and the passcard.

B: Thank you.

A: 可以。请问你要定期的还是活期的?

B: Sure, but you have to deposit enough

B: 活期的。

A: 数额多少?

B: 两千美元。钱在这里。

A: 这张表请你填一下。

B: 好的。给你。

A: 这是你的收据和自动存取款卡。

B: 谢谢你。

7. 兑换旅行支票

A: Can I help you?

B: Yes, I need some traveler's checks.

A: How much do you need?

B: Three thousand US dollars.

A: All right, can I have your passbook?

B: Yes, here you go.

A: What amounts do you want the checks in?

B: It's all the same to me.

A: Here you are.

B: Thanks.

A: 我能帮你什么忙吗?

B: 我要一些旅行支票。

A: 你要多少?

B: 要3,000美元的旅行支票。

A: 好的,能把你的存折给我吗?

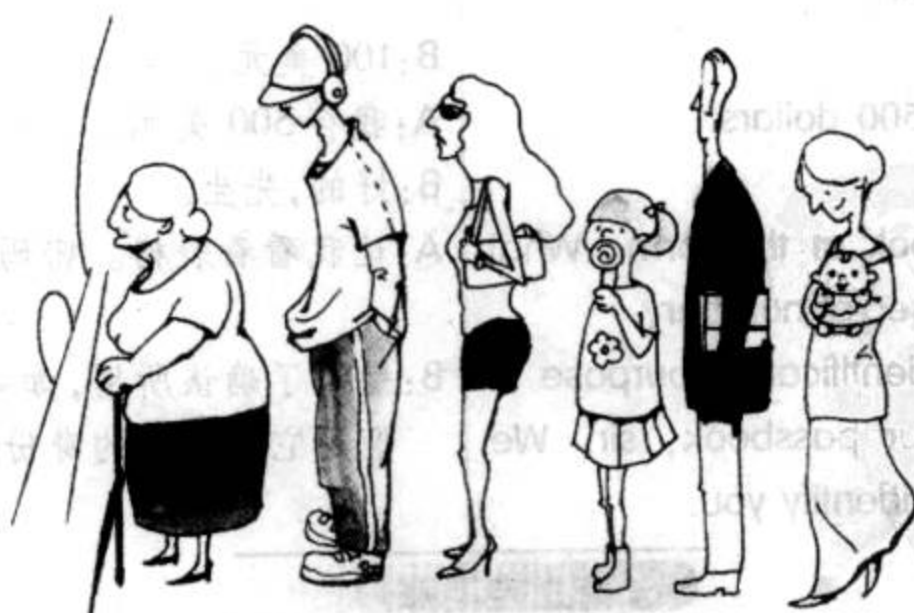
B: 好,给你。

A: 你要什么票面的?

B: 我无所谓。

A: 请收好。

B: 谢谢。



Unit
2

存款

Deposit

文化
链接

Culture Links

银行信用卡和自动提款机 ATM 的推广使用,避免了大量携带现金之苦,既方便,又安全,大大方便了用户。银行的计算机联网,网上银行开设极大地提高了工作效率,也方便了用户。但是网络的安全也引起了人们的极大关注,阻止黑客的入侵,严防个人的信用卡号(账号)被盗用是至关重要的。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 存定期

A: What kind of deposit has the highest interest rate?

B: The interest rate for time deposit is much higher than current accounts.

A: How long should I deposit the money in the bank in order to get the higher interest?

B: The three-year maturities are very popular.

A: Can I withdraw the money before it matures?

B: Of course you can. But in that case, you will receive a premature penalty. That means you will not get the stated interest.

A: 哪种存款利息最高?

B: 定期存款利息比活期存款利息要高得多。

A: 我存多长时间能拿到最高的利息。

B: 三年期的最受青睐。

A: 我能提前取款吗?

B: 你当然可以。但是那样的话,你会因为提前取款而被扣除一部分利息,也就是说,你得不到原定的利息。

2. 存活期

A: Good morning. I'd like to deposit 6,000

A: 早上好。我想存 6,000 元到我的活期账

银行 · At the Bank

yuan to my current account.

B: Ok. Please give me your passbook, the deposit slip and the money.

A: Here you are.

B: I am sorry. There is a counterfeit bill in the notes you gave me just now.

A: What? I can't believe it. How can you explain it?

B: We found no watermark on this note. According to the regulation, the bank has the right to confiscate it. We will give you a receipt.

A: I am sorry, but I am really innocent.

上。

B: 你好。请把你的存折、存款单和钱给我。

A: 给。

B: 对不起,你给我的钱里有一张假钞。

A: 什么? 我不信。你能给我解释一下吗?

B: 我们发现这张钞票上没有水印。根据规定,银行有权没收假钞,我们会给你一张收据。

A: 对不起,但是我真的太冤枉了。

3. 续存

A: Please wait one meter away from the counter till you turn. Next please.

B: Well, it's my turn as last. My TD matures today. I'd like to renew it.

A: Ok. Please tell me what maturity do you want again?

B: Can I deposit the money for another three years?

A: Of course you can. Do you want the automatic renewing service? That is, if you are busy or if you forget on the day when your CD matures, the bank will renew it for you. So it will avoid your loss in the interest.

B: That sounds very convenient. I'd like to have that service.

A: 请在一米线外等候。下一个。

B: 终于轮到我了,我的定期存单今天到期了,我要续存。

A: 好的。请告诉我你要存多长时间?

B: 我能存3年期的吗?

A: 当然可以。你想不想使用自动续存服务? 就是说,如果你在存单到期时正忙,或者你到时忘了来续存,银行会帮你续存好的。这样可以使你避免利息的损失。

B: 听起来很方便嘛,就给我办这项服务吧。

4. 租保险箱

A: Can I rent a safe deposit box?

B: Certainly. What sizes do you like, small, medium or large?

A: How much do you charge for a medium

A: 能租给我一个保险箱吗?

B: 行,你要小号的、中号的还是大号的?

A: 租一个中号的一年要多少钱?

one?

B: 30 dollars a year.

A: A medium size, please.

B: OK.

B: 一年要收 30 美元。

A: 租一个中号的。

B: 好的。

5. 存外快

A: What are you going to do with your extra money?

B: I'm going to save it for later.

A: Don't squirrel your extra money away like that. Let's go out and have some fun.

B: No, I have to think about my future now.

A: 你打算怎样使用这笔外快呢?

B: 我打算存起来以备日后使用。

A: 别存, 我们出去开心一下吧。

B: 不, 我现在就必须为自己的将来作打算。

6. 存款

A: I'd like to deposit some money.

B: Have you got your passcard with you?

A: Yes, here you are.

B: Now enter your code, please.

A: Yes, All right.

B: Now how much would you deposit?

A: 300 dollars.

B: That's it. Here is your receipt and your passcard.

A: 我想存款。

B: 你带存取款卡了吗?

A: 带了, 给你。

B: 请输入你的密码。

A: 好的。

B: 你想存多少?

A: 300 美元。

B: 好了。这是你的收据和取款卡。



Unit
3

取款

Drawing

文化
链接

Culture Links

去银行之前,先要了解银行的营业时间。英美银行一般在早上9:30开始营业,下午4点关门。每周五天工作制,周六周日休息。到了银行,先填存款或取款单。不管有几个人,都要自觉排队。在别人存款或取款时,你必须站在离他一两米远的地方等候,千万不要围在窗口或别人身旁。听到营业员叫时,再过去办理业务。取款可说:I'd like to withdraw \$ 300 from my account. 我想取300美元。存款则说:I want to deposit \$ 200 in my account. 我想存200美元。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 取款(1)

A: Excuse me, but can I draw on my account for payment of things I buy in China?

B: Certainly, sir. How much do you draw?

A: RMB 8,000, please. Would you please tell me my balance?

B: Yes, sir. Your balance is RMB 34,000.

A: 劳驾,请问我能不能提取存款来支付我在中国买东西的费用?

B: 当然可以,先生。您要取多少钱?

A: 请给我人民币8,000元。请把我账号上的节余金额告诉我好吗?

B: 好的,先生。您的账户余额是人民币34,000元。

2. 取款(2)

A: Miss, I'd like to withdraw \$ 800.

B: Have you filled out the withdraw slip?

A: Yes, I have.

B: Can I have your bank book, please?

A: Here you are, please.

B: Key in your pass code, please. /Enter

A: 小姐,我要取800美元。

B: 你填了取款单吗?

A: 是的,填好了。

B: 请把你的存折给我好吗?

A: 给你。

B: 请输入你的密码。

your pass code.

A: Yes.

B: Sorry, the code isn't correct, enter it again, please.

A: Pardon? I'll try once more.

B: OK. How would you like it?

A: It's all the same to me.

A: 输好了。

B: 抱歉, 密码有误, 请再输一次。

A: 什么? 我再试一次。

B: 对了, 你要什么票面的钱?

A: 无所谓。

3. 取款(3)

A: Can I help you, Sir?

B: Yes, I'd like to withdraw some money.

A: Fill in the slip, stating the exact amount you wish to withdraw, please.

B: OK. Here's my bank book, is that all right?

A: OK, do you want large notes or small ones?

B: In 50 Yuan or 100 Yuan would be fine.

A: Here's the cash for you.

B: Thanks.

A: 先生, 能帮你什么忙吗?

B: 我要取点钱。

A: 请填好这张取款单, 将要取款的数目写清楚。

B: 填好了, 这是我的存折, 对吗?

A: 可以, 你要大票面的钱还是小票面的钱?

B: 票面 50 元或 100 元的都行。

A: 请收下你的钱。

B: 谢谢。

4. 取支票

A: Can I help you?

B: Yes, I need some traveler's checks.

A: How much do you need?

B: Three thousand US dollars.

A: All right, can I have your passbook?

B: Yes, here you go.

A: What amounts do you want the checks in?

B: It's all the same to me.

A: Here you are.

B: Thanks.

A: 我能帮你什么忙吗?

B: 我要一些旅行支票。

A: 你要多少?

B: 要 3,000 美元的旅行支票。

A: 好的, 能把你的存折给我吗?

B: 好, 给你。

A: 你要什么票面的?

B: 我无所谓。

A: 请收下。

B: 谢谢。

Unit
4

兑换支票

Cashing Checks

文化
链接

Culture Links

旅行支票的票面分 10、20、50、100 元,可以对照现款用。用时,要当着对方的面签下你的签名式样,并与支票上已有的你的背书式样应相对无误(再加上有照片的身份证明),对方才收。如果不签名,支票就无效,所以不怕被偷,通常在购买的时候,银行会收一点手续费(service charge)。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues

1. 兑换普通支票(1)

A: Mister, I have an account now.
B: Now, how would you like this check cashed, madam?
A: Six tens will be fine.
B: Here you are.
A: Thanks. Er, mister, if I want to deposit checks next time, what should I do?
B: Just make out a deposit slip and come here during bank hours. That's from 9 a. m. to 3 p. m.

A: 先生,我现在有户头了。
B: 你要怎样兑换这张支票,太太?
A: 六张十元的就行了。
B: 这是您的六十元。
A: 谢谢。呃,先生,如果下次我要存支票,我要怎么做?
B: 只要填写好存款条,在上班时间来就可以了。我们营业时间为早上九点到下午三点。

2. 兑换普通支票(2)

A: Good morning, sir. Can I help you?
B: Good morning. I'd like to cash this check.
A: Yes, sir. Can you show you identity?
B: What about the driving license?
A: Don't you have any other identification?
B: I am sorry. I only have my driving license

A: 早上好,先生。能为您效劳吗?
B: 早上好,我想兑现这张支票。
A: 好的,先生。请出示您的身份证件好吗?
B: 我能不能用我的驾驶执照?
A: 您没有别的什么证件吗?
B: 不好意思,我只带了驾驶执照。

with me.

A: Ok. Would you please sign your name on the back of the check?

B: Thank you. Here you are.

A: How do you want your money?

B: Would you give me some in twenties and tens?

A: All right. Please wait for a moment.

A: 好吧。在支票反面签下名好吗?

B: 谢谢你。给你支票。

A: 您要什么样的面值?

B: 你能给我一些 20 美元和 10 美元面值的钞票吗?

A: 可以。请您稍等。

3. 兑换旅行支票(1)

A: Would you cash these travelers' checks, please?

B: How would you like them?

A: In ten dollar bill, please.

B: Is there anything else?

A: Yes, I'd like to know how to send money to France.

A: 能兑换这些旅行支票吗?

B: 您想要什么面值的现金?

A: 10 美元的。

B: 还有什么需要吗?

A: 是的, 我想知道如何汇钱去法国。

4. 兑换旅行支票(2)

A: I'm going to the United States to attend my daughter's commencement.

B: How nice! Are you going to convert some RMB to US dollars?

A: Yes. But I will not take much cash with me. I can ask the bank to give me the traveler's checks. So it will be safer.

B: How can you cash them when you arrive in the United States?

A: I will go to the bank, give them my check, show them one piece of my identifications, and the most important thing is that I should sign my name to endorse the check.

B: It sounds quite simple. Next time when I travel abroad, I will apply for this kind of check too.

A: 我要到美国去参加我女儿的毕业典礼。

B: 真好! 那你准备兑换一些美元吗?

A: 是啊。但我不会随身带很多现金。我可以请银行给我旅行支票, 这样会更安全一些。

B: 你到了美国后怎么把它们兑成现金呢?

A: 我会到银行去, 把支票交给他们, 然后出示我的证件, 最重要的一点就是 I 应在支票上签名。

B: 听起来还挺简单的。下次我到国外去旅游, 也要申请这种支票。

Unit
5

申请贷款

Applying for a Loan

文化
链接

Culture Links

对于每个想出国的学生来说,留学贷款对资金证明帮助不小。如果学生家中资金没有长期存在银行,出国前一下子开出 40 万元的存款证明,对多数家庭来说都比较困难。有了银行做担保,这个问题就解决了,银行贷款给申请者,移民局凭此可以相信申请者的资金能力。对很多家里没有长期存款证明的学生来说,银行开据证明解决了以往向移民局“解释不清”的问题。

但留学贷款也存在一些弊端,刘芃芃举例分析,如果你到新西兰读三到四年的本科或硕士,那么贷款利息也是一笔不小的数目,而新西兰的这项政策又规定,学生必须被确定终止学业之后方可停止贷款。这项规定对长时间留学的人来说并不利好,建议出国读 1+1 课程或者短期课程的学生申请贷款,这样还款的压力会相对较小。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 申请商务贷款

A: Bill, I'm expecting a big increase in turnover with the coming of the Mid-Autumn Festival. But wholesalers are unwilling to supply my orders unless I pay them an advance of 50% of the full price, for my business is fairly new. I hope that you can make me an advance on loan.

B: Do you have stocks or a title deed of a house to pledge as security?

A: No. I should be grateful if you could see your way to make an advance against my personal reputation. You may inspect my accounts. From my accounts you can

A: 比尔,随着中秋节的到来,我预计营业额将会大大增加。但除非我预付 50% 的总价,否则批发商不肯给我货,原因是我的生意才刚起步。我希望你能贷给我一笔预付款。

B: 你有没有股票或房屋所有权证可做担保?

A: 没有。如果你肯根据我个人的信誉贷款给我,我会很感激。你可以检查我的账目,从账目上你可看出我向来都能按时履行所有义务。

申请贷款 · Applying for a Loan

see that I've promptly met all my obligations.

B: We do not allow any request for a loan against personal security. This is a common regulation. But we may consider it if you can provide a reliable guarantor.

A: Yes, I can. You know Mr. Macready, the famous car dealer here in New York. He agreed to act as my guarantor of a loan in the sum of US \$ 10,000 until the end of this year.

B: Good. He is a man of high standing. I think we can grant the loan you need after some further discussion. But I suggest you borrow on overdraft instead of on loan.

B: 我们不允许依个人信用批准贷款,这是常规。不过如果你能提供一个可靠的担保人,我们或许可以考虑。

A: 好的,我可以。你认识麦克里迪先生吧,纽约本地有名的汽车商人。他同意做我的担保人,保1万美元到年底。

B: 好。他是个信誉很好的人。我想我们更进一步讨论后,能批准你贷款。不过我建议 you 以透支方式而不是贷款方式贷款。

申请住房贷款

A: I am very interested in a new apartment near the Tianxing Plaza, but the price is very high, I really can't afford it.

B: How much is it for each square meter? How large is the apartment?

A: It's 7500 yuan per square meter, and I really like the one with three bedrooms and a large living room. Its total area is about 80 square meters.

B: That surely will cost you a lot of money. Are you going to make a full payment?

A: Do you think I am rich enough to make it? I am thinking about buying the apartment by installments. The real estate agency says if I pay a 25% down payment, I can move in at once.

B: If sounds so tempting. Why not go applying for a loan from the bank? They charge very low interest, so you can

A: 我很喜欢位于天兴广场附近的一套新房子,可是价钱太高了,我真的买不起。

B: 多少钱一平方米,房子有多大?

A: 要7,500元一平方米,我很喜欢这套三居室,带有一间大客厅的房子。它的总面积有80平方米。

B: 那真得花掉你不少钱啊。你准备一次付清吗?

A: 你以为我有那么多钱?我在考虑申请分期付款。房产商说如果我首付百分之二十五的房款就可以马上入住。

B: 听上去挺诱人的。你何不到银行去申请贷款呢?他们的贷款利息非常低,你还可以选择10年期或20年期还清。

银行 · At the Bank

choose whether to pay up the balance in 10 or 20 years.

3. 申请个人汽车消费贷款

A: Excuse me, is this the Auto Consumer Loan Center?

B: Yes. Is there anything I can do for you?

A: Could you tell me something about the terms and interest rates for personal automobile consumer loan?

B: The deadline is normally no more than 5 years with the interest adopted according to the corresponding lending rates announced by the PBC.

A: I plan to take the loan for 3 years.

B: Well, the yearly interest rate is 5.49% for 3 years. I'm sure you are qualified to apply for this loan.

A: What about the loan repayment?

B: You may choose a repayment pattern by consulting with our bank, for example, payment of equal amount of principal or of principal and interest on monthly installments.

A: Does that mean I should deposit sufficient money to my account prior to the monthly payment date so that you can directly deduct the repayment of the principal and interest?

B: Exactly. You are permitted to effect and early payment in part or in full with the consent of our bank.

A: That's very thoughtful of you. Thank you so much.

B: You're welcome.

A: 请问,这儿是汽车消费贷款中心吗?

B: 是啊。需要我为您做点什么事吗?

A: 请您告诉我个人汽车消费贷款的期限和利率情况好吗?

B: 按照规定,汽车消费贷款期限最长不超过5年,利率按中国人民银行规定的同期同档利率执行。

A: 我打算贷3年期。

B: 3年期贷款年利率为5.49%。我相信您符合申请此项贷款的要求。

A: 如何还款呢?

B: 您可以和我行协商后选择一种还款方式,例如选择按月分期付款或等额支付本息。

A: 是不是在每个月付款之前,我应在账户上存入足够的钱,以便贵行能直接扣还贷款本金和利息?

B: 正是这样。经我行同意,您可以部分或全额提前还贷。

A: 贵行想得真是周到。非常感谢。

B: 不客气。

Unit
6

兑换外币

Exchanging Foreign Currency

文化
链接

Culture Links

出国尽量少带现金,多使用支票和信用卡。

兑换外币,要在正规的金融点办理。切勿贪便宜或图省事到

黑市上兑换,以免上当受骗。

国外许多公共场所、服务场合,甚至连厕所都要收小费,所以带上一些零钱是必要的。但是,对政府机关人员、海关人员、警察等公职人员绝对不能给小费。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1 英镑兑换美元

A: Could I change these pounds for dollars, please?

B: Do you want small bills or large?

A: It doesn't matter.

B: Do you want anything else?

A: Yes, I'd like to know the exchange rate for yen.

A: 我能把这些英镑换成美元吗?

B: 您是想换成大面额的还是小面额的?

A: 什么都行。

B: 还有什么别的需要吗?

A: 是的,我想知道现在的日元汇率。

2 兑换小额钞票

A: Could you change these for me, please?

B: What would you like?

A: Twenties and some smaller bills, please.

B: Anything else?

A: Yes. Could you tell me my balance? Here's my account number.

A: 能为我兑换一下钱吗?

B: 你想要什么面额的?

A: 请给我 20 元和更小一些面值的钱。

B: 还有别的需求吗?

A: 是的,能告诉我我的账户余额是多少吗?这是我的账号。

银行 · At the Bank

3. 人民币兑换美元

A: I will travel to Southeast Asia this summer, so I need to exchange some US dollars. Can I get the foreign currency at any bank?

B: I don't think you can. In China, our currency is not freely convertible yet.

A: Do you mean there is no way to get any foreign money?

B: No. You can go to the Bank of China to exchange some US dollars at the current exchange rate of the day you exchange them. The maximum amount you can exchange is \$ 2,000.

A: Only \$ 2,000? Are there any other ways to get the money exchanged?

B: The only official way is to go to Bank of China.

A: I'd better take more dollars with me. It seems that I need to borrow some from my friends.

A: 我今年夏天要到东南亚去旅游,所以需要兑换点美元。我能在任何一家银行换到外币吗?

B: 不能。在中国,人民币还不能自由兑换。

A: 你是说没有办法换到外币吗?

B: 不是。你可以到中国银行去以当天的外汇兑换率换到美元。你最多可以兑换2,000美元。

A: 只有2,000美元? 有没有其他途径兑换外币?

B: 中国银行兑换是惟一的官方途径。

A: 我最好多带点美元。看来我得试试能不能到朋友那里去借一点。

人民币兑换人民币

A: Can I help you, Madam?

B: Yes, I'd like to exchange some US dollars into RMB.

A: How much would you like to exchange?

B: What's the exchange rate for RMB?

A: It's US 100 for RMB 802 today.

B: I'd like to exchange 3,000.

A: Fill out this exchange memo, please.

B: Yes. Here you are.

A: Wait a second, please... These are 24,060 RMB and the receipt, please check them.

B: All right, thank you so much, good-bye.

A: 夫人,我能帮你什么忙吗?

B: 我要将一些美元兑换成人民币。

A: 你要兑换多少?

B: 人民币的兑换率是多少?

A: 今天100美元兑换802元人民币。

B: 我要兑换3,000美元。

A: 请填写好这张兑换表。

B: 填好了,请收下。

A: 请稍等……这是你的24,060元人民币和收据,请查点一下。

B: 好的,非常感谢你,再见。

兑换外币 · Exchanging Foreign Currency

A: Good-bye.

A: 再见。

5. 电汇兑现

A: I've got a telegraphic order. Will you cash it?

A: 我有张电汇单, 能帮我兑现吗?

B: Have you got any identification (ID) with you?

B: 你带身份证件了吗?

A: Yes. Here is my passport.

A: 带了, 这是我的护照。

B: What currency will you have?

B: 你想要什么外汇?

A: US dollars, please.

A: 请给我美元。

B: All right, and how will you have it?

B: 好的, 票额怎么搭配?

A: 500 in twenty dollar bills and the rest in a dollar bills.

A: 五百块要二十元一张的, 其余的给一美元一张的。

B: Here you are.

B: 给你钱。

A: Please count.

A: 请点一下。

6. 询问货币兑换业务

A: May I help you?

A: 您需要什么服务吗?

B: Yes. Do you exchange foreign money here?

B: 需要。请问你们这儿兑换外币吗?

A: Yes. Our bank is authorized to deal with foreign exchange.

A: 是。我行经授权可以办理外汇业务。

B: What kinds of currency do you change?

B: 你们银行兑换哪几种货币?

A: We can change only three kinds of currency, USD, Japanese Yen and HK Dollar in our savings office.

A: 我们储蓄所只能兑换三种货币, 美元、日元和港币。

B: Could you tell me what the exchange rate for USD is today?

B: 您能告诉我今天的美元汇率是多少吗?

A: The buying rate is 826.44 yuan for 100 dollars.

A: 银行买入价是每 100 美元换 826.44 元人民币。

B: I want to change some US dollars to cover my expense here.

B: 我想换一些美元来支付我在这里的一些费用。

A: Please go to Counter No. 2, the foreign exchange counter. It's over there.

A: 请到 2 号柜台, 外汇柜台办理。就在那边。

B: Thank you.

B: 谢谢。

Chapter 9

业余活动

Activities in Spare Time



Unit
1

收藏

Collecting

文化
链接

Culture Links

美国的硬币收藏正在发生可喜的变化,它已不再是一些懂得“钱币集藏”意义的专业收藏者独有的爱好,而是正在走向大众。钱币集藏的流行,部分归功于纪念美国 50 州的 25 美分纪念币项目。美国在 1999 年至 2008 年间要发行代表每一个州的硬币,使得硬币集藏爱好者可以在成堆的零钱中搜寻自己还没有的 25 美分州纪念币。许多爱好者把搜集到的硬币嵌入专为 25 分币配备的纸板里。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



情景对话

A: Hi, Bill. Do you like collecting stamps or coins? I got much fun from it.

B: No, I don't like it. I found it too time-consuming. Besides, I am not as patient as you are.

A: I agree with you that collecting stamps needs patience. Don't you think some children are doing much better than us, the grown-ups?

B: I don't quite catch you. What do the small kids do?

A: A lot of children are now crazy about collecting cards that are put inside the instant noodle packages. The clever producer designed many different cards

A: 嗨, 比尔。你喜欢集邮、集币吗? 我发现这很有意思。

B: 不, 我不喜欢。我觉得它太花时间了。而且我不像你那么有耐心。

A: 我觉得你说的集邮要有耐心是真的。你有没有发现有些小孩子比我们大人还有耐心。

B: 我不太明白你说的是什么。小孩子做什么了?

A: 如今好多小孩子都在发疯似地收集一种放在方便面里的卡片。精明的制面商设计了许多不同的英雄人物卡片。他们把卡片放在方便面袋里, 而且许诺谁要是

业余活动 · Activities in Spare Time

printed with the heroes. They put the cards into the packages, and promised to give those who would collect cards of all the heroes some special gifts.

B: So do the children devote themselves to this?

A: Yes, of course. Do you think it is a hobby?

能集齐所有英雄人物的卡片, 就会给谁特别的礼物。

B: 所以孩子们把时间都放在收集卡片上了?

A: 那当然。你认为这是不是业余爱好?

2. 集邮(1)

A: James, I hear you have a large collection of stamps. Is that true?

B: Yes. I'm really proud of it. I have thousands of stamps from most of the countries of the world.

A: Oh, that's great. How did you get all of them?

B: Sometimes I take used stamps off letter envelopes, but mostly are the ones that my dad brought back from his overseas travels.

A: 詹姆斯, 我听说你收集了许多邮票。是真的吗?

B: 是的, 我确实以此为荣。我有来自世界上大部分国家的数千张邮票。

A: 哦, 太棒了! 你是怎么收集起这些邮票的?

B: 有时我把信封上用过的邮票拿下来, 但大部分是我爸爸去国外旅行时给我带回来的纪念邮票。

3. 集邮(2)

A: I heard you had spent so much time and money in collecting stamps.

B: No, not so much, only in my spare time with fifty yuan on it a month.

A: When did you begin collecting stamps?

B: Since I was six years old.

A: Oh, you must have a big collection by now.

A: 我听说你在集邮上花了大量时间和金钱。

B: 不, 不太多, 只是用业余时间, 每月只花50元钱。

A: 你什么时候开始集邮的?

B: 6岁开始的。

A: 哦, 到现在你一定收集得很多了。

4. 广泛收集

A: What's your hobby?

B: I like collecting things.

A: 你有什么爱好?

B: 我喜欢收集东西。

收藏 · Collecting

A: Oh, that's interesting. And about what kind of things?

B: Several things. For example, various coins, stamps, stones and so on.

A: Stone? I know many people collect coins and stamps, but stones...

A: 哦, 那倒是挺有趣的。你都收集些什么东西?

B: 我收集好几样东西呢。比如, 有各种各样的钱币、邮票、石头什么的。

A: 石头? 我知道很多人收集钱币和邮票, 但是石头……



Unit
2

体育运动

Sports

文化
链接

Culture Links

美国是个热爱体育的大国,几乎每个人都参加体育活动,不是这种运动的爱好者就是那种运动的爱好者。在美国,无论是集体的或个人的运动项目,人们都极其喜爱。对于你以前没有玩过的运动,你不妨试一试。人们通常都乐于帮助初学者。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 闲聊运动

A: What do you do in your spare time?

B: I like to play golf and badminton. What do you usually do every evening?

A: I just like to sleep like a lazy cat.

A: 你怎么打发你的业余时间?

B: 我喜欢打高尔夫球和羽毛球。你通常每天晚上都做什么?

A: 我就喜欢像懒猫一样睡大觉。

2. 谈论户外运动

A: What kind of sports do you like?

B: Anything outdoor is preferred.

A: Are you keen on outdoor sports?

B: I love attending outdoor sporting events even though I am not always a big fan.

A: Everybody in my family loves the outdoor sports, especially on weekends.

B: That is great.

A: Open-air exercises will do us good. We had better do some outdoor exercises every day.

A: 你喜欢哪种运动?

B: 所有的户外运动我都喜欢。

A: 你对户外运动着迷吗?

B: 我喜欢参加户外运动但并不是很痴迷。

A: 我家里每个人都喜爱户外运动,特别是在周末的时候。

B: 真是太棒了。

A: 户外运动对我们有好处。我们最好每天做一些户外运动。

3. 跑步运动

A: Wake up, darling.

B: What for? It's only 5 o'clock in the morning.

A: You forgot? We're going to jog.

B: This early? I haven't had enough sleep.

A: Get out of bed! It's our agreement. Don't break it on the first day.

B: All right! Let me take a shower.

A: No, you can take a shower after we come back. Now get up and get dressed.

B: What shall I wear?

A: Sportswear and jogging shoes!

B: I don't have jogging shoes.

A: Yes, you have. We bought them yesterday.

B: We did? ... Oh, look! It's spotting with rain outside. We can't go jogging this morning.

A: It isn't raining outside and we are going to jog this morning. Come on! Get dressed.

B: But ...

A: No buts. It'll be good for your health, and keep you in shape as well.

B: All right. But you have to understand that I'm doing it for your sake.

A: No, it's for your own sake.

B: I'm ready. ... It's dark and chilly outside.

A: Let's warm up before we go. Ready? Do as I do.

A: 起床啦, 亲爱的。

B: 做什么? 现在才凌晨五点。

A: 你忘了吗? 我们要去晨跑。

B: 这么早? 我没睡够呢。

A: 起床! 我们说好了的。别在第一天就不遵守。

B: 好! 我先冲个凉。

A: 不行, 回来以后你再冲凉。现在起床穿衣服。

B: 我要穿什么?

A: 运动服和慢跑鞋啊!

B: 我没有慢跑鞋。

A: 你有, 我们昨天买的。

B: 是吗? ... 哦, 你看外面在下毛毛雨了, 我们今天早上没办法去慢跑了。

A: 外面没有在下雨, 我们要去慢跑。快! 穿衣服。

B: 可是 ...

A: 别可是了。慢跑对你的健康有益, 还可以保持你的身材。

B: 好吧。可是你要明白, 我这么做都是为了你。

A: 不, 是为了你自己。

B: 我准备好了 ... 外面又黑又冷。

A: 我们先暖暖身再出门。好了吗? 我做什么你就跟我做。

4. 慢跑运动

A: I'm tired, Larry. Can we have a break?

B: We just started about twenty minutes

A: 我累了, 拉瑞。我们能不能歇一会儿?

B: 我们二十分钟前才出发的。

业余活动 · Activities in Spare Time

ago.

A: I know, but I'm tired. My stomach feels funny.

B: Didn't you sleep well last night?

A: I was too excited to sleep last night.

B: Oh, Susie. Didn't I tell you over and over again that you wouldn't be able to climb the mountain unless you got enough sleep?

A: You did, but I can't help it.

B: This is a one-day trip. We'll have to keep going and try to reach the top by noon or give up right now and go home.

A: I don't want to give up.

B: Can you go on now?

A: Don't push me. What I need is to rest for a while.

B: I'm experienced, Susie. We won't be able to reach the top if you keep asking for a break every ten minutes.

A: It won't be long. It's only temporary.

B: It will last the whole journey. Take my word for it.

A: This is the first time I've ever climbed a mountain in my life. Don't be so hard on me.

B: Sorry, Susie. ... Well, we'll keep going for a while and see how you can take it. If you do feel ill, we'll go home. We can always go climbing mountains any time you like.

A: All right, Larry. Thanks. I'm sorry to spoil this journey.

A: 我知道,但是我累了。我的胃不舒服,怪怪的。

B: 你昨晚没睡好?

A: 昨晚我太兴奋了,睡不着。

B: 哦,苏西。我是不是再三地告诉过你了,除非你睡眠充足,否则是不能爬山的?

A: 你说过,可是我没办法啊。

B: 这是一天往返的旅程。我们要不就继续走,试着在中午以前到达山顶,要不然就现在放弃,回家去。

A: 我不想放弃。

B: 你现在能继续走吗?

A: 不要催我。我只要休息一会儿就好了。

B: 我有经验,苏西。如果你每十分钟就要求歇脚的话,我们是到不了山顶的。

A: 不会太久的。这只是暂时性的。

B: 它会持续整个旅程的。相信我吧。

A: 这是我生平第一次爬山。别对我这么凶。

B: 抱歉,苏西……那我们继续走一段时间,看看你能不能行。如果你真的觉得不舒服,我们就回家。等你想爬山时,我们随时都可以爬山。

A: 好吧,拉瑞。谢了。很抱歉我破坏了这次的旅行。

Unit
3

看电视

Television

文化
链接

Culture Links

美国有三家全国性的电视联播公司:美国广播公司(ABC), 哥伦比亚广播公司(CBS)和全国广播公司(NBC)。此外,还有公共广播社(PBS)以及数百个地方电视台。许多地区一天二十四小时都有电视节目。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 不同的电视节目

A: Is there anything worth watching on another channel?

B: I think there's a western on.

A: Do you mind if we watch it? I'd really like to watch it.

B: Well, I really wanted to see the baseball game.

A: 其他频道有没有什么值得看的节目?

B: 我想有个频道在放西部片。

A: 看那个片子介意吗? 我真的很想看。

B: 嗯,但是我真的很想看棒球节目。

2. 播记录片

A: Do you happen to know what's on after the news?

B: I've got a feeling there's a documentary about animals.

A: Does anybody mind if we watch it?

B: Don't you want to see part two of the movie?

A: 新闻播完后你知道会有什么节目吗?

B: 我好像记得有个关于动物的记录片。

A: 看那个节目有人介意吗?

B: 难道你不想看这部电影的下半部了吗?

3. 播专题片

A: Do you remember what comes on next?

A: 你记得接下来会播什么节目吗?

业余活动 · Activities in Spare Time

B: I believe there's a TV special.

A: Are you interested in watching it?

B: Let me look in the TV Guide first.

B: 我想有个电视专题片。

A: 有兴趣看看吗?

B: 还是让我们先看看电视节目指南吧。

4. 看竞赛节目

A: What's on Channel 12 at 8:00?

B: If I remember correctly, there's a quiz show.

A: Do you want to watch it?

B: Let's see what else is on first.

A: 8 点钟 12 频道有什么节目?

B: 如果我没记错的话, 有个智力竞赛节目。

A: 想看看吗?

B: 让我们先看看有什么其他的节目吧。

5. 看娱乐节目

A: What are you doing?

B: I'm watching TV.

A: Are there any good programs on TV?

B: Lingling is on TV.

A: Which Channel is it?

B: Channel 8.

A: It doesn't seem quite interesting. Would you change the channel?

A: 你干什么呢?

B: 我正看电视呢。

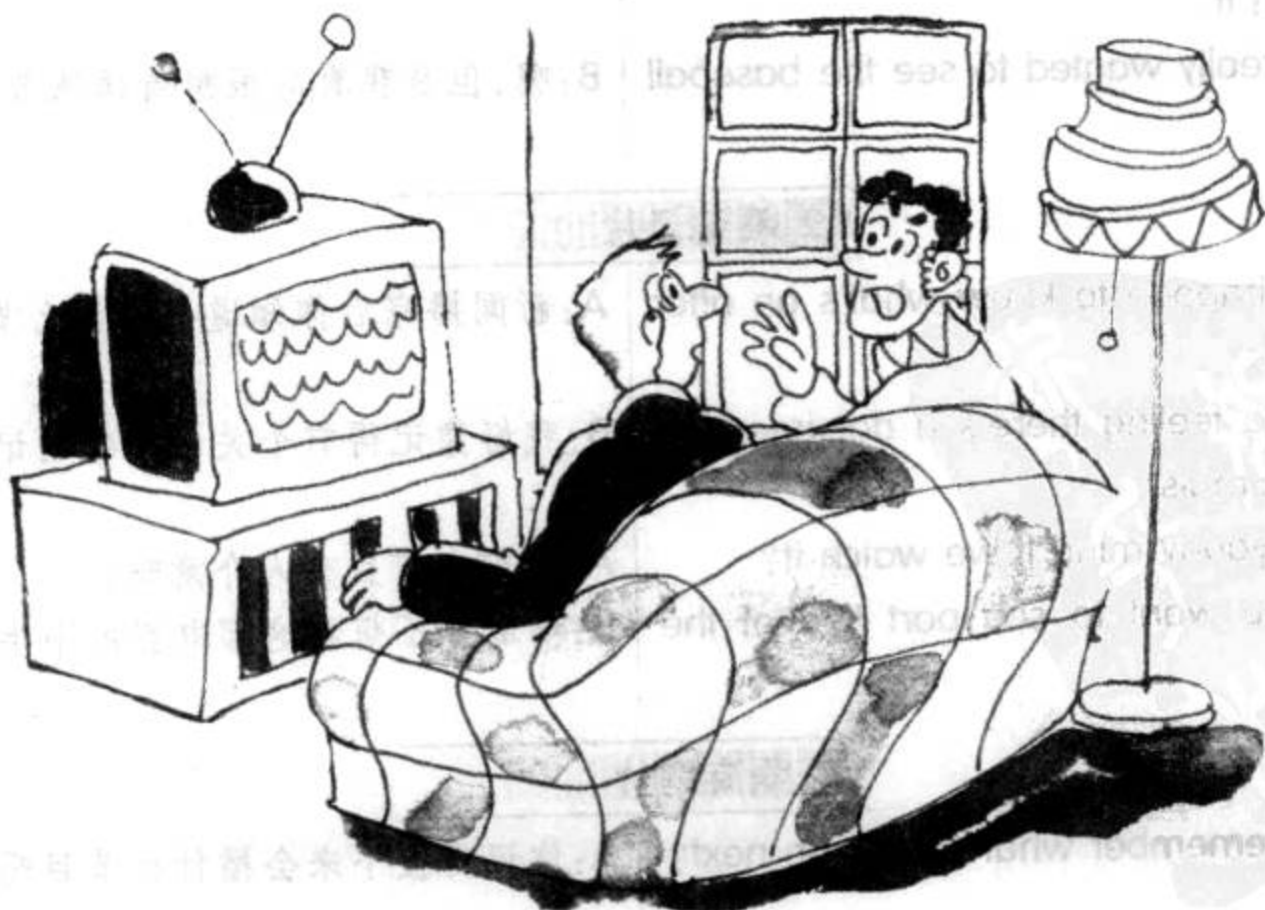
A: 有什么好看的节目吗?

B: 玲玲上电视了。

A: 是哪个频道?

B: 8 频道。

A: 看起来没多大意思, 能不能换个台?



Unit
4

玩棋牌

Playing Chess and Cards

文化
链接

Culture Links

国际象棋应属于世界上最古老的游戏之一。公元 900 年,一个在印度的阿拉伯旅行家写道,人们在“很久很久以前”就开始下象棋了。象棋或许发展于印度,而从 1400 年起,世界各地的人,从日本到欧洲,就开始玩这种游戏了。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 桥牌打牌

A: What games do you like?
B: I like word games.
A: How about a game of bridge?
B: I don't like it at all.
A: What about guessing games?
B: I'm not one for the games.
A: Let's play other game.
B: What about playing go?
A: OK.

A: 你喜欢什么游戏?
B: 我喜欢猜字游戏。
A: 玩玩桥牌如何?
B: 我对玩桥牌一点兴趣都没有。
A: 猜谜怎么样?
B: 我不擅长猜谜。
A: 那我们就玩点别的游戏吧。
B: 下围棋如何?
A: 好吧。

2. 麻将打牌

A: Do you play cards?
B: Of course and very well.
A: What's the English for Hongtao, Heitao, Meihua and Fangpian?
B: Oh, very easy. They are heart, spade, club and diamond.

A: 你打扑克吗?
B: 当然会了,而且打得很好。
A: 红桃、黑桃、梅花、方片用英语怎么说?
B: 哦,很简单,是 heart, spade, club 和 diamond。

业余活动 · Activities in Spare Time

3. 打牌规则

A: Have you got any hobbies?

B: Yes. I'm fond of playing the chess and I'm very keen on playing cards.

A: Which is easier to learn?

B: Both, but the rules of playing cards vary in different places.

A: 你有什么业余爱好吗?

B: 有。我喜欢下棋, 还很喜欢打牌。

A: 哪一个更容易学?

B: 两个都容易学, 不过打牌的规则在各个地方有所不同。

4. 打牌好处

A: Playing the chess is very exhausting, isn't it?

B: No, doing it in the long run will make you an acute man.

A: I'm afraid playing the chess like that will soon make me an old man. I noticed that most chess players were bald.

B: That's because you are always fixing your eyes on the bald.

A: 下棋很耗精力, 不是吗?

B: 不, 常下棋会使你成为一个思维敏捷的人。

A: 我担心常下会使我早早变成一个老人。我发现大多下棋的人都秃顶。

B: 那是因为你总是把眼睛盯在秃顶上的缘故。



Unit
5

报纸杂志

Newspapers and Magazines

文化
链接

Culture Links

美国是世界上新闻事业十分发达的国家之一。全国有各类报纸 11,000 种,其中日报 1,600 多家,包括晨报、下午报、晚报和星期日报及 8,000 多家周报和半周报,街头小报则无法计数。special edition, special issue 特刊,专刊;supplement 增刊;bimonthly 双月刊;quarterly 季刊。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 买报纸

A: There are many new kinds of newspapers. I find it hard to choose among them. Which is the most popular paper circulating in our city?

B: I'd recommend you the *Morning Paper*, it is true that the paper is a newly issued one, but its circulation is rising. Last month, it reached to three hundred thousand, which is a very good figure for a new paper.

A: What's the reason that people prefer to read this one?

B: I think perhaps the news stories in it are truthful and accurate. It also has a special page about the stock market; maybe this is the real reason for its popularity. Many people are now speculating in the

A: 现在新出的报纸实在太多了。很难在它们当中做出选择。哪份报纸是本地最受欢迎的?

B: 我建议你看看《晨报》,这份报纸发行不久,但它的发行量却在上升。上个月就达到了 30 万份。这个数字对一份新报纸来说是很不错的。

A: 为什么人们都钟情这份报纸呢?

B: 我想大概是因为它所报道的新闻总是真实、准确吧。也许它之所以受欢迎还有一个真正的原因,那就是《晨报》有关于股市的特版。现在炒股的人很多。

业余活动 · Activities in Spare Time

stock market.

A: I can predict it will have the largest circulation in one or two years.

A: 我可以预见不出一两年, 这份报纸就会成为发行量最大的报纸。

2. 买杂志

A: There are thousands of magazines published in the world to meet the needs of different readers. But only a few of them are influential world-wide.

A: 世界上有成千上万种杂志出版以满足不同读者的需要。但是在世界范围内具有影响的却不多。

B: You have hit the point. It's really hard for a magazine to be well known to people of various ages and educational backgrounds.

B: 你说到点上了。要使一份杂志为不同年龄、不同教育背景的群体所熟知, 确实是件困难的事。

A: But I think *Digest* is supposed to be the top one. Its subscribers or buyers are from all social classes, perhaps, a majority of them from the educated group. It's quite strange that the readers love it after reading it.

A: 而我认为《文摘》杂志是最好的。它的订户和购买者来自社会的各个阶层, 可能有很大一部分来自受过教育的群体。很奇怪的是读过它的人就会喜欢上它。

B: To my mind, the success of *Digest* is in the clever selection of its articles in each issue.

B: 我觉得《文摘》的成功在于其聪明地选择每一期所要刊登的文章。

3. 借杂志

A: Can I borrow this magazine from you? It's really interesting and I can't put it down.

A: 我能借你的这本杂志看吗? 它太有趣了, 我放不下手了。

B: I am sorry, but I can't lend it to you now, for I haven't finished reading it. If you don't mind, I can lend you some back numbers to you.

B: 对不起。我现在不能借给你, 因为我自己还没看完, 你如果不介意, 我可以把前几期的借给你看看。

A: That would be very kind of you. By the way, is it a monthly magazine?

A: 太谢谢你了。顺便问你一下, 这本杂志是月刊吗?

B: No, it is a fortnightly. So, you see, I can get the new one quite soon.

B: 不是。它是半月刊。所以我很快就能拿到新的一期了。

Unit
6

电影

The Movies

文化
链接

Culture Links

marial arts 武打, 功夫, 也可以说: Kungfu; Academy Awards (美) 学院奖, 即 (好莱坞) 奥斯卡金像奖 (Oscar Awards)。

一些影片的英语表达:

horro film (thriller) 恐怖片; animated cartoon (animation) 动画片; western (horse opera) 西部片; musical 音乐片; war film 战争片; whodunit (detective) 侦探片; porn film (pornography) 色情电影, 黄片。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 怀旧电影

A: What kind of films do you like best?

B: I like feature films best. How about you?

A: I don't like feature films. I think sometimes it loses contact with reality. I like to see some documentary films. What kind of feature films do you like best?

B: I always like to see the oldies, like *The Sound of Music*, *Gone with the Wind*. They are really the best: in the acting, the scene and the plot.

A: You are sort of romantic.

A: 你最喜欢看什么影片?

B: 我最喜欢看故事片。你呢?

A: 我不爱看故事片。我觉得有时候故事片脱离实际。我爱看一些纪录片。你最喜欢看什么样的故事片?

B: 我总是爱看些怀旧的老电影, 像《音乐之声》、《乱世佳人》之类。这些才是真正的佳片: 演技好、场景好、情节好。

A: 你是那种浪漫型的。

2. 动作电影

A: Hello, Tom. Where are you heading for?

B: I am going to the movie theater. You know there is a new action film produced by Hollywood. A thriller, really.

A: 嗨, 汤姆, 你到哪儿去?

B: 我去电影院。你知道吗, 好莱坞又出了一部新的动作片。确实很刺激。

业余活动 · Activities in Spare Time

A: Another terror film? There is too much terror and violence in the films. Do you like seeing such a picture?

B: I don't really like seeing bloody frames, but I appreciate the lifelike frames simulated with the highly skillful special effects.

A: 又有一部恐怖片? 电影里太多恐怖和暴力了。你喜欢看这种电影?

B: 我并不是真的喜欢看血腥的画面, 但是我喜欢欣赏用高技巧的特效模拟出的逼真画面。

3. 讨论电影院

A: Nowadays fewer and fewer people go to the movie theaters to see films. So I am afraid that the film studios are really getting hard time to survive.

B: What you said is true. But the film producers there are more flexible ways to get more audience. For example, to make more movie VCDs, so people will spend money buying them.

A: But it is true that cinemas are losing the attraction they used to have in the past.

B: Yes. Take myself for example. I seldom go to cinemas, but it doesn't mean I no longer see films; instead, I see films at home; watching VCDs.

A: 如今去电影院看电影的人越来越少了, 恐怕那些电影制片厂真的难以维系了。

B: 你说的是实情。但是电影制片人也发现有更灵活的途径来赢得观众。例如, 制造更多的电影 VCD 光碟, 这样人们会花钱去买碟片。

A: 但事实是电影院正在失去它以往曾具有的吸引力。

B: 是啊。就拿我自己来说吧。我现在也很少去电影院了, 但这并不意味着我就不看电影了, 我只不过是在家里看电影, 看的是 VCD 光碟而已。



Unit
7

在戏院

At the Theater

文化
链接

Culture Links

人们很喜欢看戏,而且戏票常常是很早就预售一空了。如果你想看某一场演出,最好是提前买票。没有必要给剧院领座的人付小费。

美国的非营利剧院大都是剧院剧团合一。剧团有自己的剧院,但不拥有专职的演员和导演。每个剧院大都有自己特定的观众,也就有自己特定的运营宗旨。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 订戏票

A: I'd like to reserve two seats for tomorrow night.

B: Would you like orchestra seats?

A: Isn't there anything less expensive?

B: Not unless you want the matinee.

A: 我想要预订两张明晚的票。

B: 您想买前排的座位吗?

A: 难道没有便宜点的票了吗?

B: 没有了,除非您想要看白天的演出。

2. 订包厢票

A: Can I still get tickets for tonight's performance?

B: The balcony is still available.

A: Aren't there any other seats?

B: No, I'm afraid that's it.

A: 今晚的演出还有票吗?

B: 包厢还有票。

A: 没有其他票了吗?

B: 没了,恐怕只有这种票了。

3. 高价票

A: Are there any seats left for Saturday night?

B: I still have five seats in the mezzanine.

A: 还有星期六晚上的票吗?

B: 只有中层包厢有五张票。

业余活动 · Activities in Spare Time

A: I suppose there's nothing cheaper, is there?

B: No. Nothing. I'm sorry.

A: 我想没有更便宜的票了, 是吧?

B: 是的, 没有了, 很抱歉。

4. 票卖光了

A: Is there anything available for tonight?

B: There are some seats in the rear mezzanine.

A: Isn't there anything else available?

B: No, the show is almost sold out.

A: 还有今晚的票吗?

B: 在后包厢还有一些空座。

A: 没有别的票卖了吗?

B: 没有了, 演出的票基本都卖光了。

5. 买到退票

A: Would you like to go to the theater with me tomorrow?

B: Yes, of course. Have you got the tickets?

A: That's coincidence, someone's just returned two tickets and I picked them.

B: Matinee or evening?

A: Evening.

B: Circle or stalls?

A: Stalls.

B: Wonderful, I'll go with you.

A: 明天你想和我一块去看戏吗?

B: 当然乐意去, 你有票吗?

A: 碰巧刚刚有人退了两张票, 我弄上了。

B: 是日场还是夜场?

A: 是夜场。

B: 是周围的还是正厅的?

A: 是正厅的。

B: 好极了, 我跟你去。

6. 聊话剧

A: Did you like the play?

B: Not really. It's a dull one, and the production isn't satisfactory, either.

A: You're absolutely right. The acting could be better.

B: To be fair, though, both the costumes and scenery are marvelous.

A: 你喜欢那场话剧吗?

B: 不喜欢, 很乏味, 演出水平也不怎么样。

A: 你说得完全正确, 演技有待提高。

B: 话说回来, 服装和布景倒挺不错。

Unit
8

在图书馆

At the Library

文化
链接

Culture Links

在美国,绝大部分的大学图书馆是开架式的,任何人都可以进入书库浏览。

loan desk(circulation desk)指的是图书馆内的总柜台。有专人负责把书借出或还回,或是办理申请借书证等事务。如果有问题也可以向站柜台的工作人员打听一下。

card catalogue 是图书馆的书目卡。按原作者姓名、书名的字母次序可以找到你要的书的编号。

card number 每本书的编号。如果你要借的书已被人先借走了。你可记下它的 card number 给图书馆员。他会通知借走书的人,到期或提前一定要还 return,再轮到借,他不可以续借(renew)。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 借侦探小说

A: Good morning. Mrs. Smith.

B: Good mornig! Can you help me, please?

I'm looking for some books for my mother.

A: What kind of books does she like?

B: She's very fond of detective stories.

A: 早上好,史密斯夫人。

B: 早上好,您能帮我一下吗?我想给我妈妈找一些书。

A: 她喜欢什么样的书?

B: 她非常喜欢侦探小说。

2. 图书馆使用咨询

A: Good morning, miss.

B: Morning. Can I help you?

A: Yes. I'd like to know how to sue the library. You know, I'm a new student here.

B: All you need is your student identification

A: 早上好,小姐。

B: 早上好,我能帮你什么忙吗?

A: 是的,我想知道怎么使用图书馆,你知道,我是这儿的新生。

B: 只要有学生证,你就能借书。

业余活动 · Activities in Spare Time

card to check out books.

3. 出借图书咨询

A: By the way, how many books am I allowed to check out?

B: You can check out two books at a time.

A: How long can I keep the books?

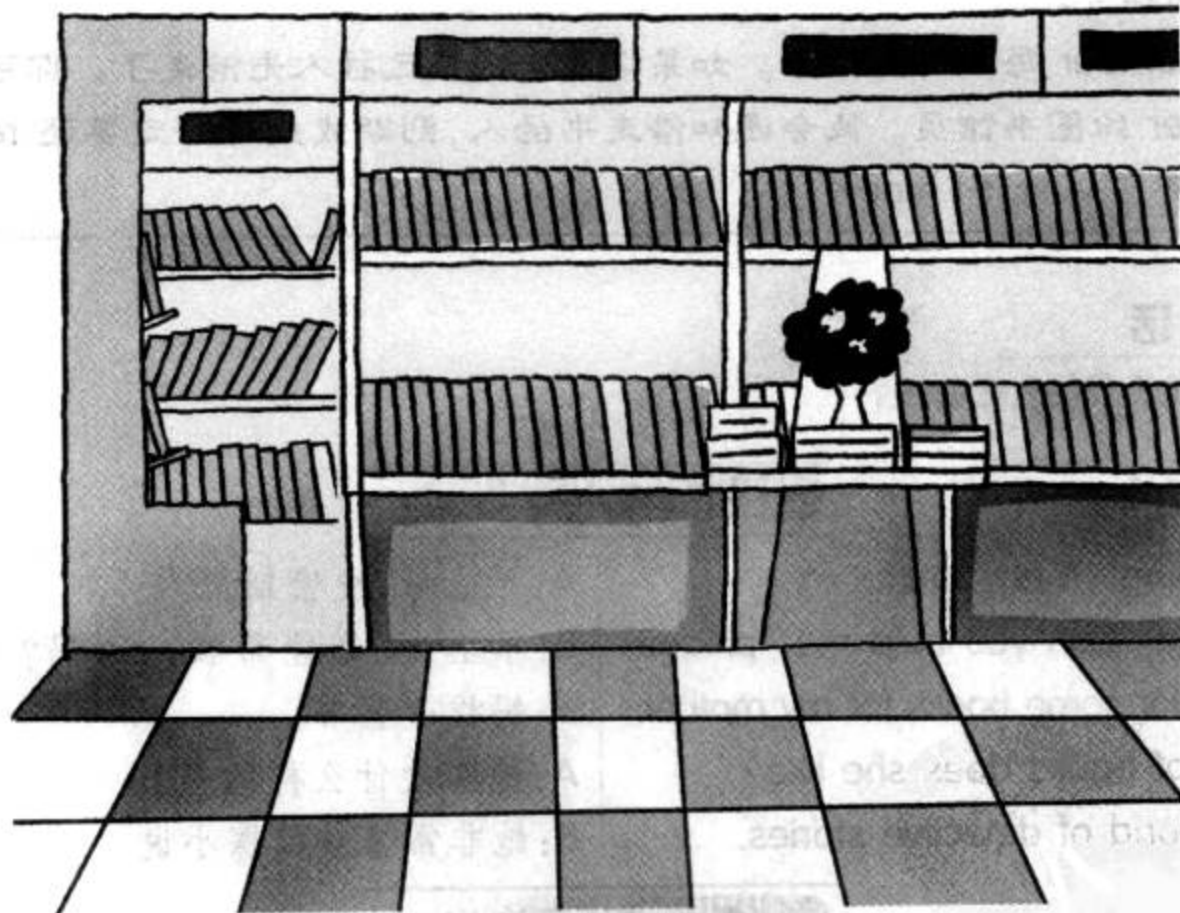
B: For two weeks. After that you must renew the books if you wish to keep them longer.

A: 顺便问一下, 我一次可以借出多少本书?

B: 一次两本。

A: 我可以借多长时间?

B: 两周, 如果你想要借更长时间的话, 你得续借。



Unit
9

在酒吧

In the Bar

文化
链接

Culture Links

酒吧间是供人们喝酒和消遣娱乐的地方。里面的光线一般要比人们习惯的地方暗一些。那儿供应含酒精的饮料,通常都播放一些流行音乐,甚至会有各种各样的表演(show)。由于英美人喝饮料有放冰块的习惯,所以你要喝室温的饮料,可事先讲明“不放冰”(no ice or straight up)。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 喝威士忌(1)

A: Give me Scotch, please.

B: What brand?

A: Black Rose.

B: Soda or water?

A: Just plain water with plenty of ice rock.

B: All right. Please wait for a minute.

A: 请给我来一杯苏格兰威士忌。

B: 要什么牌子的?

A: 黑玫瑰。

B: 加苏打水还是水?

A: 加水和多一点冰块。

B: 好的,请稍等。

2. 喝威士忌(2)

A: Good evening, sir. What can I do for you?

B: Bourbon, please.

A: How would you like your Bourbon, straight or on the rock?

B: With iced water, please.

A: Here you are, sir. Bourbon with iced water.

B: Thank you. Now how much do I owe you?

A: 晚上好,先生。请问您要点什么?

B: 请给我波旁威士忌。

A: 您要的波旁威士忌要放冰块吗?

B: 加一些冰水。

A: 给您,先生。这是您的威士忌加冰水。

B: 谢谢。多少钱?

业余活动 · Activities in Spare Time

A: The bourbon is 15 dollars plus 10% service charge. So the total is 16.5 dollars.

B: That is OK. Here is 20 dollars and you can keep the change.

A: Thanks a lot.

A: 威士忌是 15 美元, 加 10% 的服务费, 一共是 16.5 美元。

B: 好的。这是 20 美元, 多余的是你的小费。

A: 非常感谢。

3. 喝杜松子酒

A: We have mild wines and strong liquors. Which kind do you prefer?

B: I've no idea. I'd like to listen to your suggestion.

A: It's my pleasure. Actually, it's really hard to say as individual tastes are different. As for myself, I'd like to recommend gin and tonic.

B: Well. I'll try gin and tonic.

A: 我们有低度酒和高度酒, 您想要哪种?

B: 我不知道, 我想听听您的建议。

A: 很高兴为您效劳。其实也很难说, 因为个人口味是不同的。就我个人而言, 我给您推荐杜松子酒。

B: 好的, 我就试试杜松子酒吧。

4. 点咖啡

A: Boy, come here!

B: Yes, sir! What can I do for you?

A: Bring me a cup of coffee, please.

B: Will you have it strong or weak?

A: I prefer strong.

A: 服务员, 过来一下!

B: 是, 先生, 你要什么?

A: 请送一杯咖啡来。

B: 要浓的还是淡的?

A: 要浓一点儿的。



Unit
10

野餐

Picnic

文化
链接

Culture Links

通常情况下,你如果想邀请朋友外出郊游、野餐等,可以先谈及天气。如“Isn't it a lovely day today?”(今天天气很好,不是吗?)当对方表示赞同后,你就可以很自然地补上一句:“It would be a pity if you stay home in such fine weather.”(这样风和日丽的天气却待在家里真是太可惜了。)对方马上就会问:“Where do you think I should go?”(你认为我应该去哪儿呢?)这时你提出建议就可说是水到渠成了。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 河边野餐

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>A: Lily, can you take part in our picnic this weekend?</p> <p>B: That sounds great. Where are you going?</p> <p>A: I think we can go to the river, go around and have supper.</p> <p>B: What should I bring?</p> <p>A: Nothing. Just wear comfortable clothes and good shoes for walking. We'll bring everything.</p> | <p>A: 莉莉,这周末你能来参加我们的野餐吗?</p> <p>B: 听起来不错,你们准备去哪儿?</p> <p>A: 我想我们可以去河边,四处走走,再吃晚餐。</p> <p>B: 我要带点什么东西吗?</p> <p>A: 什么也不用带,您只要穿戴舒服点儿,穿一双走路合脚的鞋就行了。我们会准备好一切的。</p> |
|--|--|

2. 森林野餐

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>A: Can you take part in our picnic this Saturday?</p> <p>B: That would be fine. Where are you going?</p> <p>A: We plan to go to a forest in the suburb.</p> | <p>A: 这周六你能来参加我们的野餐吗?</p> <p>B: 太好了。你们打算去哪儿?</p> <p>A: 我们打算去郊区的一个树林,那儿有一</p> |
|--|--|

业余活动 · Activities in Spare Time

There is a beautiful river there. We can do some fishing.

B: Great.

A: And don't forget your fishing tackle.

B: Ok. I like fishing very much.

一条风景优美的小河。我们可以在那里钓鱼。

B: 太棒了。

A: 不要忘了带钓具哦。

B: 好的,我非常喜欢钓鱼。

3. 海边出游

A: Will we drive to the seaside?

B: Yes, it will take about four hours. We can leave about noon and get there by supper time.

A: Let me help pay for gas.

B: All right. There will be three of us going so we will each pay a third.

A: What other expenses will we have?

B: There won't be many other expenses except food.

A: 我们开车去海边吗?

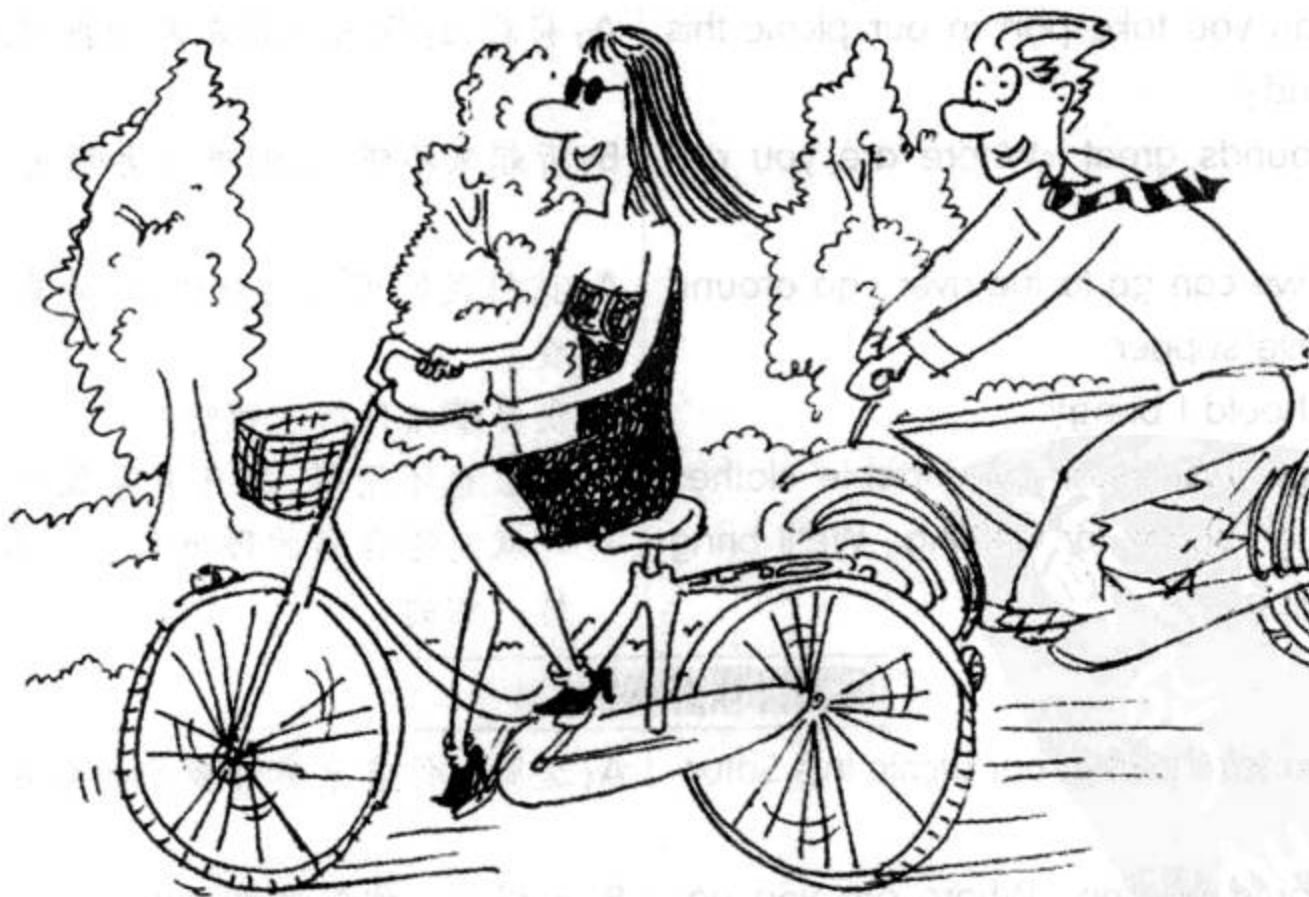
B: 是的,路上大概需要4个小时。我们大约中午出发,到吃晚饭的时候就可以到了。

A: 让我来付一部份汽油费吧。

B: 好的。我们有三个人去,这样每个人付三分之一。

A: 还有其他的花销吗?

B: 除了食品之外,没有其他更多的费用了。



住房及汽车

Housing & Cars



Unit

1

找房子

Looking for a House

文化
链接

Culture Links

美国做房地产经纪,靠的是佣金。开始时,经纪公司的佣金比例是由政府来控制的,但是后来发现政府的控制限制了经纪公司向顾客提供更多的服务,于是政府就干脆放开了对佣金的限制,房地产是美国经济很重头的一个产业,据说美国 GDP 大约有 20% 是由房地产及其相关产业创造的,原因是美国人喜欢搬迁,喜欢不断地换房子,这个国家没有户口制度,可以随时迁移,这样房屋需求就相当地大,促使了房地产交易盛行。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 咨询公寓出租

A: I saw your ad in *The New York Times*. I am seriously considering one of the apartments listed in it.

B: We are happy to help you. May I know which one it is?

A: The two-bedroom apartment on 38th east street.

B: Oh, it is conveniently located, isn't it?

A: That's why I think it may suit my needs.

B: I believe it will. It comes furnished. You can move in immediately after the lease is signed.

A: The ad says the rent would be 840 dollars per month. Is it true?

A: 我看到你们在纽约时报上登的广告了。我对其中一个公寓很感兴趣。

B: 很高兴我们可以帮到您。您感兴趣的是哪个呢?

A: 在东 38 街的那个两卧的公寓。

B: 哦, 这房子地理位置不错, 挺方便的, 您说是么?

A: 嗯, 这也是我选择它的原因: 它可能能够满足我的需要。

B: 我相信您是正确的。这房子是精装修的, 只要您签了合约, 立刻可以入住。

A: 广告说月租是 840 美元, 对么?

找房子 · Looking for a House

B: Yes. But not including the utilities.

A: Will it possible for me to rent the apartment on a month-by-month basis?

B: I believe that can be arranged. But there should be a refundable security deposit, you know.

A: Oh, that's no problem.

B: 是, 但是不包括公用事业费用。

A: 我可以按月来租么?

B: 我想应该可以的。但是您知道, 这是需要付押金的。

A: 嗯, 没问题。

2. 预约看房(1)

A: A friend told me I might find a room here.

B: Yes. I'll have a room free next week.

A: What do you charge?

B: 12,000 a year, but you can't get visitors to live in.

A: OK. Would it be all right to look at the room first?

B: Could you come back later? We're right in the middle of dinner.

A: 有个朋友告诉我我可以在这里租房。

B: 是的。下周我这里会有一个房间可租。

A: 多少钱?

B: 一年 1.2 万元, 但是不允许带访客来住。

A: 好的。可以先看一下房吗?

B: 你能一会再来吗? 我们正在吃饭。

3. 预约看房(2)

A: I wonder if you can help me. I'm looking for a room.

B: Yes. I've got a small room.

A: How much is it?

B: 200 Yuan a week, but smoking is not allowed.

A: OK. Can I see the room now?

B: Would you mind waiting? I'm on the telephone.

A: 我想看看您能不能帮我忙。我正在找房子。

B: 可以, 我这里有一个小房间。

A: 多少钱?

B: 一个星期 200 元, 但是不允许吸烟。

A: 好的。我现在能来看看吗?

B: 你可以等等吗? 我正在打电话。

Unit
2

租房

Hiring a Flat

文化
链接

Culture Links

在美国租房,特点是“小孩与狗不受欢迎”。美国很多公寓都自称“成人公寓”,对小孩则另眼相看,主要是房东怕小孩吵闹的缘故。

按照法律规定,房东无权将欠租房客扫地出门,只能到法院去诉讼。得到的判决一般是限定住户在一定时间内搬走,所欠房租则等有能力时再偿还。结果房租难以索讨,房东只得自认倒霉。因此房东在出租房屋时,总是权衡再三,不愿轻易出手。

Practical Samples 实用样本

Sample 1

Apartment For Rent Quiet (near community park)

12 Renmin Rd, 10th fl

95 sq ms, 2-bed, 1-bath, 1-living; parking space

5,000 yuan/month (utilities not included)

Call 5124-3698, Ms. Li

房屋出租/安静(靠近社区公园)/人民路12号10楼/95平米,两室一厅一卫/带车位/房租每月5,000元(不含水电)/请致电5124-3698找李女士

Sample 2

3BR for rent, A/C, furn, utilities, \$750, sec. deposit \$600, no pets

Call 322-4586, Mr. Brown

三卧房屋出租/有空调/有家具/月租750美元(包括水电费)/押金600美元/不许带宠物
请致电322-4586找布朗先生

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1 与人共住

A: Do you take in students? I've been told

A: 你们出租房间给学生吗?有人告诉我你

租房 · Hiring a Flat

you might have a vacant room.

B: Yes. If you don't mind sharing room with someone else, there's one available.

A: How much are you asking?

B: 800 Yuan a month.

A: Could I have a look at it, please?

B: Sorry, but I'm on my way out now.

Could you come back in an hour?

这里可能有间空房。

B: 是的。如果你不介意和别人用一个房间的话,现在有一个空房。

A: 多少钱?

B: 一个月 800 元。

A: 我能看一看吗?

B: 对不起,我现在要出去。你能一个小时以后再来吗?

2. 租一居室

A: Hello, who's that speaking?

B: I am calling about the advertisement for a flat with a bedroom. Do you still have it now?

A: Yes, I do.

B: Is there any furniture in it?

A: Yes, it's fully furnished.

B: What's the rent for a year?

A: 15,000 Yuan, including water, but electricity and gas.

B: Where is it located?

A: It's in International Trade Zone. It's only ten minutes' walk from the nearest subway station.

B: That's great. But can you make the rent cheaper, let's see, 12,000 Yuan?

A: The price can be talked over. How about coming around and taking a look at it first?

B: OK. I will be free at tomorrow afternoon. I'll take a taxi to get there.

A: All right, see you.

A: 你好,哪位?

B: 你好,请问你登广告出租的那套一居室的单元房租出去了吗?

A: 还没有。

B: 里面有家具吗?

A: 有的,设施齐全。

B: 年租金是多少?

A: 一万五千元,包括水、电、煤气费。

B: 位于哪儿?

A: 在国际商贸区,离最近的地铁站走路只需十分钟。

B: 那太好了。能否把租金降一点,一万二怎样?。

A: 价格好商量,要不你先过来看看再说?

B: 好吧,我明天下午有空,我会打的去。明天见。

A: 好,再见。

3. 租酒店式公寓

A: I'm calling to ask about your apartment advertised.

B: Yes, we've got great apartments with

A: 我看到了贵公司公寓出租的广告,打个电话来问一下情况。

B: 是的,我们有很多环境优雅、景色优美的

住房及汽车 · Housing & Cars

charming environment and nice scenery.

And they are all newly renovated.

A: That sounds fantastic! But I am looking for something closer to the downtown, as I spend most of my time at the office.

B: No problem. We have a nice apartment located near the Oriental Square. It's perfect for people busy with office work. It is fully furnished with a service staff taking care of the trivial details.

A: I'm sure it is wonderful, but I need an unfurnished apartment with relatively lower cost.

B: Ah! I get your point. We have just what you need. Our Jinyuan apartments have several floor plans. The one bedroom apartments are very economical, but their layout makes great use of a small amount of space. I think you can find the right apartment there.

A: Great! I'll arrange a viewing after work tomorrow afternoon. Could you tell me the detailed address?

B: Of course. It's just at 19 Linquan Road. You can phone me again if you can't find the right place.

A: Ok. Thank you.

公寓,全部都是新装修的。

A: 听起来太棒了,但我想租一间离市中心近一点的公寓,因为我大部分时间都在办公室度过。

B: 没问题。我们在东方广场附近有一套条件很好的公寓。它非常适合那些工作很忙的人,设施齐全而且有服务人员照顾生活琐事。

A: 我相信这个公寓一定很棒,但我想要一套无装修、价格相对更低的公寓。

B: 哦,我明白了。我们正好有您想要的这类公寓。我们的金苑公寓楼有好几种户型。一居室公寓非常便宜,而且布局合理,充分利用了有限的空间。我想你能在那里找到合适的公寓。

A: 太好了! 明天下午下班后我会去看房。你能告诉我详细的地址吗?

B: 当然了。就在林泉路 19 号。如果您找不到的话可以再给我打电话。

A: 好的,谢谢。

Unit
3

买卖房子

Buying or Selling a House

文化
链接

Culture Links

美国购房价格甚贵,动辄以万、十万、百万美元计。房价高低主要取决于房子的质量和所处地点,大小倒还在其次。目前,越是远离市区的房子越贵。买房手续极为繁杂,买主不仅要签订买卖契约,还得填写表格,说明买房意图,保证不改做商店或者招揽顾客,若房子改变用途,则需另办手续,并由周围邻居表决通过。美国买房也盛行分期付款。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 购房咨询

A: Good morning, sir. Have a seat please.

B: I would like to know the state of the residential property market right now because I have an apartment to sell.

A: Sure, here is my business card. I'm James Wilson. Let me explain to you how things are. In recent months, the demand for residential properties has become extremely high. The price of residential property has risen almost twenty percent.

B: Really? Since I have to go back to England within the next few months, I would like to sell my apartment as soon as possible.

A: Don't worry, sir. I think it's a seller's market right now. Let me get down some

A: 先生,早上好,请坐。

B: 我想知道目前住宅物业的市场情况,因为我想要把我的住宅出售。

A: 没问题,这是我的名片。我叫詹姆士·威尔逊。让我向你解释一下住宅物业的市场情况。最近几个月住宅物业需求非常大。房屋价格上涨了将近20%。

B: 真的? 因为我几个月内就得返回英国了,所以我想尽快卖出我的房子。

A: 先生,不用担心,依我看现在是卖方市场。让我先记录一些关于你的房子的资

住房及汽车 · Housing & Cars

information about your apartment first.

What is your property's address?

B: Flat C. 15/F, Tong House, Tai Koo Shing.

A: What is the square footage of your property? How many bedrooms and living rooms?

B: Its gross area is approximately nine hundred square feet. There's one living room, one dining room, one master bedroom and two other bedrooms.

A: What is the orientation and view?

B: It faces south with a hillside view.

A: The market price for Tong House is around five thousand Hong Kong dollars per square foot, but it also depends on the internal layout and condition of the house.

B: I would like to ask for four point five million Hong Kong dollars.

A: May I have your name and contact number, Sir?

B: Johnson, and my contact number is 28765432. My office number is 21234567.

A: Thank you, Mr. Johnson. May I ask you one more question? When will your property become available?

B: In about one month.

A: Also, Mr. Johnson, I would like to remind you my company will charge a commission equivalent to one percent of the transaction price in the event of a successful selling of the property through our introduction.

B: No problem.

A: Thank you very much. I will introduce

料吧。请问你的房子在哪里?

B: 在太古城唐厦十五楼F座C室。

A: 你的房子面积有多大? 有几间卧室和客厅?

B: 建筑面积约九百平方英尺。有一个客房、一个饭厅、一间主卧室和两间客卧。

A: 你的房子的朝向及观景怎么样?

B: 南向, 面对山景的。

A: 唐厦的市场售价每平方英尺约五千港币, 不过要视房子的内部布局及装修条件而定。

B: 我希望定价为港币四百五十万元。

A: 先生, 可否告知我你的名字及联系电话?

B: 我叫约翰逊, 我的联系电话是 28765432, 办公电话是 21234567。

A: 谢谢你, 约翰逊先生。我可以再问你一个问题吗? 请问你的房子何时可以交付?

B: 大约一个月之后。

A: 还有, 约翰逊先生, 我想提醒你, 如果我们为你成功介绍了买家, 本公司将向你收取成交价的百分之一作为佣金。

B: 没有问题。

A: 非常感谢, 我会把你的房产介绍给我

your property to our clients. When they want to see your property, I will give you a call.

B: Thank you.

买卖房子 · Buying or Selling a House

公司的客户。如果客户想看楼,我会通知你的。

B: 谢谢。

2. 买房咨询

A: Miss, may I help you?

B: Yes, I just wondered why the price between the ninth and tenth floor is so different.

A: It's because of the view.

B: Oh! I see. Can you show me the location of Block I?

A: Sure. Please take a look at the model of the building. Nice Garden has a total of two blocks which are labeled Block I and Block II. Block I has a total of thirty-eighth floors. The thirty-seventh and thirty-eighth are penthouses. There are four units in one floor. The sizes of the units are one thousand square feet and one thousand and five hundred square feet. The size with one thousand square feet has three bedrooms and the biggest size has four bedrooms.

B: How many elevators are there?

A: There are three elevators between one hundred and forty-eight units.

B: How about the car-park space?

A: There are a total of one hundred and sixty parking spaces on the second and third floor, in which twelve are for visitors and the rest are for residents.

B: Any other facilities?

A: Sure, on the fourth floor is a recreation quarter. There are two swimming pools. One is Olympic standard size and the

A: 小姐,我可以帮你吗?

B: 是的,我很奇怪为什么九楼与十楼的售价有这么大的差别呢。

A: 这是因为观景不同。

B: 哦!我明白了,你能否告诉我第一座的位置呢?

A: 当然可以,请过来看大厦模型。丽斯花园共有两幢,分别是第一座、第二座。第一座共三十八层高,而三十七楼和三十八楼是复式房屋。每层有四套房子。面积有一千平方英尺和一千五百平方英尺两种。一千平方英尺的有三个卧室,面积最大的户型有四个卧室。

B: 一共有多少部电梯?

A: 一百四十八套房子共用三部电梯。

B: 停车位呢?

A: 停车场在第二层和第三层,总共一百六十个车位,其中十二个是临时车位,其余的是供住户使用的。

B: 还有其他设施吗?

A: 有的,第四层是康体中心。里面有两个游泳池,其中一个奥林匹克标准泳池,另一个是供儿童使用的。除此之外,还

住房及汽车 · Housing & Cars

other one is for children. Also, there is a gymnasium for resident members only.

B: What is the completion date?

A: The completion date will be July 1st 2007.

B: How about the price and the bank mortgage?

A: Please check up the price list. The average unit price is five million Hong Kong dollars. There are eight different banks that will provide a seventy percent mortgage loan. Also, the developer will offer another ten percent mortgage to purchasers.

B: How many payment methods are there?

A: It's all written on the brochure price list. I believe there will be one right for you. Please hurry up because almost half of units have already gone.

B: Thank you. I think I have to talk to the bank representatives. Thank you for your help.

A: You're welcome.

有专门为住户而设的健身房。

B: 请问何时竣工?

A: 预计竣工日期为2007年7月1号。

B: 售价和银行按揭如何?

A: 你可以看看价目表。平均售价约港币五百万元,有八家银行提供七成按揭贷款。同时,开发商也将提供一成的按揭给认购者。

B: 有多少支付种类?

A: 售价表里已经详细列明了,我相信其中一定有适合你的。现在认购已经超过五成,你要快点做决定了。

B: 谢谢。我想我必须向银行代表咨询一下。谢谢你的帮忙。

A: 不客气。

租房渠道

A: I think this spring is a good time for us to start looking.

B: We should plan to move out of here before July. I'm tired of living in apartments.

A: I know, dear. I am too. But we've just been too busy to look for a house.

B: We need to find a good realtor.

A: Not necessary. If we use a realtor to find a house, it will be more expensive.

B: What do you mean?

A: Realtors always get a commission. If the realtor helps us find something, we have

A: 今年春天开始找房子是不错的时机。

B: 我们应该计划在七月前搬走。我已经厌倦住公寓了。

A: 亲爱的,我知道,我也是。但是我们一直忙得没时间去找房子。

B: 我们需要找个好的房地产经纪人。

A: 不需要。如果我们委托经纪人找房子,会比较贵。

B: 怎么说呢?

A: 房地产经纪人都要抽佣金的。如果经纪人帮我们找到房子,我们就要付他钱。

买卖房子 · Buying or Selling a House

to pay him.

B: But doesn't a realtor help with the contract? I thought they take care of all the legal troubles.

A: Yes, that's often true. But you have to pay them.

B: I still think we should have a realtor. We're new in this country. We don't know all the laws of buying a house. And also, the realtor will inspect the house. He can tell us if the house has any problems.

A: Of course we need a house inspector. But we can hire an inspector on our own. As for the legal problems, I have friends. They can help us.

B: So how can we find a house if we don't have a realtor?

A: It takes a little more time. We have to check the ads in the paper. Probably also there are special real estate magazines with ads. Then we have to drive to the homes and look at them.

B: And doesn't the person selling the house have a realtor?

A: Sometimes they do, sometimes they don't. It's best to find someone who is selling by themselves.

B: Why?

A: That is because if the seller has a realtor, their price will be higher. He will have to pay a commission to the realtor.

B: Hmm. It all sounds very complicated.

A: It is. But buying a house is very important. So it takes time. That's why we haven't done it yet. It's very troublesome.

B: I want to look in the papers today. May-

B: 不过经纪人也会帮忙处理合约的事啊? 我想他们应该会留意法律的问题。

A: 是的,通常是如此,但是你要付他们钱。

B: 我还是认为应该要找个经纪人。我们才刚来这个国家,不知道买房子的所有法律条款。而且经纪人还会检查房子。他可以告诉我们房子有没有问题。

A: 当然我们需要房子检查员。不过我们可以自己请检查员就好。至于法律问题,我有朋友,他们可以帮忙。

B: 如果不找经纪人,那我们要怎么找到房子呢?

A: 要花多一点时间。我们必须看看报纸上的广告。或许专门的房地产杂志上也有广告。然后我们必须开车去看房子。

B: 那么卖房子的人不会找经纪人吗?

A: 有时会,有时不会。最好是找自己卖房的人。

B: 为什么?

A: 因为如果卖主找经纪人,房价就会比较高。他必须付经纪人佣金。

B: 嗯,听起来挺复杂的。

A: 是啊。不过买房子很重要,所以要花时间。那就是为什么我们还没开始的原因,很麻烦的。

B: 我今天要看看报纸,或许可以找到喜欢

住房及汽车 · Housing & Cars

be we can see something we like.

A: All right. I'll buy a newspaper when I go to the drugstore.

4. 购买新房

A: I'd like to buy a house of about 300 m² with a garden. Can you help me?

B: Sure. We've helped more than ten thousand people buy and sell houses. We're the No. 1 realtor in this community. I recommend this house (He points at a picture).

A: Where is it?

B: On a hill to the east of the Tamsui river. You have a good view of the beautiful sunrise and sunset. You can't find a better home to live in.

A: How many rooms are there?

B: Eight rooms: a roomy kitchen, two modern bathrooms, a lovely dining room, a gorgeous living room and three sweet bedrooms. All are built with first-rate materials.

A: How much is it?

B: 6 million. You needn't pay the whole price at one time. You just pay 50% in cash. We'll process the legal documents for you and then you can borrow the other 50% from a bank and repay it in installments. We ask for only 1% as commission.

A: OK. How much is the deposit?

B: Ten thousand.

的。

A: 好,我去杂货店的时候会买份报纸的。

A: 我想买一个有花园,约 300 平方米的房子。你能帮帮我吗?

B: 当然可以,我们曾帮助 1 万多人买卖房产,我们是本社区最好的房地产商,我推荐这所房子(他指着照片)。

A: 它坐落在什么地方?

B: 淡水河东岸的一个山冈上,可以眺望美丽的日出和日落,这可是最好的房子了。

A: 有几个房间?

B: 8 个房间: 宽大的厨房,两个时尚的洗澡间,一间可爱的餐厅,一间豪华客厅和三间甜蜜卧室。都是用第一流材料建造的。

A: 多少钱?

B: 600 万。您不必一次付清,只要付 50% 的现金。我们可以为您办法律手续,然后您可以向银行借另外 50% 的资金,再分期付款,我只要 1% 的佣金。

A: 好的。定金多少?

B: 1 万元。

Unit
4

装修房子

Interior Decoration

文化
链接

Culture Links

当你身处国外,在找水电工时,可以询问当地朋友哪家的口碑好点;或者询问自己大厦的管理人员,因为他们可经常看到出入大厦的修理人员。和水电行联络时,可以询问他们开店多久了,专修哪类东西,等等。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 装修厨房

A: Good morning! Welcome to J. P Interior Design.

B: Hi, I saw the sign outside says that you do all kinds of interior design.

A: Yes, we do. Do you have any specific needs?

B: Well, I am thinking about redesigning my kitchen.

A: Do you prefer some specific style?

B: Yes, I prefer a more contemporary design.

A: What kind of color tones do you like?

B: Blue, green or earth tone colors. I do not like the colors that are too bright.

A: I see. And what kind of feeling do you want to create for your kitchen?

B: I'd like it to look simple, neat and relaxing.

A: 早上好,欢迎光临 JP 室内设计。

B: 嗨,我看到外面的广告,说你们承包各种室内设计工程。

A: 是的,您有特殊要求么?

B: 嗯,我想重新设计我的厨房。

A: 您是否喜欢某种特定的设计风格呢?

B: 是的,我喜欢比较现代化一点的设计。

A: 那您喜欢哪一类的色调呢?

B: 蓝色、绿色或者大地色系的颜色。我不喜欢太显眼的颜色。

A: 我明白了,那您希望您的厨房能营造出什么感觉呢?

B: 我希望它看上去简洁、干净而且轻松舒适。

住房及汽车 · Housing & Cars

A: Fine, we will take an actual look at your kitchen before start working on it.

B: No problem. How about 10'o clock this Sunday morning?

A: Okay. Would you please leave your address and phone number?

B: Of course. This is my card. See you then.

A: 好的, 在我们作任何变动以前, 必须上门实际考察一下。

B: 没问题, 这个星期天上午十点左右如何?

A: 可以的, 麻烦您留下姓名及地址电话好吗?

B: 当然, 这是我的名片。到时见。

2. 搭平台

A: Hi, Sara, what are you reading?

B: Hi, John, I am trying to find a carpenter.

A: Why?

B: Well, I want to build a deck in my back yard.

A: What for?

B: So I can have a special place to hang out with friends, and also do some barbecuing on weekends.

A: That sounds cool. Do you mind if I recommend myself for the job?

B: You? Do you have a carpenter's license?

A: Yes, of course. But I only freelance on weekends with my uncle.

B: Wow! That's cool. So, let me give you some details about the deck I want.

A: Please go ahead, I am listening.

B: I'd like my deck to be at the same level as the back door.

A: Is your back door higher than the ground level?

B: Yes, the back door is about four or five steps higher than the ground.

A: Okay, then you need a deck with a guardrail.

B: I don't like things to be fancy.

A: 嗨, 莎拉, 你在看什么?

B: 嗨, 约翰, 我在找木匠。

A: 为什么找木匠?

B: 嗯, 我想在后院建一个平台。

A: 用来干嘛呢?

B: 那样我就有一个地方专门和朋友聚会聊天啦, 而且, 周末也可以在那里烧烤。

A: 听起来很棒, 你介意我毛遂自荐么?

B: 你? 你有木匠执照么?

A: 有啊, 但我只有在周末才有空和我叔叔一起接生意做。

B: 哇, 真厉害, 那么我告诉你一些我想建的平台的细节。

A: 说吧, 我在听。

B: 我要我的平台和后门一样高。

A: 你的后门高于地面么?

B: 是的, 后门比地面高出大约 4~5 级台阶。

A: 好吧, 这样你的平台需要加护栏。

B: 我不要太花哨的设计。

装修房子 · Interior Decoration

A: Don't worry. I will build your deck with a simple but classic look.

B: Hmm, that's good. Can you use cedar or redwood to build it?

A: Cedar is a good choice.

B: Well, let's take the measurements right now.

A: 放心, 我会帮你把平台做得简单而高雅。

B: 嗯, 那很好, 你可以用西洋杉或者红木来做么?

A: 西洋杉是不错的选择。

B: 那么, 我们现在就来测量吧。

铺地板

A: I think we should do the floors before we work on the curtains and walls.

B: Why? It doesn't make sense. If we do the floors first, and then paint the walls, we will get paint all over our new floor.

A: Hmm. Maybe you're right. But I can't stand all this green carpet here. And besides, I know how to paint. I will just cover everything with drop cloth. I won't get anything on the floor.

B: Are you sure?

A: Yes, I'm sure. I've done a lot of house painting in my life. And my mother was very picky. If I got even a tiny drop of paint on her furniture, she would get furious. So I learned to be very careful.

B: Alright. Then maybe we can do the floor first. These wood floors under this carpet are beautiful. And me too—I can't wait to get all this old carpet out of here. But how can we get it out? Do we have to hire someone?

A: Absolutely not. We can remove the carpet ourselves. Carpet is held down with carpet nails. You just need to pull it hard and it will come up.

B: Great. Then, after we remove the car-

A: 我想在着手弄窗帘和墙壁前, 我们应该先来弄地板。

B: 为什么? 不太合理。如果我们先弄地板, 然后再粉刷墙, 我们会把新地板弄得到处是漆。

A: 嗯, 也许你是对的, 但是我不能忍受这里的绿色地毯。此外, 我知道怎么油漆, 我会用塑胶布铺好所有东西, 不会让地板沾上任何东西的。

B: 你确定吗?

A: 是的, 我确定。我这辈子已经做过很多次的房屋油漆了, 而且我妈还非常挑剔的。如果我在她的家具上沾上一小滴油漆, 她就会大发雷霆, 所以我学会很小心。

B: 好吧, 那也许我们可以先弄地板。这些在地毯下的木制地板蛮美的, 而且我也等不及要把这旧的地毯弄走。但是, 怎么能把它弄出去呢? 我们要请人吗?

A: 绝对不用, 我们可以自己移动地毯。地毯是用地毯钉固定的, 你只需要用力地拔, 它就出来了。

B: 太棒了。那我们搬完地毯后, 需要维修

住房及汽车 · Housing & Cars

pet, we need to redo all the wood floors. Right?

A: Yes. But we should hire someone for that. That will probably be expensive. And it has to be done right.

B: And then, after the floors are done, we can start to move our furniture in.

A: Sure. If we can get an appointment with someone to do the floors, we should probably be able to have the furniture in here after a week or so. I can get all the carpet out this weekend.

所有的木制地板,对不对?

A: 是的,但是我们应该雇用别人来做。可能会很贵,而且要做对才行。

B: 然后,地板弄完后,我们可以开始搬家具进去。

A: 好啊。如果我们和人约好要弄地板,大概可以在一周后把家具放好。我在这个周末会把所有地毯都弄出去。

4. 其他项目装修

A: What else should we do now after the floors are done and after the furniture is in?

B: We need to redo the curtains and paint all the walls and ceilings.

A: I'm the painter. You can be in charge of going to curtain shops to choose curtains. That will probably be pretty expensive too. Having good curtains made isn't cheap.

B: You mean we can't just buy curtains already made?

A: Absolutely not. The windows must be measured, and then the curtains need to be made professionally. So that will take awhile. Maybe a month or so.

B: While the curtains are being made, I can start having people look at the kitchen. I can't stand that old kitchen. I won't be able to cook there. I don't want to use that electric stove.

A: We need to find an interior decorating

A: 地板弄完,家具放好后我们还要做什么呢?

B: 我们需要重做窗帘和油漆所有的墙壁及天花板。

A: 我是油漆工,你可以负责去窗帘店挑窗帘。那可能也会很贵,要订做好的窗帘不可能便宜。

B: 你是说我们不能买成品窗帘?

A: 绝对不行。必须先量好这些窗户,再特地制作窗帘,这可能会花上一段时间,也许要一个月左右。

B: 做窗帘期间,我可以开始请人来勘查厨房。我受不了那个老旧的厨房,我没法在里面煮东西,我不想用那个电炉。

A: 我们需要找一家室内装潢公司来整修厨

装修房子 · Interior Decoration

company to redecorate the kitchen. I believe in Portland there are shops that specialize in kitchen renovation. I will look in the Yellow Pages. I'd like a kitchen mostly in ivory and light green.

B: I agree. The colors must be soft and pleasant. You should feel comfortable when you cook our dinners.

A: Me? Cook our dinners? Hah! You will be cooking, dear. You will cook.

B: No, I don't think so. I'll be too busy having tea in our new tea room.

A: Well, I suppose we'll have to hire a cook then. So you won't be able to afford any clothes next year.

B: And you'll have to sell your motorcycle. And your cameras. Right?

A: Maybe I'll cook once or twice a week. How is that?

B: Four times might be enough. Not once or twice.

房。我相信在波特兰会有一些专门整修厨房的店,我会翻一下黄页。我想要一间全是象牙色和浅绿色的厨房。

B: 我同意。颜色必须柔和愉悦,做饭时你要觉得舒服才好。

A: 我? 做饭? 喂,亲爱的,你才要煮,你煮啦。

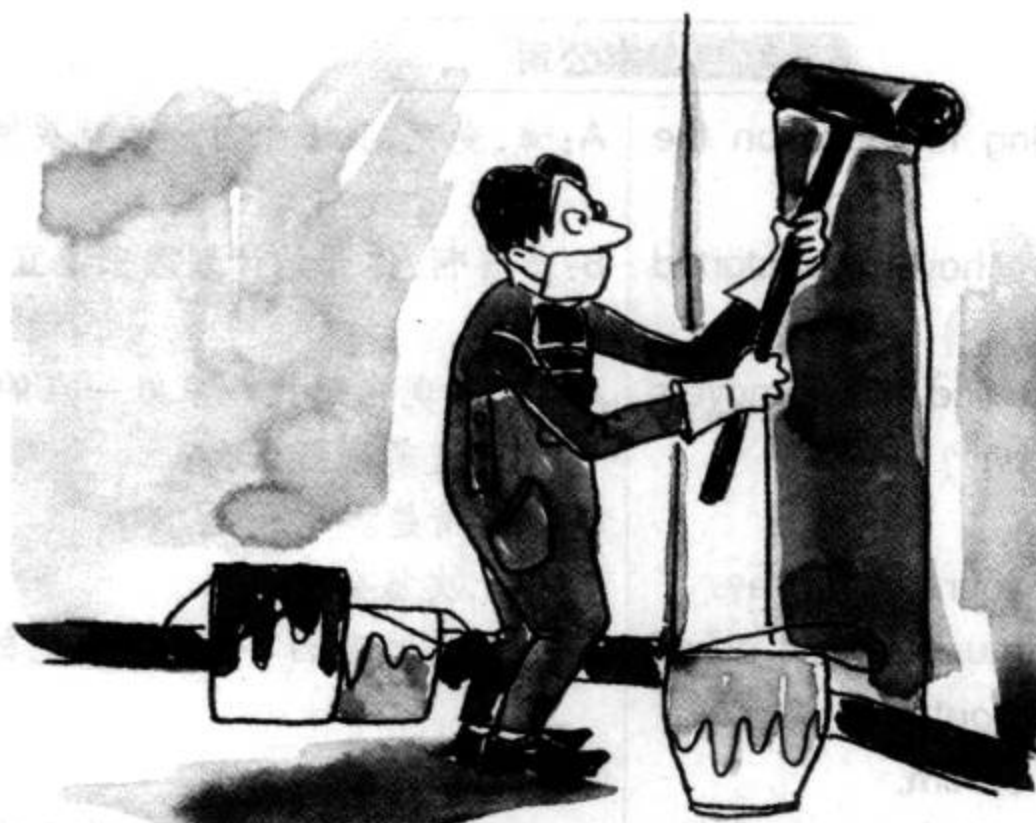
B: 不,我不认为。我会在新的茶室忙着品茶。

A: 好吧,我想我们请个厨子好了。那你明年就买不起任何衣服了。

B: 而且你必须卖掉你的摩托车,还有你的摄影机,是不是?

A: 也许我一周煮饭一两次,怎么样?

B: 四次才够,不只是一两次。



Unit
5

搬家

Moving into a New House

文化
链接

Culture Links

美国人喜欢搬家,原因是多种多样的,但主要原因是工作变动。选择职业的灵活性,使美国的经济富于适应性,而这一切注伴随着居住地点的迁徙。

在美国,搬家没有任何限制,没有户口制度,搬家不必经过任何人的批准,甚至也不需要到警察局去报告一声。搬家也很方便,有专门的搬家公司,有的专管本市搬家,有的则经营往外地的搬迁。

大部分美国人并不租房子,他们喜欢买房子住。其中一个重要原因是政府鼓励“居者有其屋”,所以在税收上给予优惠。办法是贷款所付的利息不用交所得税。当他想搬家时,可以把房子卖掉。如果这是分期付款,而贷款还没有还清,那他把房子和债务关系一起出售。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 联系搬家公司

A: Hi, Mike. I am going to move on the first of next month.

B: Congratulations! So, have you started planning your move?

A: Yes, I am trying to find good movers now. Do you know any?

B: Not really.

A: What did you do for your last move?

B: Since I did not have much staff, I asked my cousin to help me out.

A: Oh, that's very nice of him.

B: Yeah, it was. But I still have some infor-

A: 嗨, 麦克, 我下个月一号就要搬家了。

B: 恭喜啊, 你开始计划搬家事宜了么?

A: 嗯, 我现在想找一家好一点的搬家公司。你知道哪家好点么?

B: 不太清楚。

A: 你上次怎么搬的?

B: 由于我的东西不多, 就请我的堂哥帮我搬了。

A: 嗯, 他人真好。

B: 对啊, 不过我还留有一些上次收集的搬

搬家 · Moving into a New House

mation that I collected last time, and if you want, I will give it to you.

A: Yes, please.

家信息,如果你要我就给你。

A: 好啊,拜托你了。

2. 咨询搬家费用

A: Good afternoon, Easy Move. How can I help you?

B: I plan to move this Friday. I'd like to hire some professionals.

A: Have you finished packing your belongings?

B: Not Yet. I have packed about half of my things.

A: How many packed cartons do you have now?

B: Twelve.

A: Okay. Would you like us to help pack?

B: How much will that cost?

A: That depends. We will send a representative over to your place to give you a formal written estimate.

B: That might be too expensive for me. I think I just need some professionals to help me move on the moving day.

A: No problem. So, how many pieces of big furniture do you have?

B: Three: a 27-inch television, one twin-size bed, and a dining table.

A: Okay. Which floor do you live on?

B: I am on the fifth floor now and my new place is on the third. There are elevators in both buildings.

A: I see. Do you know the distance between the new place and your current home?

B: It is about 20 minutes walking distance.

A: 下午好,便利搬家公司,请问我可以帮到您什么吗?

B: 我打算这个周五搬家,所以想从你们那儿雇佣几个搬运工。

A: 你已经打包完毕了么?

B: 还没有,我打包好了大概一半的东西。

A: 你现在打包好的有几包?

B: 12 箱。

A: 好的,需要我们帮你打包么?

B: 费用是多少?

A: 视情况而定,我们会派一名服务代表上门评估,并且给你一份正式的估价单。

B: 对我来说可能太贵了。我还是只雇佣一些搬运工在搬家那天帮下忙就好了。

A: 没问题,你有多少大件家具呢?

B: 3 个,一台 27 寸的电视、一个双人床和一张餐桌。

A: 好,你住几楼?

B: 我现在住 5 楼,新家在 3 楼,两栋楼都有电梯。

A: 我知道了。新家和现住处之间离多远呢?

B: 走路大概需要 20 分钟。

住房及汽车 · Housing & Cars

A: Okay. In your case, I suggest that you hire two movers and a medium sized truck.

B: And how much will the total cost be?

A: The minimum travel time is three hours, and we charge \$40. After the first 3 hours, we charge \$20 per hour for two movers.

B: That sounds good. So, it is 10 o'clock in the morning on next Friday, Okay?

A: Yes, it is. You got it.

A: 好的, 根据你的情况, 我建议你雇用两个搬家工人和一个中型卡车。

B: 那总共要多少钱?

A: 基本的雇佣时间是3小时, 我们的收费是40美元。之后, 每多一个小时, 两个搬家工的收费为20美元。

B: 听起来不错。那星期五早上10点, 可以么?

A: 没问题。

3. 换大房子

A: I am thinking about moving out of my place.

B: How come? I thought you liked your house.

A: I do. But with three kids growing up, it's too small.

B: You must have saved up a lot of money.

A: Not really. But if I could get a decent price for my house, I could probably afford a detached house with 4 rooms.

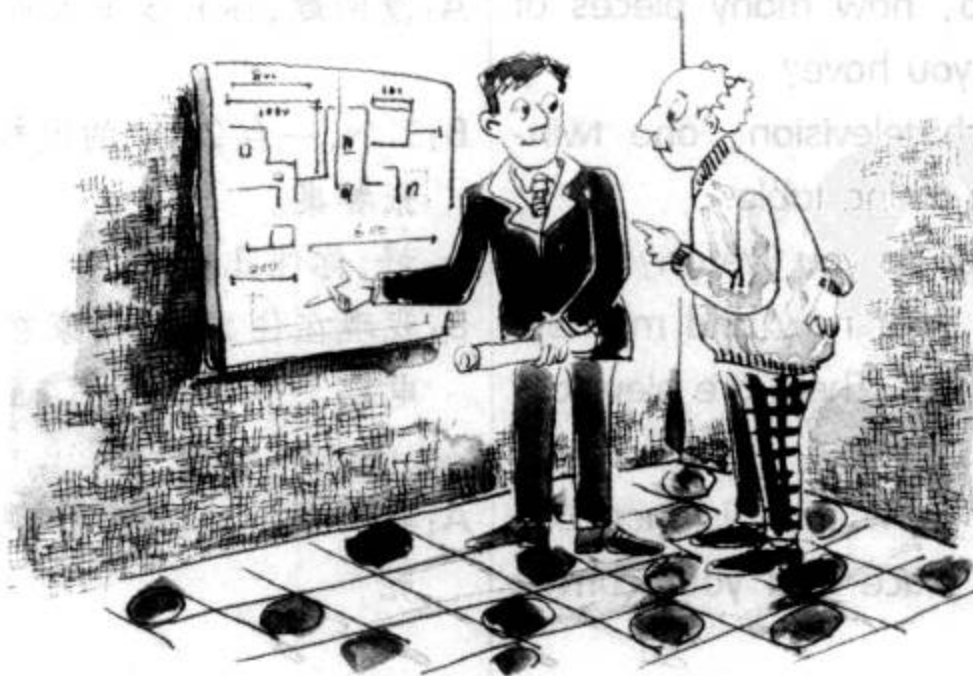
A: 我打算搬家。

B: 为什么? 我还以为你喜欢你的房子呢?

A: 我喜欢, 但3个孩子正在长大, 它有点太小了。

B: 你一定攒了不少钱。

A: 并不太多, 但如果我的房子能卖个不错的价钱, 我也许可以买个有4个房间的单元房了。



Unit
6

申请驾照

Applying for a Driver's License

文化
链接

Culture Links

美国是汽车的王国,在美国 16 岁以上的公民几乎人人都有驾驶执照,都会开车。因而驾驶执照在美国不仅仅是开车的本子,而更是一种广泛使用的身份证件。美国有效的身份证有很多种,护照、绿卡、社会安全卡、ID 卡——很类似中国的身份证,但社会最接受的却是驾驶执照(driver license)。无论看病、开设银行帐号、去法庭、找工作,有了驾驶执照就都可以进门了。ID 卡只有那些因为某种原因不能开车或驾驶执照被没收的人才去领取。所以如果留学美国或旅居美国,申请一本驾驶执照会给你的生活和工作带来无穷便利。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 出国换驾照

A: How do you get a driver's license?

B: Easy. You take a writing test, and then they give you a learner's permit.

A: Then what?

B: You can drive with somebody experienced next to you. After a while, you take a road test, and get the real license.

A: What if I already have a driver's license in China?

B: Then you can get an international license from China, and change it into an American license.

A: That easy?

A: 怎么才能得到驾照?

B: 很容易。先笔试,然后你就能得到一个学习驾照。

A: 然后呢?

B: 你旁边坐个有经验的司机,你就可以开车了。过段时间,你参加路考,就有正式驾照了。

A: 要是我在中国已经有驾照了呢?

B: 那你可以在中国换成一个国际驾照,到这里再换成美国驾照。

A: 那么简单啊?

住房及汽车 · Housing & Cars

B: Yeah.

B: 是啊!

2. 找教练

A: How do I learn how to drive?

B: You have got your learner's permit, right?

A: Yes, I passed the writing test.

B: You can either go to the driving schools or learn from friends.

A: Driving schools are expensive. I'd rather learn from friends.

B: Most people learn from friends. Anybody with one year's driving experience can teach you.

A: Can you teach me?

B: Sure, I have been driving for 8 years.

A: Great! I bet you are a good teacher.

B: I have taught quite a few people. When do you want to start?

A: How about today evening, 7 o'clock?

B: Okay.

A: Thanks.

B: Not at all.

A: 我怎样才能学会开车呢?

B: 你拿到学习驾照了, 对吧?

A: 是啊, 我考过了笔试。

B: 你可以去驾校, 或者跟朋友学。

A: 驾校太贵, 我想跟朋友学。

B: 大多数人都是跟朋友学的。任何有一年驾龄的人都可以教你。

A: 你能教我吗?

B: 当然能啊, 我有八年驾龄了。

A: 太好了, 你敢肯定一定是个好老师。

B: 我教过很多人。你想从什么时候开始?

A: 今天怎么样? 晚上7点?

B: 好的。

A: 谢谢你。

B: 不客气。

3. 路考

A: Hello. Are you ready for your test?

B: Yes.

A: Please show me the gestures for turning left, turn right and parking.

B: OK.

A: Get into the car and start it.

B: OK.

A: Go forward and turn right onto the road. Do not speed.

B: OK.

A: Stop here and make a three-point turn.

B: OK.

A: Parallel park in front of the car.

A: 嗨! 准备好了吗?

B: 好了。

A: 请演示一下左转、右转和停车的手势。

B: 好的。

A: 上车, 发动。

B: 好的。

A: 往前走, 右转, 上路, 不用加速。

B: 好的。

A: 在这里停下来, 三点转向。

B: 好的。

A: 靠边停车, 停到那辆车前面。

申请驾照 · Applying for a Driver's License

B: OK.

A: Congratulations! You have got your license! Go and have your picture taken.

B: Thanks.

A: You are welcome.

B: 好的。

A: 祝贺你, 通过了(拿到驾照了), 去照相吧。

B: 谢谢。

A: 不客气。



Unit
7

买车

Buying a Car

文化
链接

Culture Links

美国是全球最大的汽车市场,也是最大的二手车市场,汽车平均更新周期仅4年,去年二手车成交量约为4,500万辆,是新车的2.5倍。买二手车的主要是两类人,一是囊中羞涩,但是迫于生活工作需要必须买车的低收入者,二是追求实惠的消费者。价格方面,美国建立了完善的二手车评估市场,由公认的二手车参考价格加上技术状态的鉴定来决定,除了原车的价格、使用时间、公里数等以外,日后的使用寿命和维修成本也是重要的因素。至于如何防止以次充好,美国主要采用社会化认证的办法解决。目前,全美已经形成了几家权威的二手车车况认证机构,其设立的遍布全国的工作人员会根据顾客的需要详细检测二手车,到车辆管理局查阅有关事故等情况的记录,向顾客提供一份详细的车况检测报告,并收取一定的费用。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues

1. 买二手车(1)

A: Hello, I am Amy, so you are Tony?

B: Well, yes. Nice to meet you!

A: Nice to meet you... How old is your car?

B: Three years old, with 35,000 miles on it.

It has power windows, door locks, cassette player, AC, and new tires.

A: There is a dent in the front. Is that from an accident?

B: No, someone hit it with something.

A: Can we take a test drive?

B: Sure. I will come with you.

A: Okay. The engine is quite. The breaks

A: 你好,我是艾米,你是托尼么?

B: 嗯,对,很高兴见到你。

A: 我也是。那么,你这辆车开多久了?

B: 三年,开了35,000英里了。有自动车窗、自动门锁、录音机、空调。轮胎是新的。

A: 前面有点凹进去了,撞过车?

B: 没有,被人拿东西砸了一下。

A: 可以试开一下么?

B: 当然,我和你一起去。

A: 好吧,发动机声音挺轻的,刹车也可以,

买车 · Buying a Car

are OK. The alignment is a bit off. I don't like the suspensions. Tony, how much are you asking for?

B: \$7,900.

A: I will take it to a garage to have it checked over. If everything is fine, I will give you \$5,000.

B: No way. \$7,000.

A: Come on, there is a dent that's not pretty. I am not sure if you had an accident. Let's make a deal. \$5200, that's it!

B: I can not do that.

A: I will leave you my number. Give me a ring if you change your mind.

B: Okay.

车轮有点偏。我不喜欢这个安全带。托尼,你要多少钱?

B: 7,900 美元。

A: 我要到修车店检查一下。要是没毛病的话,我给你 5,000 美元。

B: 不行, 7,000 美元。

A: 你看,前面撞了,又这么不好看,不知道你是不是出过车祸。我们折中一下, 5,200 美元!

B: 不行。

A: 我给你我的电话号码,你要是改变主意了,就给我个电话。

B: 好的。

2. 卖二手车(2)

A: Hello, are you interested in this Honda?

B: Hi, I am just looking.

A: It's a good car.

B: What year is it?

A: 1999.

B: How about the mileage?

A: 6,000 miles, all highway mileage.

B: What do you mean?

A: Highway miles are not as bad as local miles. They do not hurt car as much.

B: Oh, why such a high mileage?

A: The owner was commuting everyday crossing the state line.

B: Okay. Does this car have a warranty?

A: One month.

B: How do I make sure I am not buying a junk?

A: You'll check it out anyway you want. You can take it to a garage.

A: 你好,喜欢这辆本田车吗?

B: 你好,我只是看看。

A: 是辆好车。

B: 哪年的?

A: 1999 年的。

B: 里程数呢?

A: 6,000 英里,都是高速公路里程。

B: 什么意思?

A: 高速公路里程不像市内里程那样伤车。

B: 哦,为什么这么高?

A: 以前的车主每天跨州通勤。

B: 哦,车有保修么?

A: 一个月。

B: 那我怎么知道我买的不是坏车?

A: 你想怎么检查都行,也可以送车店检查。

住房及汽车 · Housing & Cars

B: How much is it?

A: \$5,900.

B: I'll have to think about it.

A: Leave your phone number, and I will give you a call if the price gets reduced.

B: Okay.

B: 价格多少?

A: 5,900 美元。

B: 我得考虑一下。

A: 留个号码吧, 如果减价了我通知你。

B: 好的。

3. 买新车(1)

A: Hello, how are you? I am Jack.

B: Hello, I am Amy.

A: What brings you here?

B: I saw that your Corollas are on sale.

A: Yes, it is really a good deal. \$1,000 discount. I've never seen a sale as good as this one.

B: Tell me about Corollas.

A: Sure. It has 1.8 liter engine. This one comes with all power options, air condition, CD player, full size spare tire, automatic transmission and ABC. The window price is \$17,000, and I can give you for \$16,000.

B: Sounds good. How about \$15,000?

A: You must be kidding! You cannot get that price anywhere.

B: I am serious. \$15,000.

A: Can you put down a \$2,000 deposit, and I'll talk to my manager, see what we can do.

B: No. Just talk to your manager and let me know.

A: Okay, I'll be right back... Congratulations! The manager approved the final price \$15,000.

B: The price is fine if you give me free security system and free carpet mats.

A: 您好, 我是杰克。

B: 您好, 我是艾米。

A: 什么风把您给吹来啦?

B: 你们的花冠在减价?

A: 是啊, 真是好机会啊, 减价 1,000 美元, 我从来都没见过这么好的价钱。

B: 介绍一下你们的花冠吧!

A: 好啊, 发动机是 1.8 升的, 所有自动装置都齐备; 空调、CD 播放机、全尺寸备胎、自动排挡, 还有防锁死刹车系统。要价是 17,000 美元, 我给你 16,000 美元。

B: 听起来不错。15,000 美元怎么样?

A: 你在开玩笑吧? 没有人能接受这个价!

B: 我是认真的。就 15,000 美元。

A: 你先付 2,000 美元订金, 我去和我们经理商量下, 看看怎么办。

B: 不, 你现在就去和你们经理商量。

A: 好的, 我马上回来……恭喜你啦! 我们经理同意了。15,000 美元。

B: 你要是给我免费保安系统和地毯垫的话, 这个价格就没问题。

A: You are really tough. You got a deal.

B: Thanks!

A: 你真难缠。好吧!

B: 谢谢!

4. 买新车(2)

A: I like the Honda Accord you showed me before. I think it's more practical for my needs.

B: Alright, sir. You are making a good choice. Honda has made a lot of design improvements in the new Accord.

A: What does it come with standard?

B: On all our new cars, the standards include: air conditioning, anti-lock brakes, air bags, and an AM/FM stereo with a CD player. But on the Accord, there is another standard item as well. The Accord comes with cruise control.

A: Cruise control? I don't like that.

B: Why not, sir?

A: I think it's dangerous. What if I can't turn it off?

B: Well, sir, I know some of our customers are concerned about cruise control. But Honda has never had a single cruise control malfunction that led to an accident.

A: I wish it didn't have cruise control. My wife doesn't like it either.

B: You know, sir, you don't have to use it. You can turn it on or off. If you don't want to use it, you just never turn it on.

A: I suppose. And what about the sunroof? Is that standard?

B: No, the sunroof is optional, sir.

A: I see.

A: 我喜欢上次你介绍给我的那辆本田雅阁。它比较符合我的需求。

B: 好的, 先生。你选对了。本田在新款雅阁的设计上做了很多改进。

A: 基本配备是什么呢?

B: 我们新车的基本配备包括: 空调、防锁死煞车系统、气囊和带有 AM/FM 调频以及 CD 的音响。但是雅阁还有另一项基本配备, 就是定速器。

A: 定速器? 我不喜欢那个。

B: 为什么不呢?

A: 我觉得很危险, 万一不能解除设定呢?

B: 嗯, 先生, 我知道有些顾客很在意定速器的问题。但是雅阁的车从来没有因为定速器故障而导致过意外事件。

A: 我希望不要有定速器, 我太太也不喜欢。

B: 先生, 你不必用到它。你可以激活或解除设定, 如果你不想用, 不要激活它就好。

A: 我想也是。那么天窗呢? 是基本配备吗?

B: 不是。天窗是选择性的, 先生。

A: 我知道了。

住房及汽车 · Housing & Cars

5. 新车订购

A: For me, now an important question to buy an Accord is the time when I can get this car. I need a new car rather soon.

B: Well, I can say that the new models will be here in August. If you order one now, we will have it for you in August.

A: That's good enough, I think. What colors does the new Accord come in?

B: We have this new model in red, white, black, or silver. These are the standard colors. Of course you could specially order from various other colors too.

A: My brother has last year's Accord. And his car is a kind of soft purple color mixed with silver. I really like that color. I wonder if I can get that color on my Accord.

B: I know the color you mean. Is this it, sir?

A: Yes, I think that's it. Can I get that on the Accord?

B: Yes, you can. That color is very popular with Honda buyers. So we've kept it available.

A: Well, I think I want to order the new Accord then. It looks like an excellent car.

B: You have made a good choice, sir. I drive an Accord myself. They are very solidly built machines, very reliable.

A: Yes, I know. I think Honda is the most reliable car on the road. I would never change to anything else. The Honda I have now almost never has service problems. It runs smooth as silk.

B: Alright, sir. I will get the paperwork ready for you. Just a moment.

A: 对于我来说,现在一个重要的问题是什么时候可以拿到雅阁车。我很快就需要车子。

B: 新的款式八月份会到。如果你现在订购,我们八月份可以交车。

A: 我觉得那还不错。新款式的雅阁有什么颜色?

B: 新款式的颜色有红色、白色、黑色和银色。这些都是标准颜色。当然你也可以特别指定其他的颜色。

A: 我哥哥有一辆去年的雅阁车子,是淡紫色混合银色。我很喜欢那个颜色,我不可不选那个颜色?

B: 我知道你说的颜色。是这款吗? 先生。

A: 是的,就是那种。我可以选那种色吗?

B: 可以。那个颜色在本田的买主中是很受欢迎的,所以那种颜色我们是接受指定的。

A: 嗯,那么我想订购一辆雅阁的新款车。看起来像是很棒的车子。

B: 你的选择是正确的。我自己也开雅阁的车,很坚固,很可靠。

A: 是的,我知道。我认为本田是路上最可靠的车子。我不会改变心意的。我现在开的本田车几乎没有送修的问题,它跑得像丝绸一般平顺。

B: 好的,先生,我帮你填写资料,请稍等。

Unit
8

租车

Renting a Car

文化
链接

Culture Links

到租车行租车,一般会要求查看身份证件,因此 personal ID 或 driver's license 一定要随身携带。如果有其他证件最好也能一并带着,以备不时之需。租车时间的长短看你个人而定,三天或两个礼拜,现在就要租,或是明天以后再来 pick up,都要先跟租车行谈好。要租车也要办 insurance,可以在租车的时候一并办理,看多少人要开这部车,就办几个人。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 租普通轿车

A: How much is it to rent an economy car?

B: ¥200 a day or ¥1200 a week, unlimited mileage.

A: Could I have one for tomorrow morning?

B: Do you have your driver's license?

A: Sure. Here it is.

B: Good. Now just complete this form.

A: 租一辆便宜的车多少钱?

B: 一天 200 元或一星期 1200 元,对行驶里程没有限制。

A: 明早我能租辆车吗?

B: 你有驾驶执照吗?

A: 有。给你。

B: 好的。现在请填写一下这张表格。

2. 租旅行车

A: What's the rate for a station wagon?

B: The daily rate is \$22.00 per mile.

A: Good. I'll take it right now, if possible.

B: Can I see your license, please?

A: Of course. I have my own license and an international license.

B: That's fine. Fill out this form and let me

A: 租旅行车的费用是多少?

B: 每天一英里 22 美元。

A: 好的。如果可能的话,我想马上就租一辆。

B: 请先给我看一下你的驾驶执照好吗?

A: 当然,我有自己的驾驶执照,还有一个国际驾照。

B: 很好。请把这份表格填好,同时给我看

住房及汽车 · Housing & Cars

see your credit card, please.

看你的信用卡。

3. 租中型汽车

A: How much does it cost to rent a mid-size car?

A: 租一辆中型汽车需要多少钱?

B: I can give you one for \$30 a day or \$200 a week.

B: 可以一天 30 美元, 也可以一星期 200 美元。

A: Fine. I'd like to reserve one for next Tuesday.

A: 好的。我想预订一辆, 下周二用。

B: May I see your driver's license?

B: 我可以看一下你的驾照吗?

A: Yes. It's right here.

A: 是的, 在这儿。

B: OK. You'll have to use a credit card or leave a \$100 deposit.

B: 好的。你可以使用信用卡, 或者先交 100 美元押金。

4. 租搬运车

A: If I wanted to rent a van, how much would it cost?

A: 如果我想租一辆搬运车的话, 费用是多少?

B: Let's see. That would be ¥160 a day a mile.

B: 让我看看。每英里一天 160 元。

A: That sounds OK. I'll need it from the 10th to the 14th.

A: 听起来不错。我需要租一辆 10 号到 14 号用。

B: Do you have a valid license?

B: 你有有效的驾照吗?

A: Yeah. Here.

A: 是的, 给你。

B: Fine. Now complete this form and sign your name at the bottom.

B: 好的。现在填完这份表格, 在最下面签上你的名字。

Unit
9

加油

Gas Pumping

文化
链接

Culture Links

在欧美等国,加油站和停车场可以说是开车人士的好朋友,凡车辆的补给或检修小问题,几乎都能在这里得到解决,所以学会相关英语表达是很必要的。除了停车的费率和方式外,像冷却器(radiator)、火花塞(spark plug)、汽车水箱(auto radiator)和汽油(gasoline)等单词也是一定要熟练的,这样才有办法与工作人员沟通。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 加无铅汽油

A: Fill it up with unleaded and check the oil, please.

B: Do you want me to check the tires?

A: No, that's all for now. What does it come to?

B: \$ 10.00.

A: 请加满无铅汽油,并且检查一下。

B: 需要我检查一下轮胎吗?

A: 不用了,只加油就可以了。多少钱?

B: 10 美元。

2. 加普通油(1)

A: Fill it up with regular, please.

B: All right. Should I take a look at your battery?

A: No, thanks. I'm in a hurry. How much is it?

B: ¥200, please.

A: 请加满普通油。

B: 好的。我要查看一下你的蓄电池吗?

A: 不用了,谢谢。我赶时间。多少钱?

B: 200 元。

3. 加普通油(2)

A: Fill it up with premium, please.

B: Sure. Should I check your radiator?

A: 请加满高级油。

B: 好的。要我检查一下水箱吗?

住房及汽车 · Housing & Cars

A: No, that's OK. How much do I owe you?

B: That's be ¥150.

A: 不用了, 这样就可以了。多少钱?

B: 150 元。

4. 加高级油

A: Fill it up, please.

B: Fine. Do you want your windshield cleaned?

A: No, thank you. I don't have time. How much is that?

B: It comes to \$15.00.

A: 请加满油。

B: 好的。需要我擦一下挡风玻璃吗?

A: 不需要, 谢谢。我没时间。多少钱?

B: 一共 15 美元。

5. 询问汽油价格

A: Hi. Do you want a fill-up?

B: Yes, please.

A: Which type of gas do you want? Regular, Super, or Premium Unleaded?

B: What's the price difference?

A: Regular is \$1.15, Super is \$1.25 and Premium is \$1.39.

B: Just fill it up with Regular, Unleaded, please.

A: Do you want me to check the tires and the fluids?

B: Yes, I would. Thanks a lot.

A: 你好。你要把油箱加满吗?

B: 是的, 请加满。

A: 你要加哪种汽油? “普通”、“超级”还是“特级”无铅汽油?

B: 价格有什么不同?

A: “普通”1.15 美元, “超级”1.25 美元, 而“特级”是 1.39 美元。

B: 请加满“普通”无铅汽油。

A: 你要不要我检查轮胎和各种油液?

B: 好, 请检查。太感谢了。



Unit
10

汽车维护及修理

Car Maintenance and Repairs

文化
链接

Culture Links

美国现在的汽车保有量为两亿辆,不仅远远高于一般发展中国家的水平,而且也远高于许多发达国家。由于美国的高速公路很发达,汽车行驶速度较高,车辆的常用时速通常在 96~160 公里之间,汽车年行驶里程在 1.6 万~4.8 万公里之间。由于美国车辆的使用寿命较长(乘用车平均 8.1 年),导致车辆、特别是大行程的在用车润滑油更换频繁,发动机、变速箱也会出现多次修理。此外,美国市场保有车型年款跨度大、车型繁杂,其中日本车占 50%、美国车占 30%、其他国家占 20%。这些市场的现实状况都促使美国的汽车服务业走向多元化。而自 20 世纪 80 年代以来,专业化的汽车维修服务连锁网络飞速发展,已逐步成为美国汽车售后服务市场的主导力量。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues

1. 修车

A: Can I help you?

B: Yes, my breaks are not working well.

A: What's wrong with them?

B: I hear a noise and feel vibrations when I step on the brake.

A: The front brake?

B: I think so.

A: What kind of car is it?

B: Toyota Corolla 2002.

A: Write down your name and address, give me the key, and I will check it out?

B: Do you charge for checking it out?

A: No.

A: 你好,要帮忙么?

B: 是的,我的车刹车不太好。

A: 怎么了?

B: 刹车时有噪音,还振动。

A: 前闸?

B: 好像是。

A: 什么车?

B: 丰田花冠 2002。

A: 写下你的名字和地址,给我车钥匙,我检查下。

B: 检查要钱么?

A: 不要。

住房及汽车 · Housing & Cars

B: How long is it going to take?

A: About half an hour.

B: I'll wait.

B: 要多少时间?

A: 大约半小时。

B: 那我等着。

2. 修发动机

A: Hello, can I help you?

B: Yes, my engine warning light is on.

A: How long has it been on for?

B: Just since today.

A: You can still drive, without problems.

B: It runs fine.

A: Let's check it out. There'll be a \$45 charge to check it over. If you fix it with us, we'll include the \$45 into your repair.

B: Okay.

A: Please write down your address and phone number, and sign here.

B: Okay.

A: It'll be about an hour. Are you going to wait?

B: No, you can give a call when you have done checking.

A: No problem.

A: 您好, 有事么?

B: 是啊, 我的发动机警示灯亮了。

A: 多长时间了?

B: 今天刚发现的。

A: 还能开, 没问题。

B: 能开。

A: 检查一下吧, 45 美元修理费。你要是在这里修, 这 45 美元会算到修理费里面的。

B: 好的。

A: 请写下你的名字和地址, 并在这里签一个字。

B: 好的。

A: 大概要一个小时, 你等吗?

B: 我不等, 检查完了给我打个电话。

A: 好的。

3. 换机油

A: Dick, I want to learn how to change the oil. I'm tired of going to the garage.

B: OK, you need to do it every 3,000 miles. Let's do it together.

A: What do I need?

B: Buy a wrench for the oil filter, a case of engine oil and a pan for used oil.

A: Okay. I'll get them ready. Let's do it tomorrow.

B: OK.

A: 迪克, 我想学学换机油, 不想去修理铺了。

B: 好吧, 每 3,000 英里换一次, 我们一起干吧!

A: 我需要准备些什么?

B: 买一个滤油器扳手、一箱机油, 再买一个接油盆。

A: 好的, 我准备好, 我们明天换。

B: 好的。

Unit
11

停车场

A Car Park

文化
链接

Culture Links

闹市区有些地段为保持交通通畅,禁止汽车行驶,驾车人必须把车停泊后再乘地铁等其他公共交通工具进城。有些地段标明不能随意停车,如果违规停车,警察会派人把车拖走。违章者除了要被罚款外,还要付拖车的费用。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues

1. 寻找停车场

A: Is there a car park near the supermarket?

B: Yes, there is an underground car park near the supermarket.

A: I see. Thanks.

A: 超市附近有停车场吗?

B: 是的,这个超市附近有一个地下停车场。

A: 知道了。谢谢。

2. 免费停车场

A: There are many free parking spaces.

You can save money on parking there.

B: All right. Do you know the nearest way there?

A: Yes. You can just follow me.

A: 那里有很多免费停车位。你把车停在那里可以省钱。

B: 好的。你知道去那儿最近的路吗?

A: 我知道,跟着我走就可以了。

3. 私人停车场

A: That restaurant has six parking spaces.

B: What are the odds of finding a parking space there?

A: Almost zero.

A: 那个餐馆有6个停车位。

B: 在那里找到停车位的可能性有多大?

A: 几乎为零。

Chapter 11

健康与疾病

Health & Illness



Unit
1

看病

Seeing a Doctor

文化
链接

Culture Links

生老病死是自然规律。在西方,知晓自己的病情甚至选择治疗方法是病人的权利,让病人了解病情和治疗方法是医生工作的一部分。在整个医疗过程中,医生总是不遗余力地帮助病人及其家属消除对疾病和死亡的恐惧感。他们认为,隐瞒病情是对病人的欺骗,人只有在明了病情之后才能对有限的生命做出最适当的安排(包括写遗嘱)。当然,在抢救时、手术中以及其他紧急、特殊情况下,医护人员是以安慰和稳定伤病员情绪为工作原则的。

牙医行业通常索价高昂,而且看牙医一般都很早就预约。但是如果你有紧急情况,很多牙科医生还是会设法抽空给你看的。平时最好上别人推荐的医生那里去看病。紧急情况下,应该直接去最近医院的急诊室。美国的医疗费普遍昂贵。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues

1. 体重困扰

A: You have got a problem, haven't you?

B: Yes. I am getting fat. What should I do?

A: Eat less and exercise more. Do not eat too much sweet food.

A: 您有什么问题么?

B: 有,我在变胖。我该怎么办?

A: 少吃多锻炼。别吃太多甜食。

2. 感冒就医

A: What's wrong with you, young man?

B: I've got a headache and a cough.

A: I see. You've got a cold.

B: What should I do, doctor?

A: Take this medicine three times a day.

B: Yes.

A: Drink a lot of water and have a good

A: 你怎么啦,年轻人?

B: 我头疼,还咳嗽。

A: 哦,我知道了。你感冒了。

B: 那我该怎么办呢,医生?

A: 吃这个药,一天三次。

B: 好的。

A: 多喝水,多休息,很快就会好的。

健康与疾病 · Health & Illness

rest. You'll be well soon.

B: Thank you.

B: 谢谢。

3. 发烧就医

A: Now tell me, what's your problem?

A: 现在告诉我, 你哪里不舒服?

B: I don't feel like eating. And I cannot sleep well.

B: 我不想吃饭, 还睡不好。

A: Do you have a fever?

A: 你发烧么?

B: Yes, a low fever. I feel terrible. Am I dying?

B: 是的, 有低烧。我感觉很不好。我快死了么?

A: Certainly not. Take one of these white pills three times a day.

A: 当然不会。这些白色药片一天吃三次, 一次吃一片。

B: Before the meals or after the meals?

B: 饭前吃还是饭后吃?

A: After the meals. And do not forget to take two sleeping pills before going to bed.

A: 饭后吃。别忘了睡觉前吃两片安眠药。

4. 头疼就医

A: What's wrong with you?

A: 你怎么啦?

B: My head hurts badly.

B: 我头疼得厉害。

A: How long has it been like this?

A: 像这样疼多久啦?

B: Since last night.

B: 从昨晚开始疼的。

A: Do you have a sleeping problem?

A: 你睡眠有问题么?

B: Yes, I even can't fall asleep these days.

B: 嗯, 这两天我都睡不着。

A: I think you'd better have a further examine, and before the result comes out, try to relax yourself and take the medicine before you sleep. It will help you to kill the pain and make you sleep well.

A: 我想你最好做个进一步的检查, 在结果出来之前, 不要太紧张。睡前吃这个药片, 可以帮助止痛和改善睡眠。

B: Is it serious, Doctor?

B: 我的病严重么, 医生?

A: When the result comes out, I will tell you about it. Remember, never be afraid or be too tired.

A: 检查结果出来的时候, 我会通知你的。千万不要担心。也不要过于劳累。

B: OK, thank you, Doctor.

B: 好的, 谢谢了, 医生。

5. 牙疼就医

A: ... I ... I have a toothache. ...

A: 我 我牙疼

B: OK. Let me see. Say "ah".

A: Ah. ...

B: Oh...how often do you brush your teeth?

A: Once a day.

B: Do you like eat chocolate or candies?

A: Yes, I do! I like them very much!!!

B: OK. I give you some advice. You should eat more vegetables and fruits. Please don't eat more chocolate or candies. They are not good for you. And you should brush your teeth twice a day or three times a day. If you take my advice, you will be better than now.

A: Thank you, doctor! I'll take your advice.

B: 好的,让我看看。说“啊”。

A: 啊.....

B: 哦.....你常刷牙么?

A: 一天一次。

B: 那你喜欢吃巧克力或者糖果么?

A: 嗯,我喜欢。非常喜欢!

B: 哦,那么我得给你些建议。你要多吃蔬菜和水果。不要再吃糖和巧克力了,它们对你没好处。而且,你每天要刷两到三次牙。如果你按我的话去做,你的牙齿状况会比现在好。

A: 谢谢你,医生,我会按您的话做的。

6. 身体检查

A: Have you taken your temperature?

B: Yes, and it is 37 °C.

A: Well, open your mouth and let me have a look. It is nothing serious. You haven't got a fever. But you should take the medicine and need have more rest recently. When you feel well, you could take more exercises, or play sports like basketball, running, and swimming. And eating healthy food, having more fruits and vegetable and drinking milk are good for your health.

B: Yes, I see. Thanks a lot.

A: 你量体温了么?

B: 量了,37 度。

A: 哦,张开嘴,我看看。没什么大问题,你没发烧。但你还是要吃药,最近也要多休息。感觉好些的时候多做运动,打打篮球、跑跑步或者游游泳什么的。多吃健康食品,多吃蔬菜水果,还有多喝奶,对你身体都有好处。

B: 好的,我知道了。谢谢你。

7. 就医就血

A: Now, what seems to be the trouble?

B: It's nothing serious. But I always have a headache, and I haven't slept properly for several weeks. I've also lost appetite and my eyes are burning.

A: Mm, you do look rather pale. Let me

A: 现在,什么地方觉得不舒服?

B: 没什么大毛病。我只是老头疼,最近几个星期睡眠不太好,不想吃东西,眼睛发红。

A: 嗯,你的脸色显得有些苍白。我来给你

健康与疾病 · Health & Illness

take your temperature. Would you put the thermometer under your arm. Please? Now, let me listen to your pulse. Mm, do you feel weak?

B: Yes, I never seem to have any energy.

A: I'll give you a blood test. Would you roll up your sleeve? Just as I thought. You're anemic. You'd better pay more attention to your diet. Eat plenty of fresh fruit and vegetables and food high in protein. And don't stay up late working. Try to get more rest.

B: Thank you.

量量体温。请把体温表放在腋下,好吗? 来,我再诊一下脉,嗯,你感觉虚弱吗?

B: 是的。我似乎一点力气也没有。

A: 给你验一下血。请把袖子卷起来好吗? 和我料想的一样,你患了贫血症。你最好多注意一下饮食,多吃新鲜水果、蔬菜和高蛋白食物。不要熬夜,想办法多休息。

B: 谢谢你。

8. 急诊

A: Doctor, save my baby, please.

B: What symptoms does he have?

A: He has had a fever for one day. Just now at home, he had febrile convulsions with teeth and fists clenched and eyes turned up. We were at a loss what to do. We called an ambulance and brought the baby here.

B: How long did the convulsion last?

A: About 3 minutes.

B: Does he have any other complaints?

A: Three days ago, he began to cough, sneeze and have a running nose. Yesterday, he began to have a fever.

B: Have you taken his temperature?

A: It was 38°C this morning and it was 39°C just now.

B: Let me examine him to see if there is any rash. No rash.

A: Is it serious? Is it meningitis?

B: No, it is not meningitis. Just a high fever

A: 医生,请救救我的孩子。

B: 他有什么症状?

A: 他已经发烧一天了。他还有发热性抽搐,牙关和拳头紧闭,眼睛睁大。我们不知所措。我们叫了一辆救护车把他送来了。

B: 抽搐持续多长时间?

A: 大约3分钟。

B: 他还有别的什么症状吗?

A: 三天前,他开始咳嗽,打喷嚏,流鼻涕。昨天开始发烧。

B: 你量他的体温了吗?

A: 今天早晨是38°C,现在是39°C。

B: 让我检查一下是否有皮疹。没有。

A: 严重吗? 是不是脑膜炎?

B: 不,不是脑膜炎。只是高烧和抽搐,是由

and convulsions, which results from a virus upper respiratory tract infection.

A: Does he have to be admitted to hospital?

B: No. No need for admission. I'll give the baby analgin nose drops to bring down the temperature first. Then I will give you a prescription. The pink tablets are used for his fever. When his temperature is over 38°C , give him one tablet. The other tablets are sedatives for his convulsions. The white liquid is for the cold. Give the baby plenty of water to drink.

A: Thank you very much, doctor.

于呼吸道感染引起的。

A: 他必须要住院吗?

B: 不用, 不必住院。我给这孩子打安乃近鼻部点滴来退烧。然后我给你开个药方。白药片用来退烧。当他的体温超过 38°C 时, 给他吃一片。其他药片是用来治抽搐的。白色药片用来治感冒。给孩子多喝水。

A: 非常感谢, 医生。



Unit
2

开药方与给医嘱

Giving a Prescription and Advice

文化
链接

Culture Links

在国外看病,一定要事先预约。即便是小毛病也应如此,只有急诊才可临时决定去看医生。若要取消预约,必须提前通知并陈述理由。如果想另行预约,可当即提出来。在给予安排后,切记要表示感谢。

生了病就应该去看医生。到哪里去看病,最好先向当地人请教,求其指点;也可打电话向大医院咨询。这样,一则比较可靠,二则经济上合算,切忌盲目就医。

就诊时,要按医生的询问回答。不可自己直接说得了什么病,更不能要求开什么药。医学专业性很强,自己的英语不精时,一定要请内行帮助,以免误事。在国外,医生只管看病开处方,诊所不售药。患者要凭医生所开的处方,到药店买药,也可到超市去购药。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues

1. 医治流感

A: I have a sore throat and my chest hurts.
B: How long have you been like this?
A: Two or three days now.
B: I think you've got the flu. There's a lot of it going around.
A: What do you think I ought to do?
B: Get this prescription filled and go straight to bed.

A: 我喉咙痛,胸口也疼。
B: 你这种症状多久了?
A: 有两三天了。
B: 我想你是患流感了。现在很多人都患了流感。
A: 你认为我该做些什么?
B: 按这个处方开些药,然后上床休息。

2. 医治感染

A: I have the chills and an upset stomach.
B: How long have you felt like this?
A: For most of the week.

A: 我直打冷颤,肚子也痛。
B: 这种症状多久了?
A: 差不多一周了。

开药方与给医嘱 · Giving a Prescription and Advice

B: It sounds as if you have a virus.

A: What do you think I should do?

B: I'll give you something. I want you to take it easy and come back in a couple of days.

B: 听起来你好像感染病菌了。

A: 你觉得我该做些什么?

B: 我会给你开些药。别着急,几天以后再回来检查。

3. 病症诊断(1)

A: I feel dizzy and I have a headache.

B: How long have you been sick?

A: Since yesterday.

B: You seem to be generally run-down.

A: What can I do?

B: It's nothing serious, but you'd better stay in bed for a day or two.

A: 我感到头又晕又疼。

B: 病多长时间了?

A: 从昨天开始的。

B: 你像是一般的劳累过度。

A: 我该怎么办?

B: 并不严重,但是你最好在床上休息一两天。

4. 病症诊断(2)

A: I've got a temperature and my stomach hurts.

B: How long have you been feeling this way?

A: It all started the day before yesterday.

B: You seem to have picked up some kind of infection.

A: What should I do?

B: Take a few days off from work and don't wear yourself out.

A: 我发烧了,胃也疼。

B: 这种症状多长时间了?

A: 前天开始的。

B: 你似乎受了什么感染。

A: 那我该怎么办?

B: 请几天假,不要让自己太疲劳了。

探望病人

Visiting a Patient

文化
链接

Culture Links

在去病人家或者病房探望病人时,千万不要忘了日常的礼仪。如果进门,要轻轻敲一下门。这不仅是让病人知道来人,感到自己仍受尊重,还因为有些病人需要穿衣或者盖被。如果当时病人正在休息,可以静静地等候一会。有时,甚至可以把带去的礼物交给病人的亲属或者医务人员,而自己宁可改天去看望。

在探病时,要掌握好时间。逗留的时间过短,会让病人觉得你在敷衍了事。时间太长,又会使病人觉得十分疲惫。在探望过程中,要尽量控制自己的感情,不要在病人面前流泪。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



医患同事

A: Excuse me. Could you give me the room number of Mr. Thomas?

C: Just a moment. He is in Room 307.

A: How are you feeling?

B: Much better. Thank you for coming to see me.

A: I hear that it was appendicitis. I hope it's nothing serious. I wanted to come earlier.

B: Take a seat.

A: How is the operation?

B: Everything turned out for the best. It didn't hurt at all. But when the anesthetic wore off, I began to feel some pain.

A: 劳驾,请问汤姆斯先生住在那个病房?

C: 稍等,他在 307 号病房。

A: 你现在感觉怎样阿?

B: 好多了。谢谢你来看我。

A: 我听说你得了盲肠炎,希望不是很严重。我早就想来看你了。

B: 请坐。

A: 手术怎么样?

B: 一切都很顺利,一点都不疼。但是麻药过去之后,我觉得有点疼。

探望病人 · Visiting a Patient

A: You'd better take things easy for a while. Just a little patience. What does the doctor say?

B: He says I am doing fine. I might be able to leave the hospital in couple of days.

A: I am glad to hear that. I bring these flowers for you. Hurry up and get well.

B: I sure appreciate your token of friendship. Since the operation, I have been taking only liquid food. That sure takes away my appetite.

A: Yes, you'd better stay away from solid food, until the doctor gives the word.

B: I do hate to be confined in bed. How are things in office?

A: Just as usual, but everyone misses you.

B: I feel the same way as you people too.

A: They send you their best wishes.

B: Please give them mine. I certainly miss everyone.

A: 你最好暂时不要动, 忍耐一下。医生怎么说的?

B: 他说我表现很好, 大概过一两天就可以出院了。

A: 真是太好了, 我买了些花给你, 希望你能快点好起来。

B: 太谢谢你了。自从开刀之后, 我只能吃流质的食物, 现在把胃口都给吃倒了。

A: 是的, 你最好不要吃硬的食物, 直到医生批准为止。

B: 我真的很厌倦待在床上了。公司怎么样?

A: 没什么变化, 但我们大家都很想念你。

B: 我也是, 很想念你们。

A: 他们托我祝你早日康复。

B: 也请替我问候他们。我也很想念他们每一个人。

医护人员交流

A: Nurse, I am sure to die soon. They just don't tell me the truth, I know.

B: But I don't think so. No one has ever said a word that you are to die, only yourself. That means you are not willing to die, right? Actually, you are recovering and what you imagine as your worry is slowing down the treatment. Many cases worse than yours turned out to be hopeful and successful. You must be confident. Your condition is much better physically, but a little bit difficult mentally. The most important thing for you now is cooperation with us.

A: 护士, 我肯定活不了多久了。他们只是不肯告诉我事实, 但是我知道的。

B: 我可不这么认为。谁都没说过您会死, 就您自己这么说。这么说您还是不情愿死, 对吧? 事实上, 您正在康复中, 而您的疑心病反而妨碍了治疗。好多比您情况严重的人都有救。您得有信心。您的身体状况已经好得多了, 问题出在您的精神上。眼下您最重要的是配合治疗。

健康与疾病 · Health & Illness

A: Is what you said really true?

B: Of course. I am a nurse and a nurse tells the truth.

A: Thank you.

A: 您说的都是真的么?

B: 那还用说, 我是个护士, 护士是不说假话的。

A: 谢谢。

3. 探望朋友

A: I am sorry to hear that you are not feeling well. How are you?

B: Thank you. I was operated on for gastric ulcer.

A: Is that so? But I think it shouldn't keep you long in bed.

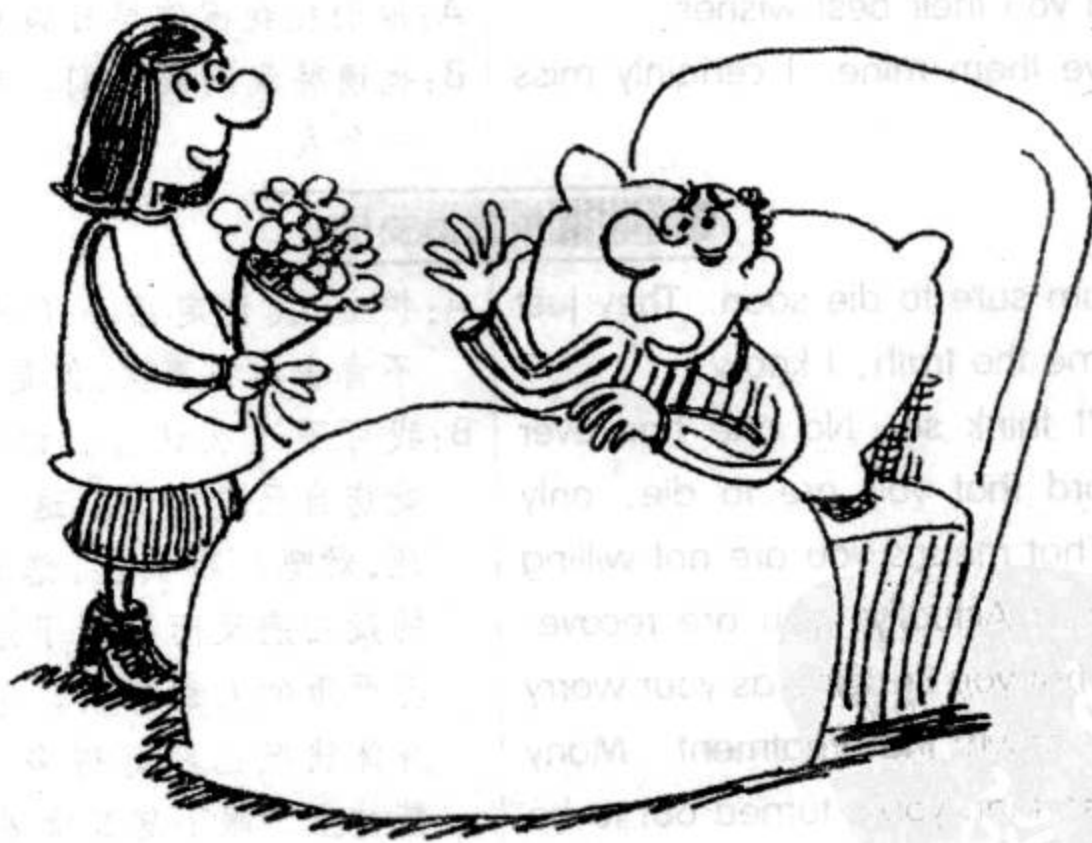
B: Yes. I hope so.

A: 听说你病了, 我很担心。你怎么样了?

B: 谢谢。我患胃溃疡动了手术。

A: 真的吗? 但我想你很快就会康复的。

B: 是啊, 但愿如此。



Unit
4

买药

At the Drugstore

文化
链接

Culture Links

在美国,大夫的座右铭“首先,考虑无伤害”,应当改为“首先,应尽量少开药”。由于保险商不断请求大夫分担处方药的开支,所以在大夫之中产生了畏难心理。例如,有一项新出台的措施是保险公司每月给大夫一笔钱,即使这一个月没有人拿药,给大夫的这笔钱也照付。如果买药的花费少于这笔钱数,大夫就得到差额;如果大夫开的药方大于这笔钱的数目,差额就要由大夫自己掏腰包。根据美国医学会的统计,美国全国已有36%的大夫接受了上述付款方式。有些州,例如加利福尼亚州,大多数大夫接受了全部或部分病人按月的付费方式,而不再使用每次访问收费的方法。如何开药,的确是对大夫良心和道德的一种挑战。

如果你正在定时服药,那么在外出旅游时,应该随身携带所需药品。你也应该带上你正在服药的处方,因为有许多药只按处方供应。另外,药房或药店还出售化妆品、梳洗用品及其他许多商品。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 买药片

A: How do I take the tablets?

B: Please take 2 tablets each time, 4 times a day.

A: How do I take the sucking lozenges?

B: Please put one under your tongue, do not swallow it.

A: How do I take the pills?

B: Please dissolve one pill in water before taking it.

A: Well, thanks very much.

A: 这种药片怎么服用阿?

B: 一次两片,一日四次。

A: 那这种含片呢?

B: 请放在舌头底下,不要吞咽。

A: 那这种丸药呢?

B: 服前请将药丸放在水中溶化。

A: 好,真是太谢谢了。

健康与疾病 · Health & Illness

B: You're welcome.

B: 不客气。

2. 止咳药

A: How do I take the syrup?

A: 请问这种糖浆该怎么服用?

B: One teaspoonful, 3 times a day. Shake it well before taking it.

B: 每天三次, 每次一茶勺。喝前摇匀。

A: How do I take the pain-killers?

A: 那么镇痛剂呢?

B: Take 1 tablet of this pain-killer if you feel pain, but not more than once every four hours.

B: 疼的时候就用一片, 不过每两次必须间隔4小时以上。

A: Well, thanks a lot.

A: 好的, 非常感谢。

B: Not at all.

B: 不客气。

3. 药膏

A: How do I use this adhesive?

A: 这膏药该怎么用阿?

B: This is a special adhesive for easing the pain. Apply it to the painful area and change it in every 2 days.

B: 这膏药是专门镇痛的, 贴在疼痛部位。每隔两天更换一次。

A: How do I use the lotion?

A: 那这种药膏呢?

B: Apply some of the ointment, and rub it into the skin.

B: 取一些药膏, 揉搓使皮肤吸收。

A: Well, thanks very much.

A: 哦, 谢谢了。

B: Not at all.

B: 不客气。

4. 保健药品

A: How do I use the powder?

A: 这种药粉怎么用阿?

B: Please dissolve the powder in hot water. Soak your hand or foot in it for 20 minutes twice a day.

B: 把它溶化在热水里, 把你的手或者脚浸泡在里面20分钟。每天两次。

A: How do I use the eye-drop and ointment?

A: 这种滴眼剂和眼药膏呢?

B: Put the eye-drop into your right eye 4~6 times a day, 1~2 drops each time. Squeeze a bit of the ointment on your eyelid every night.

B: 把滴眼剂滴进你的右眼, 每天4~6次, 每次1~2滴。每晚挤一点眼药膏在你的眼皮上。

A: Well, I see. Thanks.

A: 好的, 我明白了, 谢谢。

B: You're welcome.

B: 不客气。

Unit
5

保健养生

Health Care

文化
链接

Culture Links

今天,美国人煎食物用的黄油正在变成大豆油、橄榄油、谷物调和油,这种改变完全是由健康风潮所引起的。自从2001年美国公共卫生署把肥胖划归为流行病之后,人们就把美国1/3成年人超重和1/2少年儿童超重的问题归结为不健康的饮食习惯,而食物中的脂肪也因此成了众矢之的。

为了健康,越来越多的美国人舍弃了他们钟爱的黄油,而更多地食用富含不饱和脂肪的植物油。原因是黄油的饱和脂肪含量过高。研究证实,饱和脂肪会增加导致多种心血管疾病的“坏胆固醇”;不饱和脂肪有助于增加对心血管有保护作用的“好胆固醇”。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 给序忠告

A: Half a minute, Bill. Where are you dashing off to?

B: I cannot stay, Sam. I am in a hurry.

A: What's up? I must say you are looking elegant today. Who's the lucky girl?

B: Oh, it's nothing like that. But I have an interview for a job shortly. It means a lot to me.

A: An interview for a job? Are you out of your mind? You're sitting pretty in your present position.

B: You've got it all wrong, Sam, I am not changing jobs. I am just hoping to get

A: 比尔,等等,你这么匆忙,要到哪里去啊?

B: 我现在没空,山姆,我赶时间。

A: 什么事?我得说你今天真精神。谁是那个幸运的女孩子?

B: 嗨,根本没这回事。我马上要去参加一个求职面试。这件事对我很重要。

A: 求职?你疯了么?你在这个职位不是很好么?

B: 你理解错了。我不是想跳槽,只是想另外找一份工作。

健康与疾病 · Health & Illness

another job.

A: If you've a moment to spare, tell me what this is all about.

B: There is nothing to it really—I just thought I'd my evenings to some use, that's all.

A: I cannot agree with you. If you start working for twelve or fourteen hours a day, you'll end up with one foot in the grave in no time.

B: Oh, I really think you are exaggerating now.

A: No, I am not cross my heart. It does not matter how much money you've got, you cannot buy any health.

B: Maybe you are right at that.

A: 要是你能抽出一点时间, 请你把整件事告诉我。

B: 其实没什么大不了的。我只是想利用晚上的时间多赚一点钱罢了。

A: 我可不敢苟同。如果你每天都工作 12 到 14 个小时, 你很快就会一只脚踏进坟墓了。

B: 你讲得有点夸张了吧。

A: 不, 我敢发誓, 无论你赚多少钱, 都买不回来健康。

B: 嗯, 这方面也许你是对的。

2. 步行养生

A: Doctor, I always feel tired after a day's work. Can you recommend some way to make me relaxed? I don't want any medicine, by the way.

B: Well, you can try walking a few times each week.

A: Walking?

B: Yes. Walking is one of the best ways to keep healthy. It is less dangerous than running. Walking strengthens muscles without stretching them too much and it puts less pressure on bones and joints.

A: Err—But I want something that can make me relaxed...

B: Short walks can also help make personal problems seem less serious. Improvements are not observed everyday, but after walking for two or three weeks, the

A: 医生, 我每天下班之后常常感到很疲惫。您能不能建议下, 怎样才能让我放松下来? 不过我可不想吃什么药。

B: 嗯, 你可以试着每周步行几次。

A: 步行?

B: 对啊, 步行是保持健康最好的方法之一。它比跑步危险小。步行加强肌肉而不致过度伸展, 而且作用于骨骼和关节的压力很小。

A: 嗯……但是我希望自己可以得到放松……

B: 短途行走也有助于缓解个人问题。这样的改善并不是每天都能察觉到, 但是每周坚持步行几次, 两三周以后, 差别就非常明显了。

differences become very clear.

A: Then how can I walk? I mean, walk for the special purpose, you know.

B: The most effective way to walk is the natural way. Keep your head high and your back straight. In fitness walking, it is important to remember your footsteps should fall almost a straight line. Bend your arms at elbows. Let them swing from the shoulders with each step.

A: Okay, I see. A few times each week?

B: Yes. Drink a lot of liquids, especially water before and after each walk and also gently stretch the muscles and joints that are most likely to become tense during the exercise.

A: I will do that. Thanks, doctor.

B: You are welcome.

A: 那么我该怎么步行呢? 我指的是, 您说的那种有特殊目的的步行, 您知道的。

B: 自然地行走是最有效的步行。要保持抬头挺胸的姿势。在健美步行时, 要记得你的脚步要走成几乎直线。胳膊和肘要弯曲, 使它们随着每一步以肩为轴进行摆动。

A: 好的, 我知道了。一周步行若干次, 是吧?

B: 对。在每次步行前后多喝点饮料, 尤其是水。同时要轻轻伸展肌肉和关节, 它们很可能在运动中紧张起来。

A: 我会照办的, 医生。谢谢了。

B: 不客气。

3. 控制饮食

A: What's your weight?

B: 150 pounds.

A: Do put yourself on a diet, otherwise you'll be too fat.

B: I can't bear eating less.

A: That doesn't mean to eat less necessarily.

B: So what do you mean by diet?

A: That means you should eat foods containing less fat.

A: 你多重?

B: 150 磅。

A: 你必须得合理饮食, 否则你就太胖了。

B: 少吃东西我受不了。

A: 合理饮食不一定就非得少吃。

B: 那你认为节食是什么意思呢?

A: 我是说你应该吃含低脂肪的食物。

Unit
6

洗衣

Laundry

文化
链接

Culture Links

洗衣店一般会有类似以下的规定,如:烫压或干洗领带,风险由顾客承担以及衣袋中财物损坏,本店概不负责;赔偿丢失或洗坏之物不超过洗价的5倍;衣服数量,除非有洗衣单填明,否则以本店收到为准等等。所有这些,在选择洗衣店时都应该注意。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 洗毛衫

A: I'd like to have these sweaters dry-cleaned.

B: Ok. \$ 6 in total.

A: When can I get them?

B: They will be ready at tomorrow afternoon.

A: Ok, I will come and get it tomorrow.

A: 我想要把这几件毛衫干洗一下。

B: 好的,一共6美元。

A: 我什么时候可以来取?

B: 明天下午能洗好。

A: 好吧,我明天来取。

2. 取衣

A: When can I get my laundry back, please?

B: Are you in a hurry for it?

A: Yes, a little, because I expect to put on tomorrow morning.

B: Ok, no problem.

A: 请问我什么时候能取回我洗的衣服?

B: 您着急要吗?

A: 是的,有点急,因为我明天早晨要穿。

B: 好的,没问题。

3. 烫衣补衣

A: This jacket is creased. It has got to be ironed.

B: All right. Is there anything else to the

A: 这件夹克皱了。需要烫一下。

B: 好的。还有别的要洗的吗?

laundry?

A: This pair of coat is moth eaten. Do you think it can be mended?

B: Don't worry. We'll do our best to make it.

A: You are so nice.

A: 这件上衣被虫蛀了, 你看还能补好吗?

B: 别担心, 我们会尽力把它补好的。

A: 您真是太好了。

4. 洗裙子

A: I want to have these skirts laundered.

B: Very well.

A: By the way, there is a stain on one of them. Can you remove it?

B: Let me see. This one? Yes, I believe it is not hard to get this spot out.

A: That will be great.

A: 我想把这几条裙子洗一下。

B: 好的。

A: 顺便问一下, 其中一条裙子上有一个污渍, 能把它洗掉吗?

B: 让我看看。这个污点吗? 可以的, 我相信把它洗掉不难。

A: 那真是太好了。



Unit
7

在理发店

At the Barber's

文化
链接

Culture Links

在国外,理发一定要付小费。即使只给脱件大衣或递件大衣、递个热毛巾等也得给小费。给小费的数额,通常为理发费的10%~15%。无论在何种场合下给小费,尽量不使用硬币,更不能扔硬币。要显示出感谢服务之情,而不要让对方觉察到有施舍之意。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 男士剪发(1)

A: Good morning, sir. Take a seat, please.

B: Thank you. I'd like to have my hair cut.

A: How do you want it?

B: Just a trim, and cut the sides fairly short, but not so much at the back.

A: Nothing off the top?

B: Well, a little off the top.

A: How about the front?

B: Leave the front as it is.

A: Would you like a shave or shampoo?

B: No, thanks. I can do these things by myself.

A: 先生,早上好,请坐。

B: 谢谢,我想剪发。

A: 想要什么发型?

B: 剪整齐了,两侧的头发剪短,但是后面的头发不要太短。

A: 上面的头发不剪吗?

B: 嗯,稍微剪剪。

A: 前面的头发呢?

B: 前面的头发不剪。

A: 要不要刮胡子或者洗一下头发?

B: 不用了,谢谢,我自己来就可以了。

2. 男士剪发(2)

A: Good morning. Take a seat, please.

B: Thank you, I want a haircut and a shave, please.

A: OK. Do you want me to trim your moustache?

A: 早上好,请坐。

B: 谢谢。我想要剪发,再把胡子刮一下。

A: 好的。小胡子要修剪一下吗?

B: Yes, please.
 A: Now have a look, please. Is it all right?
 B: Well, could you cut a little more off the temple?
 A: All right. Is that satisfactory?
 B: Yes, thanks. And I'd like a shampoo, please.
 A: Yes, sir. (After giving the guest a shampoo) Now shall I put on some hair oil?
 B: Ok, please.
 A: Anything else I can do for you?
 B: No, thank you. And how much altogether?
 A: That will be thirty yuan.
 B: Here you are.
 A: Thank you, sir.

B: 可以。
 A: 现在看一下, 还可以吗?
 B: 嗯, 把鬓角再稍微剪剪吧?
 A: 好的。现在满意了吗?
 B: 是的, 谢谢。我也想洗个头。
 A: 好的, 先生。(给客人洗头后) 现在抹头油吗?
 B: 用一点吧。
 A: 还有别的什么需要吗?
 B: 没有了, 谢谢。一共多少钱?
 A: 30 元。
 B: 给你。
 B: 谢谢你, 先生。

3. 换新发型(1)

A: I'm ready for a new hairdo. Do you have any suggestions?
 B: Have you taken a look at any of the new styles lately?
 A: Yes, I brought a magazine to show you. I like this one.
 B: Oh, that is pretty. Do you want to keep your hair this long? Or do you want to take it shorter? I think you would look cute with short hair. Perhaps you should go even shorter than in the picture.
 A: I'll leave it up to you. Like I said, I'm ready for a change.
 B: OK. You should really think about getting highlights put in, too.
 A: Do you think that would look good? I'm worried it will make my hair look unnatural.

A: 我准备换个新发型, 你有什么建议吗?
 B: 你最近有没有看到什么新的发型?
 A: 有, 我带了一本杂志给你看。我喜欢这个发型。
 B: 哦, 很漂亮啊。你的头发要继续留这么长吗? 还是要剪短一点? 我认为你剪短发一定很好看。或许你该剪得比杂志上更短些才好。
 A: 你来决定吧。就像我说过, 我已准备好要改变一下自己。
 B: 好。你还应该认真考虑把头发外层颜色挑亮一点。
 A: 你认为那样会好看吗? 我担心那会使我的头发看起来不自然。

健康与疾病 · Health & Illness

B: No, it won't. The highlights are very subtle. We can do a little bit this time. If you like it, we can do more next time. Otherwise, the highlights should grow out in about four weeks.

A: OK, just do what you want. I count on you. By the way, how much do you charge for a shampoo and set?

B: Forty dollars in total.

B: 不会。只是稍微染一下。这次我们可以稍微染一点。如果你喜欢的话, 下一次可以染多一点。要不然, 染过的颜色四个星期就会淡下去了。

A: 好的, 我听你的。顺便问一下, 洗头、做头发要多少钱?

B: 一共 40 美元。

4. 换新发型(2)

A: Good morning, madam.

B: Good morning. I would like a shampoo and set.

A: Yes, madam. What style do you want?

B: I'd like to try a new hair-style. Could you show me some pictures of hair styles?

A: Sure. We have various models: hair bobbed, hair sweptback, chaplet hair style, shoulder-length hair style, hair done in a bun. Please have a look at them, madam.

B: Thanks. Please give me the style in this picture here but make the wave longer. I would like hair spray, please.

A: Yes, madam.

B: Oh, your hair dryer is too hot. Would you adjust it, please?

A: Sorry, madam. I'll adjust it right away.

A: Is that all right now?

B: Yes, thanks.

A: Please have a look.

B: Beautifully done. Please trim my eyebrows and darken them.

A: All right, madam. And would you like a manicure?

A: 上午好, 太太。

B: 上午好。我想洗头、做头发。

A: 是, 太太。想做什么式样?

B: 我想换个新发型。你能不能给我看些发型式样的照片?

A: 可以。我们有各种各样的发型, 如剪短发、后掠式、盘花冠式、齐肩式, 还有把头发挽成发髻。太太, 您请看。

B: 谢谢。请你按这张照片上的发型烫, 波浪烫长些。请喷些发胶。

A: 好的, 太太。

B: 哦, 吹风太热了。请调整一下吧, 好吗?

A: 对不起, 太太。我马上调整。

A: 现在可以了吗?

B: 可以了, 谢谢。

A: 请您看一看。

B: 做得好极了。请把眉毛修一下, 再画深一点。

A: 好的, 太太。您还要做一下指甲吗?

B: Yes. Use a light nail varnish, please.

B: 要的。请用浅色指甲油。

5. 烫发

A: What would you like me to do with your hair today? The same as usual?

A: 您今天想要怎么做头发呢? 和平时一样吗?

B: No. I want to change my hairstyle. My hair is so thin, and it doesn't have much body.

B: 不, 我想改变一下发型。我的头发很少, 而且又很稀疏。

A: I'd recommend getting a perm.

A: 我建议您烫发。

B: What kinds of perm do you have?

B: 你们能烫什么样的发型?

A: Oh, we have quite a variety, such as regular, cold perm, straight perm, pin curl and foam.

A: 哦, 我们能烫很多种类型: 普通烫、冷烫、直发烫、卷发和泡沫烫。

B: I have no idea what they are. Could you show me some pictures of the latest hair-styles?

B: 不知道那会是什么样。能给我看看最新发型的照片吗?

A: Here you are. I think maybe this one will suit you best. What do you think, madam?

A: 给您。我看这个发型最适合您, 夫人, 您觉得怎么样?

B: No. I don't like short hair. I like this one. The wave looks beautiful, and fits my age too.

B: 不, 我不喜欢短发。我喜欢这个, 波浪看起来很美, 也适合我的年龄。

A: OK. (Later)

A: 好的。(稍后)

B: It's done. How does it look?

B: 做完了。怎么样?

A: Fabulous! Thank you.

A: 好看极了, 谢谢。

B: That's my pleasure.

B: 不客气。

Unit
8

冲印照片

Developing Films

文化
链接

Culture Links

照相机如果没有自备,还可以租到,胶卷更是随处都可以买到。然而有一样东西却是谁也无法随身携带的,那便是能冲底片的暗房及设施。

在国外,有一种叫 Chemists' shop 的地方,或简称 Chemists' 即可解决这一问题。更正宗、更专业的照相馆也是有的,不过它叫做 Photographer's shop,里面的设备更为全面和高档。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues

1. 优惠冲洗照片

A: Isn't there a special on film processing?

B: Yes. Two rolls for the price of one.

A: I have ten rolls.

B: Ok. What size prints would you like?

A: Regular, please.

A: 你们这里减价冲洗胶卷吗?

B: 是的。冲洗两卷只收一卷的钱。

A: 我有 10 卷。

B: 好的。你想冲印多大尺寸的?

A: 请印普通的吧。

2. 冲洗底片

A: And how many copies of each?

B: Just one for one.

A: Fine. Here is your receipt. Bring this with you when you come for the films.

A: 每张底片印几张?

B: 先各印一张吧。

A: 好的。这是取照单。下次来取照片时带上它。

3. 照片冲洗咨询

A: Could you let me have a look?

B: Of course. Here you are.

A: Sorry, this roll can only be developed for black-and-white prints.

A: 能让我看看吗?

B: 当然。给你。

A: 不好意思,这卷只能洗黑白照片。

B: How about the other two?

A: They can be developed for color prints.

B: 另外两卷呢?

A: 这些可以洗彩色的。

4. 照片放大

A: Excuse me, where is the photographer's?

B: I think there's one over there.

A: Thank you.

B: With pleasure.

A: Excuse me, I'd like to have a passport size picture, please.

C: OK, this way, please.

A: I would like to have six photos.

C: When do you want to get them?

A: Tomorrow. By the way, can I have this photo enlarged here?

C: Sure. Is that your negative? What size do you want?

A: Nine by twelve, please. When will it be ready?

C: Tomorrow.

A: Fine, thanks.

A: 请问照相馆在哪儿呀?

B: 我想那儿有一家。

A: 谢谢你。

B: 不客气。

A: 你好,我想照一张护照像。

C: 好的,请这边走。

A: 我想要一样6张。

C: 什么时候取呢?

A: 明天要。对了,我这张照片能在这儿放大吗?

C: 当然可以,这是底片吧?想放大多少?

A: 长12寸,宽9寸。什么时候能取?

C: 明天。

A: 很好,多谢。



Unit
9

饲养宠物

Keeping Pets

文化
链接

Culture Links

养宠物在西方社会历来是一种时尚,美国人自然也不例外。人们随时都可以看到遛狗的人。每次一打开电视,时不时地便看到美得像公主般的波斯猫在做罐头猫食的广告……据美国宠物协会调查,2002 年全美国有 4,314 万人养狗,家养狗的总数为 6,153 万条;在全美 1 亿多户家庭中,3,100 万户人家至少拥有 1 只或 1 只以上的猫,家养猫的总数为 7,489 万只。

实用对话

Practical Dialogues



1. 可爱的小狗(1)

A: Your dog is really cute. What's his name?

B: His name is Bingo.

A: What kind of dog is he?

B: We're not sure because the neighbors gave him to us after they moved away.

A: 你的狗真可爱。它叫什么名字?

B: 宾果。

A: 它是什么狗?

B: 我们也不清楚,是邻居搬家时送给我们的。

2. 可爱的小狗(2)

A: Can your dog do any tricks?

B: Sure he can. He can shake hands, roll over, and even play dead.

A: I wish I had a dog. My cat can't do any tricks.

B: Yeah, but sometimes he wants to play with me, but I don't have time.

A: 你的狗会一点儿小把戏吗?

B: 当然会。他会握手、打滚、还会装死。

A: 我也想养条狗。我的猫什么也不会。

B: 是啊,不过有时他想跟我玩,我却没时间。

3. 饲养宠物猫

A: Angel, when did you get your cat?

B: About a year ago actually. You've probably never seen her though.

A: Really? Why is that?

B: She's not a house-cat. She stays outside most of the time.

A: 小安, 你的猫什么时候养的?

B: 实际上大约一年前。不过你可能没看到过它。

A: 是吗? 为什么?

B: 她不是家猫。她大部分时间都在外面。

4. 美国人养宠物

A: Hi, Mike, I heard that you have two dogs and one cat at home. Do you Americans like keeping pets very much?

B: Yes, most Americans enjoy having pets around. They treat their pets as part of their family, sometimes even better than their children.

A: Really? But don't you think pets are sometimes noisy and dirty?

B: Not at all. You know what? Researchers have discovered that interacting with animals lowers a person's blood pressure. Dogs can offer protection from burglars and unwelcome visitors. Cats can help get rid of the unwanted pests. In many cases, having a pet prepares a young couple for the responsibilities of parenthood.

A: That's cool. I'd like to keep a pet myself too.

A: 嗨, 迈克, 我听说你家里有两只狗一只猫, 你们美国人很喜欢养宠物吗?

B: 是的, 大部分美国人都喜欢养宠物。他们将宠物视为家庭的一员, 有时甚至会比对孩子还要好。

A: 是吗? 但你不认为宠物有时很吵或很脏吗?

B: 一点都不。你知道吗, 研究人员发现与动物共同生活可以降低血压。狗可以防盗贼和不速之客, 猫可以除害虫。养宠物还可以培养年轻夫妻作父母的责任感。

A: 真不错。我自己也想养只宠物了。

Unit
10

家庭生活

Family Life

文化
链接

Culture Links

grandparents 祖父母 (grandfather 祖父、外祖父; grandmother

祖母、外祖母)

parents 父母 (father 父亲; mother 母亲)

children 孩子 (son 儿子; daughter 女儿)

cousin 表亲 (堂兄弟; 堂姐妹; 表兄弟; 表姐妹)

in-laws 姻亲 (parents-in-law 公婆; uncle-in-law 姑父、姨夫; aunt-in-law 伯母、婶
婶、舅妈; brother-in-law 姐夫、妹夫; sister-in-law 嫂子、弟媳)

stepfather 继父, stepmother 继母, stepbrothers 异父母兄弟, stepsisters 异父母姐妹

half brothers and half sisters 同父异母 (或同母异父) 兄弟姐妹

adoptive father (mother); foster father (mother) 养父 (母); an adopted son
(daughter) 养子 (女)

实用对话

Practical Dialogues

1. 三代同堂

A: I am from a big family. There are eight people in my family.

B: I don't believe it. You must be joking.

A: Believe it or not. They are my grandparents, my parents, my three sisters and I.

B: I see. The three generations are living under one roof. What do your grandparents do?

A: Of course, both of them retired years ago, but they keep themselves busy with

A: 我来自一个大家庭, 我家总共有八口人。

B: 我不相信, 你在开玩笑吧?

A: 信不信由你。我家有祖父母、父母、三个姐姐和我。

B: 哦, 一家三代住在一起呀。你祖父母是干什么的?

A: 当然住一起了。他们俩几年前就退休了, 可他们还在忙于社区的公益事业。

the public welfare in our community. Because my grandfather is a doctor, he always goes to the community medical and health center to help the others.

B: Does he charge any money? I know many old people are still working after retirement; this is called "to make use of one's rest value".

A: He has his own pension, so it is not for money that he goes to work in the clinic. As for my grandmother, she joins in the community bodybuilding center and goes bodybuilding almost every day.

B: That is interesting. You must have many stories about your grandparents.

A: Yes. They are like many other old people who retired but still keep young minds.

因为我祖父是医生,他总是到社区医疗保健中心去帮助别人。

B: 他收别人的钱吗,我知道有好多老人退休后还在上班,这叫“发挥余热”。

A: 他自己有退休金,所以并不是为了钱才去那儿上班的。至于我祖母,她加入了社区健身运动中心,几乎每天都去健身。

B: 真有趣。你肯定有不少关于祖父、祖母的故事吧。

A: 是啊。他们像许多老人一样,虽然已经退休了,但却有颗年轻的心。

2. 家庭模式变化

A: In the past, the size of a family was very large. Grandparents, parents, sons and daughters, and grandchildren all live together. Uncles and aunts lived in the near neighbourhood.

B: But now it is quite different from the way it used to be. More and more new-married couples choose to move out of the old house where they spent their childhood.

A: Yes. They will have their own families. But the size of a family is becoming smaller and smaller, as many families have only one or two children.

B: In China, a couple can have one child as the government stresses family planning. In this way, there are many what we call

A: 在过去,家庭的规模是很大的。祖父母、父母、子女以及孙辈们都住在一起。叔叔、婶婶们就是街坊邻居。

B: 可如今情况与以前大不相同了。越来越多的新婚夫妇选择搬出他们从小就居住的老房子。

A: 是的。这样他们就有自己的家了。可是由于许多家庭都只有一两个孩子,家的规模就越来越小了。

B: 中国由于实行了计划生育政策,每家只有一个孩子。所以就有了很多我们所说的“核心家庭”。

健康与疾病 · Health & Illness

“nuclear families”.

A: Don't you think the change happens not only in size, but in people's thinking as well?

B: What do you mean by that? Do you want to say that people now don't value family life as important in their lives?

A: No. I mean that now young people are not so traditional like their parents. They choose not to have any children but enjoy the romance of the “world of two”; that's a dink family.

A: 你不觉得不仅是家庭的规模发生了变化,人们对家庭的认识也变了吗?

B: 你的意思是说什么,你是否是说人们现在不再把家庭看作是他们生命中重要的一部分了?

A: 不是。我是说现在的年轻人不再像他们的父辈那样传统了。他们选择不生孩子,而是乐于过那种浪漫的“二人世界”的生活,这就是“丁克”家庭。

听力理解

A: Mary, come here. I want to show you something.

B: I hope it's something surprising. Oh, it's a photo. What a picture!

A: This is a photo of the whole family. It was taken last year, the year of the millennium when all of the family members from across the country and even from abroad came together to celebrate my grandma's 80th birthday.

B: So, that gray-haired old lady sitting in the middle with a happy smile on their face must be your grandma.

A: Right. Next to her on the right is my cousin who is now studying Economics at Chicago University in the United States. He is grandma's favorite, because he was brought up by her and is always her pride.

B: He's handsome. Who is the girl next to you? She looks quite slender.

A: Guess who she is. I will give you a clue;

A: 玛丽,你过来,我有一样东西给你看。

B: 希望是能让我吃惊的东西。哦,是一张照片。多好的照片啊。

A: 这是我的一张全家福照。是去年拍的。去年是千禧年,我奶奶过80大寿。全家人从全国各地甚至从国外回来给她祝寿。

B: 那位头发花白、满脸幸福笑容、端坐在当中的老太太一定就是你奶奶了。

A: 是的。紧挨着她右边坐的是我表哥,他现在在美国芝加哥大学攻读经济学,他最得我奶奶的宠爱,因为是奶奶一手把他带大的。而且表哥一直是奶奶的骄傲。

B: 他长得很帅呢。你旁边的那个女孩是谁? 她好苗条。

A: 你猜她是谁。我给你点线索: 只要看看

just try to find out whom she resembles, and you will get the answer.

B: Let me see. I think she is your sister. No, that's not correct, for you don't have any sisters. Is she your cousin?

A: Well, she is my aunt, my father's youngest sister.

B: But she looks so young in the picture.

A: It is a pity we can't have such a family get-together this year. Everyone is so busy.

她像谁,你就能知道答案了。

B: 让我看看,依我看她是你姐姐。不对,你没有姐姐。她是不是你表姐?

A: 好啦,她是我姑姑,我爸爸的小妹妹。

B: 可照片上她看起来真的好年轻。

A: 可惜今年我们不能再团聚了,人人都这么忙。

家庭聚会

A: My parents told me my uncle and aunt are planning a big family reunion in Paris this fall.

B: Are you going to the reunion?

A: You bet! All my uncles and aunts will take their children along, too. So I'll meet many cousins there.

B: How nice! But why Paris?

A: Because two of my aunts are French. They met and got married to my uncles in Paris.

B: Have you ever been to Paris?

A: No. As a matter of fact, this is the first time I'll travel abroad. I can't wait.

A: 我爸爸妈妈告诉我,我伯父、伯母正计划今年秋天在巴黎举行一次大的家庭聚会。

B: 你去参加聚会吗?

A: 那当然。我所有的伯父、伯母都要带他们的孩子去。所以在那里我会见到许多堂兄弟姐妹。

B: 真是好极了。但为什么去巴黎呢?

A: 因为我有两位伯母是法国人。她们是在巴黎与我伯父相识并结婚的。

B: 你以前去过巴黎吗?

A: 没有。实际上,这将是我第一次出国旅行。我都等不及了。

读石油版书,获亲情馈赠

《必须掌握的高频英语会话 600 段》

亲爱的读者朋友,首先感谢您阅读我社图书,请您在阅读完本书后填写以下信息。我社将长期开展“读石油版本,获亲情馈赠”活动,凡是关注我社图书并认真填写读者信息反馈卡的朋友都有机会获得亲情馈赠,我们将定期从信息反馈卡中评选出有价值的意见和建议,并为填写这些信息的读者朋友免费赠送一本好书。

您的资料

您的姓名:_____性别:_____出生年月:_____电话:_____

文化程度:_____单位名称:_____

通讯地址:_____邮编:_____

E-mail:_____

(特别提示新老读者:您的资料是我们与您取得联系、反馈信息最重要的途径、请务必填写工整。如果您的联络方式发生了变化,请再次填写此卡并及时邮寄或传真到本社。)

您填写本卡的时间是:_____年_____月_____日

是什么促使您决定购买本书的?如果是报纸或杂志的书评,请写明具体报刊名称:_____

☐封面 ☐书名 ☐内容 ☐版式 ☐亲朋好友推荐 ☐索引及目录

您在何处购买到本书(请写明具体书店名称):

☐新华书店_____ ☐民营书店_____ ☐大型书城_____ ☐其他_____

您希望通过什么渠道获得我社新书的消息:

☐信函 ☐传真 ☐书店 ☐网络 ☐其他_____

您有兴趣成为我们的会员吗? ☐愿意 ☐不愿意

你会推荐本书给您的亲朋好友吗?_____

您对本书的综合评价和建议:_____

您最喜欢的一本书是什么?_____

您最喜欢的作者是谁?_____

别忘了保持联系

联系地址:北京安定门外安华里二区一号楼 石油工业出版社 社会图书出版中心 朱世元

邮编:100011 E-mail: shiyuanzhu@263.net

网址: www.petropub.com.cn



必须掌握的 高频英语会话 600 段

日常交际、浪漫爱情、餐饮旅馆、购物、节日庆祝、通讯交通、银行、

业余活动、住房汽车、健康疾病……

『日常话题全全网络!』

『地道会话』 『精准译文』 『超长录音』 多场景多话题一应俱全!



ISBN 978-7-5021-7407-1



9 787502 174071 >

定价: 34.80元